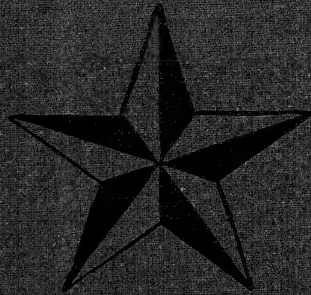


# THE TEXAS READER

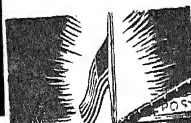
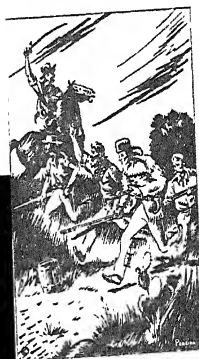


976.4 B21t  
Banks  
The Texas reader

57-10455

976.4 B21t  
Banks \$3.50  
The Texas reader

57-10455



kansas city public library

kansas city, missouri

Books will be issued only  
on presentation of library card.  
Please report lost cards and  
change of residence promptly.  
Card holders are responsible for  
all books, records, films, pictures  
or other library materials  
checked out on their cards.





0 0001 0207081 0



DATE DUE

[illegible]

**THE  
TEXAS  
READER**



# THE TEXAS READER

An Anthology of  
Romantic History,  
Biography, Legends,  
Folklore and Epic Stories  
of the Lone Star State

*Edited by*  
C. STANLEY BANKS  
*and*  
GRACE TAYLOR McMILLAN



THE NAYLOR COMPANY  
San Antonio, Texas

Copyright, 1947 by

THE NAYLOR COMPANY

Printed in the United States of America

All rights reserved. This book, or  
parts thereof, may not be reproduced  
in any form without the permission of  
the copyright owner.

Dedicated to the memory of

*Colonel Jacob F. Wolters*

*Clarence R. Wharton*

*Mrs. Ettie M. Doughty*

These three, who loved Texas,  
and who loved to write about it





# P r e f a c e

In publishing THE TEXAS READER we are keeping a promise long since made to ourselves, as well as to the many friends of all things Texan who have been our associates in producing the *Epic-Century* magazine over a period of fourteen years. Not only are we fulfilling a promise, but we are also, we believe, accomplishing an objective of long standing: to place a readable, authentic and intriguing one-volume collection of Texana at the disposal of all who wish to know the glorious history of our fabulous State.

Every article has been selected because it is choice: because we feel that, in a specific and tangible way, it highlights the living past. With the challenging future which faces us, Americans may well gather inspiration and fortitude from the courage and heroism of the men and women of yesterday.

It has not been our purpose in selecting the material for this anthology to give a complete history of Texas. Although the outline of the Texas story is carefully delineated, emphasis at times underscores certain events and personalities. Pauses are made where not all historians pause, to etch more keenly the portraiture. Withal, it will enrich your love and respect for the Lone Star State.

The Naylor Company has functioned as a regional publishing house for more than sixteen years, dedicated to the preservation of the history, legend and lore of Texas and the Southwest, and has witnessed the swiftly growing demand for Texana become national and international in scope. Included in its publishing schedule has been the *Epic-Century* magazine, devoted primarily to Texana. First published in April 1934, it is a quarterly whose pages have been penned by some of the best-loved writers of Texas. With few exceptions, THE TEXAS READER is a compilation of selected stories and articles from this magazine. Such feature articles or short fillers as carry no byline were written by either staff writers or editors of *Epic-Century*. A generous share of data was furnished the magazine during 1935-1936 by the Texas Centennial Commission as a part of its publicity schedule for the Texas Centennial.

We are indebted beyond measure to the authors who have given us permission to use their material, the desire of each being that it be thus preserved for posterity. Three of these writers — Colonel Jacob F. Wolters, Judge Clarence R. Wharton and Mrs. Ettie M. Doughty — have passed on. During the lifetime of each, it was our pleasure to “talk Texas” with them, and we wish that they had lived to see the book we promised them.

With reference to the numerous controversial issues which occupy historians of Texas, and which might appear in this book, the editors have been pleased to defer to the opinions of the contributing authors. In an anthology of this sort, there might possibly be some contradictory statements.

Our grateful appreciation is extended to those two very capable and enthusiastic editors — C. Stanley Banks and Grace Taylor McMillan — who worked so hard to make THE TEXAS READER what it is.

JOE O. NAYLOR  
*Publisher*

San Antonio, Texas  
November, 1947

# CONTENTS

PREFACE . . . . .	vii
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	xiii
A TEXAS OF YESTERDAY, TODAY AND TOMORROW	
By Herbert A. White, Colonel U. S. Army, Retired	
SECTION OF PICTURES . . . . .	Between xvi and 1
TWELVE IMPORTANT EVENTS IN TEXAS HISTORY	
MAP OF BOUNDARIES CLAIMED BY TEXAS FROM DECEMBER 19, 1836, TO NOVEMBER 25, 1850	
THE HISTORY OF TEXAS, AN OUTLINE . . . . .	1
Texas Symbols . . . . .	9
<i>January in Texas</i> . . . . .	10
TEXAS AS IT WAS THEN . . . . .	11
By Chris Emmett	
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	11
THE STORY OF CABEZA DE VACA . . . . .	13
Cabeza de Vaca Meets the Karankawa Indians . . . . .	13
Cabeza de Vaca Escapes from the Indians . . . . .	16
RENE ROBERT CAVELIER, SIEUR DE LA SALLE . . . . .	21
La Salle, First Colonizer of Texas . . . . .	21
The Death of La Salle . . . . .	29
DISCOVERY OF FORT ST. LOUIS BY THE SPANIARDS . . . . .	39
The First Travel Book . . . . .	47
<i>February in Texas</i> . . . . .	48
CABEZA DE VACA AND HORSEHEAD . . . . .	49
By J. Frank Dobie	
THE AMERICANIZATION OF TEXAS . . . . .	55
By Chris Emmett	
Origin of the Name Texas . . . . .	77
<i>March in Texas</i> . . . . .	78
THE AUSTINS, ADVANCE AGENTS OF DESTINY . . . . .	79
By Frank H. Bushick	
The First White Girl Born in Texas . . . . .	81

<i>April in Texas</i> . . . . .	82
MEN OF THE ALAMO, GOLIAD AND SAN JACINTO . . . . .	83
<i>By Jack C. Butterfield</i> (Heroes of the Alamo as Listed on the Cenotaph, Page 84)	
MEN OF THE ALAMO . . . . .	85
(Origin of the name "Alamo," Page 96)	
MEN OF GOLIAD . . . . .	97
MEN OF SAN JACINTO . . . . .	108
SAN JACINTO, THE SIXTEENTH DECISIVE BATTLE . . . . .	119
<i>By Clarence R. Wharton</i>	
The Texan: a Solid American . . . . .	122
EIGHTEEN MINUTES . . . . .	123
<i>By Lona Shawver</i>	
First Methodist Church . . . . .	124
Saw Mill in 1830 . . . . .	124
Cheap Land . . . . .	124
THE TEXAS NAVY . . . . .	125
<i>By James T. DeShields</i>	
Famous Texas Utterances . . . . .	138
TEXAS BATTLE FLAGS . . . . .	139
A Cuff-Button Seal . . . . .	140
THE UNITED STATES RECOGNIZES THE INDEPENDENCE OF TEXAS . . . . .	141
<i>By Joseph William Schmitz, S. M.</i>	
The "Pig" Incident . . . . .	149
Early School Days . . . . .	149
<i>May in Texas</i> . . . . .	150
IMMORTAL TEXANS . . . . .	151
Introduction by Jack C. Butterfield	
WILLIAM BARRETT TRAVIS . . . . .	153
STEPHEN FULLER AUSTIN . . . . .	154
DAVID CROCKETT . . . . .	155
SAM HOUSTON . . . . .	163
MIRABEAU B. LAMAR . . . . .	166
HENRY SMITH . . . . .	167

ANSON <sup>B</sup> JONES . . . . .	167
DAVID G. BURNET . . . . .	168
J. PINCKNEY HENDERSON . . . . .	169
RICHARD COKE . . . . .	170
BEN MILAM . . . . .	170
Who Captured Santa Anna? . . . . .	171
El Camino Real . . . . .	171
<i>June in Texas</i> . . . . .	172
THE FIRST TEXAS RANGER . . . . .	173
<i>By Jacob F. Wolters</i>	
Buffalo in Texas . . . . .	179
<i>July in Texas</i> . . . . .	180
THE MIER EXPEDITION . . . . .	181
Ill Luck . . . . .	182
Santa Anna after San Jacinto . . . . .	182
THE JOURNEY OF DEATH (SANTA FE EXPEDITION) . . . . .	183
<i>By James T. DeShields</i>	
Airing Troubles . . . . .	188
THE DAILY LIFE OF THE EARLY TEXAS PIONEERS . . . . .	189
<i>By Joseph William Schmitz, S. M.</i>	
The First Railroad in Texas . . . . .	202
LAW COURTS IN EARLY TEXAS . . . . .	203
<i>By Joseph William Schmitz, S. M.</i>	
Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo . . . . .	207
"Staked Plains" . . . . .	207
<i>August in Texas</i> . . . . .	208
ALONG TRAILS OF EARLY TEXAS . . . . .	209
<i>By Ettie M. Doughty</i>	
Hospitality Paid . . . . .	217
<i>September in Texas</i> . . . . .	218
THE TEXAS INDIANS . . . . .	219
THE CAPITOLS OF TEXAS . . . . .	221
<i>October in Texas</i> . . . . .	228
OLD ROUGH AND READY ON THE RIO GRANDE . . . . .	229
<i>By Florence Johnson Scott</i>	

TEXAS IN CIVIL WAR DAYS . . . . .	233
<i>By Howard W. Peak, II</i>	
The Three-Faced Clock . . . . .	240
The Trinity River . . . . .	240
CAMELS IN TEXAS . . . . .	241
"War Widow" . . . . .	242
Padre Island . . . . .	242
CATTLE IN TEXAS . . . . .	243
REDISCOVERING TEXAS . . . . .	245
<i>By Doris Killingsworth</i>	
WEST TEXAS . . . . .	246
SOUTH TEXAS . . . . .	251
CENTRAL TEXAS . . . . .	253
NORTH TEXAS . . . . .	253
EAST TEXAS . . . . .	255
San Jacinto Monument . . . . .	258
THE FLAVOR OF TEXAS HUMOR . . . . .	259
<i>By Boyce House</i>	
Towns in Texas . . . . .	261
<i>November in Texas</i> . . . . .	262
TEXAS—TEXANS AND TEXANA . . . . .	263
"THE EYES OF TEXAS ARE UPON YOU" . . . . .	263
"MOTHER OF TEXAS" . . . . .	264
PRESIDENTS AND GOVERNORS OF TEXAS . . . . .	265
LAW WEST OF THE PECOS . . . . .	266
CYNTHIA ANN PARKER . . . . .	268
DOLORES AND HER FAITHFUL VIGIL . . . . .	269
THREE VAQUEROS . . . . .	271
CANNIBALISTIC SLAVES IN THE DAVIS MOUNTAINS . . . . .	273
THE INDEPENDENCE . . . . .	275
<i>Eleven Sonnets on the Glorious History of Texas</i>	
<i>By Stark Young</i>	
<i>December in Texas</i> . . . . .	280
INDEX . . . . .	281

## Introduction

# A TEXAS OF YESTERDAY, TODAY AND TOMORROW

BY HERBERT A. WHITE

*Colonel U. S. Army, Retired*

A STRANGER on entering Texas would quite likely find his impressions changing from day to day until he had absorbed the vastness of the state and come to appreciate that out of its vastness there must arise innumerable features not capable of being reduced quickly to an unvarying unit. So at first the visitor will view Texas as a land of contrasts. And it is a land of murmuring seacoasts and silent mountains, fertile fields and barren deserts, paved roads and stony trails, skyscrapers and adobe huts. The hunter's paradise, with its deer — and rattlesnakes; its wild turkeys — and tarantulas; its blue quail — and redbugs. The land of the mockingbird — and of the buzzard; of airplanes — and saddle horses; of longhorns — and Holsteins, Herefords and Jerseys. The land of grapefruit — and of cactus; of lemon and orange — and mesquite; of stately pecan groves — and thorny chaparral thickets; of bluebonnets and wine cups — and white thistles and wire grass; of wheat and cotton and corn — and of cockle burs and weeds and tares. The land of farm and of factory, of citizens and of soldiers, of English jargon and Spanish patois, of busy days and balmy nights, of beautiful women and homely men. The land of churches — and of places not godly; of swimming pools and sun baths; of music and art, and of bridge and poker. A land that has all that man can want — and all that he doesn't want; a land where, in the language of a recent English visitor, there are more rivers without water, more cows without milk, where a man can look farther and see less than in any land on earth.

It will be some time before the stranger can accommodate himself to these contrasts and come to view the great state as a composite whole. And when he does so, he will have ceased to be a stranger; he will have entered whole-souled into the spirit of Texas and come to a belief that this land,



lying between the Red River and the Rio Grande, gives greater promise than any other land on earth. He envisions the teeming millions that in the near years to come will fill the smoke-stacked argosies of the deep with the products of her marts and mines and fields, sending them across the Seven Seas to bless less fortunate lands. He will be aided in turning his visions into beliefs by an appreciation of the hardships and struggles of the Texas pioneers. Such beliefs, on the part of all citizens of the state, will become settled convictions when Texans are united in reverence for the past and in a realization that the events of the past are safe guideposts to the future.

In the hope that the main events of Texas history may be briefly stated, and yet not so briefly as to lose the lessons that history has for us, the following is dedicated to those Texans who have in them a sense of obligation to their fathers, and a realization that the accomplishments of those mirific men may well be an example worthy to follow.

It has been remarked that the two most important events of the Western World (Western Europe and America) were the Anglo-Saxon migrations from the continent of Europe to Britain in the fifth and sixth centuries, and the Anglo-Saxon migrations from Britain to America ten centuries later. From these first migrations resulted the State of England, renowned for the struggles of its people to secure the inalienable rights of freemen; from the second resulted the State of America, to be known in history as affording the surest methods of statecraft to preserve such rights.

It will be well to trace the trend of migration a little further, from the thirteen colonies whose action brought the great U. S. Republic into life. The thirteen original colonies constituted a fringe along the Atlantic; but the Northwest Territory was a part of the national domain and the claims of the Southern states extended to the Mississippi. Then the acquisition of Louisiana sealed the title to land west of the great river, amounting to thousands of square miles. Immediately after the Revolution the Americans plunged into this land west of the Alleghenies, and in an incredibly short space of time had reached to the Mississippi. Kentucky and Tennessee became a part of the congeries of states before the end of the century, within a decade after the Government started under the Constitution.

Previous to 1840, the Southwest filled more rapidly than the Northwest. Everything south of Ohio early became states, but in 1840 the population of Iowa was scarcely forty thousand and Wisconsin hardly thirty thousand. In a few years much of the land east of the Mississippi had been taken up by settlers, and others were already looking to the West, shortly to pour across the Mississippi to the banks of the Missouri and the Sabine. This mass of emigration was as yet native, for the great rush from Europe did not begin until about 1847.

So the people filling the lands between the Alleghenies and the Mississippi, and pushing into the lands beyond, were of the stock of the original thirteen colonies. United by ties of race, language and political ideals, they formed a homogeneous mass. It was from this mass, and largely from the southern part, that settlers crossed the Sabine River and passed into the province of Texas. If there is a Divinity which shapes our ends, then it was ordained that Texas should be settled by Americans.

In 1821 the first colony, under Stephen F. Austin, reached the Brazos and came to Austin Creek on New Year's Day, 1822. Mexican law was favorable, and other empresarios followed Austin's example. It may not be amiss to mention here the grants to those early settlers. Each family was to get some four thousand acres for grazing and one hundred and seventy-seven acres for cultivation. Empresarios who brought a hundred families were to get some twenty thousand acres for grazing and two thousand acres for cultivation. The colonists were permitted to import family supplies and agricultural implements free of duty, and there was an exemption of taxation for several years. Justice was fairly administered and schools seemed not far distant. Had this state of affairs continued, no man can say what would have been the history of this great commonwealth.

Unfortunately for Mexico, not only were the Texans of that early day far removed from the Mexican people by race, language and political ideals, even largely by religion, but this removal also seemed to create an unreasonable animosity in the Mexicans. Even this might possibly have been overcome in time had the Mexican Government been in a condition to consider things wisely and well. However, the Mexican Government was not then able to consider things

wisely and well; in fact, it was in such a position that it could consider nothing at all.

At the time Austin and his colonists crossed the Brazos, Mexico was just coming through her revolt from Spain. She was being born into an existence where liberty might be possible if the people were prepared for it. But liberty is a dangerous toy for those who are not advanced enough to understand it, who are ready to take its advantages but have no conception of its obligations. The years of early Mexico were marked by no such men as those of the American Colonies, who not only carried through the revolt, but also had the ability to establish a stable government. Looking at Mexico in a broad spirit that can appreciate her difficulties, with a heart tolerant for people struggling in the first throes of independence, the observer can find little in early Mexican history upon which to rest his eyes with satisfaction. With revolutions following faster and faster, and with today's dictator overthrown tomorrow, it is small wonder that trouble arose between the continually changing Mexican governments and the steady American colonists across the Rio Grande.

In these rapidly shifting scenes of Mexican political life the Americans remained neutral, taking sides with no party. But when oppression raised its head, action was rapid and effective. In 1830 laws were passed prohibiting further immigration of Americans into Texas. A dictator came into power with an apparent longer tenure than heretofore, and one upon whom no one who believed in freedom of conscience and liberty of action could faithfully rely. Separate statehood was denied and the provincial capital was moved from Texas to Coahuila. Restrictions upon commerce were imposed and difficulties were thrown into the procedure of obtaining land titles. Military posts were established, civil authority became tyrannical, and liberty such as the colonists had known east of the Mississippi was apparently not to be the lot of the Texans.

In justice to Mexico, it should be stated that the question of slavery was far from absent. Mexico abolished slavery in 1827; the Texans had brought slaves with them and wished to retain them. We must not be blind to the faults of any people, be they heroes or otherwise. Neither are we to judge people except by the standards that existed at the time in

which they lived. And in truth, the commercial advantages of slavery were of little importance in the minds of the colonists compared to the threat to their inalienable rights. Under the action of the Mexican Government, that spirit of revolt against tyranny, born centuries back on the distant banks of the Elbe, in the forest of Thuringia, awoke. Like their fathers, the patience of the colonists held them till reasonable minds could no longer hug the phantom that liberty was still possible.

On March 2, 1836, an assembly of Texans met at Washington, on the Brazos River. This assembly was not unlike the one that met at Philadelphia on July 4, 1776. Its action was the same, and if one will take the two declarations of independence that came from these assemblies he cannot fail to observe that the latter follows the former in form and substance. Small changes in phraseology serve to emphasize not only the similarity of thought, of ideals, of principles, but demonstrate also that the latter was adopted by men intimately acquainted with the former. Nor does the similarity cease here. Attention is called to the similarity of names which appear upon these historical documents — documents which will forever command the respect of men so long as men cherish liberty and appreciate its blessings. Of the fifty-nine men who signed the Texas Declaration of Independence, fifty-four were born in the United States.

Thus, on the second day of March, 1836, Texas ceased to be a province of Mexico. And so in this land of promise and of plenty, whose prairies awaited with anxious longing the coming of the husbandmen, whose grassy plains through the colors of myriads of wild flowers smiled a welcome to the honest and industrious, the Americans again wrote a story that will grace the pages of history so long as men shall care to read of their forebears.

Now revolutions are rarely peaceful. Invariably they are accomplished in blood. The acts of the statesman must be supplemented by the valor of the soldier. The revolt of Texas from Mexico furnishes no exception to this rule.

On the very day that the Texas patriots at Washington were signing the Declaration of Independence, a small group of courageous soldiers, one hundred and eighty-three in number, was holding the Alamo outpost of San Antonio de Bexar. And this small group of patriotic citizen-soldiers has given

the world a story of personal heroism that has not been equalled in the world story of humankind. It is a sad story. But it stirs men's souls to think that patriotic devotion can ascend to such heights, that personal valor can lead to such deeds.

This would be a fitting place to tell of the heroism of the Men of the Alamo, but properly to picture these men and their actions would require more time than can be taken in a brief review. But throughout the length and breadth of this great commonwealth, the names of counties, cities and towns, of streets and avenues, of parks and plazas, attest the profound reverence in which these men are held. So long as there remains a State of Texas, so long as there remains a man or woman worthy of the name of Texan, so long will the names of these men shine resplendent in the flame of Memory's altars. And when their names shall have been forgotten, the word Texas will already have disappeared forever from the vocabularies of men.

Viewing without fear the oncoming hordes of Santa Anna's army, this little band of patriots refused to secure safety in flight, deeming the post of San Antonio so important that their lives must be sacrificed in order to give time for larger forces to gather in the east. And so for days they battled on; surrounded by overwhelming numbers, yet still they struggled, until overcome by the superior forces on the morning of March 6 — *to a man*, they passed into history. Today they belong to the ages.

Santa Anna, with proper military energy, pressed on to the east; but the Texan Fabius, General Sam Houston, like the American Fabius, General George Washington, retreated until the men from the plow and the field, from the mart and the store, were ready. On the afternoon of April 21, Sam Houston's force of seven hundred Texans fell upon the hundred of Mexicans at San Jacinto and swept them from the face of the earth. So at San Jacinto on that April afternoon, the soldiers crowned the work of March 2 at Washington, and Texas as a really independent nation started on the road to destiny.

And so the story is told.

There is a Texas of Yesterday, a Texas of Today, and a Texas of Tomorrow. The Texas of Yesterday is the heritage

of the Texas of Today. Upon the Texas of Today rests the promise of the Texas of Tomorrow. If the Texas of Today appreciates its heritage, then the Texas of Tomorrow will fulfill its promise. But if, in the maddening rush of our present industrial system, we fail to keep in remembrance the sacrifices of our fathers, made that we might live in a land better than they knew, then the Texas of Tomorrow will be but a broken promise, and we shall have bequeathed to our children a land that is the worse for our having lived. When the history and traditions of a glorious past become of little moment to men, then men decay and political institutions die. But by keeping forever in mind the declaration of March 2, by keeping forever in mind the heroes of the Alamo, by keeping forever in mind the victory of San Jacinto, the future of this great empire, this Lone Star State, will fulfill its promise, bright with the rainbow tints of happiness shining on a free and prosperous people, toiling on in a land of sunshine, and so to continue until, in God's own time, this great State and the great Republic of which it now forms a part shall be called by the Omnipotent Ken to close their accounts and rest in peace with the nations of the past.







# TWELVE IMPORTANT EVENTS IN TEXAS HISTORY



- A. CABEZA DE VACA ENTERS TEXAS
- B. CORONADO AND HIS  
ADVENTURERS
- C. ESTABLISHMENT OF THE  
MISSIONS
- D. DERIVATION OF NAME TEXAS
- E. STEPHEN F. AUSTIN AND HIS  
COLONIES
- F. THE LEXINGTON OF TEXAS
- G. TEXAS' DECLARATION OF  
INDEPENDENCE
- H. THE FALL OF THE ALAMO
- I. THE MASSACRE AT GOLIAD
- J. BATTLE OF SAN JACINTO
- K. THE TEXAS REPUBLIC  
PROGRESSES
- L. TEXAS JOINS THE UNION

*The artist*

RALPH PEREIDA



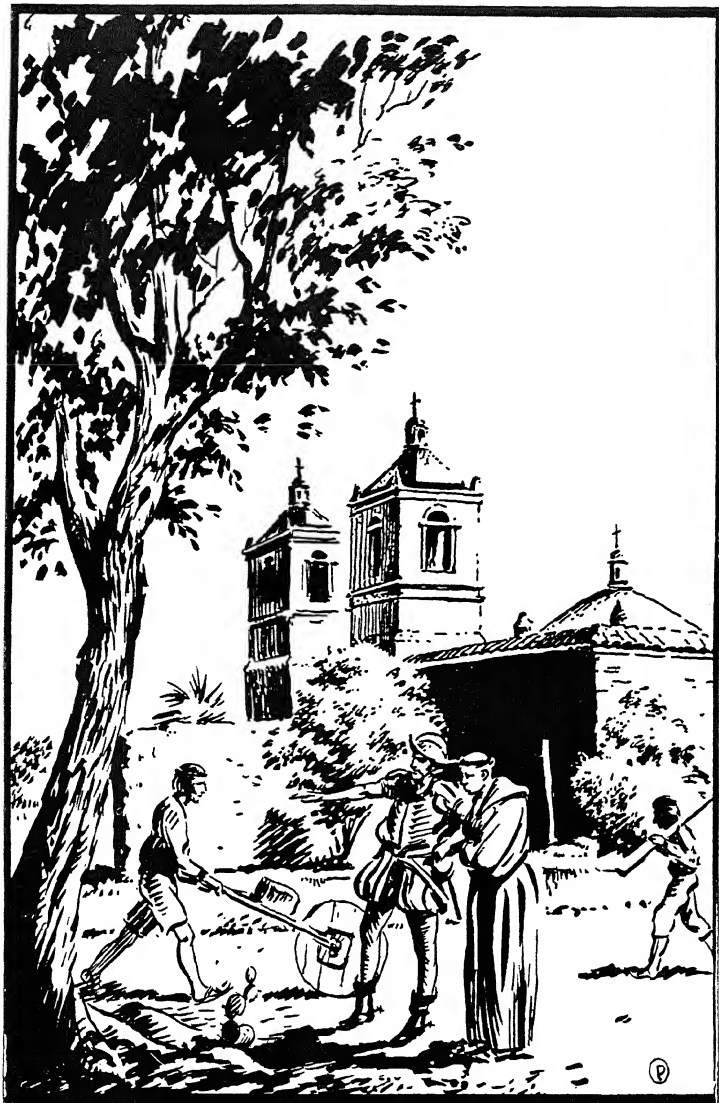


● **CABEZA DE VACA ENTERS TEXAS.** Alvar Nunez, first white man definitely known to have set foot on the soil of Texas . . . more familiarly known to the world as Cabeza de Vaca . . . survivor of terrifying experiences that reduced a full ship's company to a single man . . . was impressed sufficiently by the natural resources of this state to leave a written record of his adventures . . . a source of inspiration to succeeding explorers . . . so that the history of Texas may properly be said to date from that eventful day in 1528 when a remnant of the Florida expedition of Panfilo de Narvaez . . . fitted out as a part of Spain's colonial expansion program . . . washed ashore near the present site of Galveston . . . De Vaca, shrewder and more fortunate than his miserable companions . . . eluded his Indian captors . . . resisted pestilence and wilderness . . . found his way back to Mexico after years of hardship . . . to bring the world a fantastic story of a strange new land on the shores of the Mexican Gulf.

B



● **CORONADO AND HIS ADVENTURERS.** Leading his armed columns . . . adventurers arrayed in medieval splendor . . . Coronado relentlessly pursued the dancing mirages of the fabulous cities of Cibola . . . an elusive "will-o'-the-wisp" that led across the burning wastes of the Southwest . . . It remained for later men to discover Quivera . . . not as a land of gold and treasure . . . such as was visioned by these conquistadores back in 1540 . . . but as a land offering more wealth in natural resources than the Spanish ever dreamed of . . . Coronado and his men . . . who traversed many weary miles through Texas and the adjoining territory . . . inspired by their acts those later men who came and established an empire according to the ways of the civilized world.



● **ESTABLISHMENT OF THE MISSIONS.** Religious fervor earnestly desiring to convert Indians to Christianity . . . combined with political apprehension over the encroachment of French colonies on the North American continent . . . provoked the establishment of Spanish mission colonies in East and Coastal Texas as early as 1690 . . . when Father Massanet . . . who had journeyed the previous year with Alonso de Leon to the site of La Salle's ill-fated colony . . . opened his mission near the present town of Crockett . . . Indian hostility and the hardships of the wilderness caused the abandonment of the missions . . . However, the beginning of the eighteenth century saw the inauguration of a new period of mission development . . . But numerous misfortunes overtook the East Texas missions . . . and despite its political importance, the region was abandoned . . . and the missions were subsequently removed to San Antonio and permanently established.

D



● **DERIVATION OF NAME TEXAS.** Alvarez de Pineda, Spanish map maker and navigator, sailed along the Gulf Coast from Florida to Tampico in 1519 . . . and named the intervening coastal country Amichal . . . Various other names were subsequently applied to the region . . . and in the early mission days the name **Texas** came into common usage . . . originating, according to some authorities, from the roof-shaped abodes of native Indians . . . called in Spanish **tejas** or **texas** . . . Others believe the name was derived from a shortening of **Mixtecas** . . . as the inhabitants of the territory were called, supposedly being descendants of **Mixtecatl** . . . The most popular explanation credits the name to an Indian word of salutation, **tehas** . . . a synonym for friend that greeted the ears of Spanish explorers in East Texas.



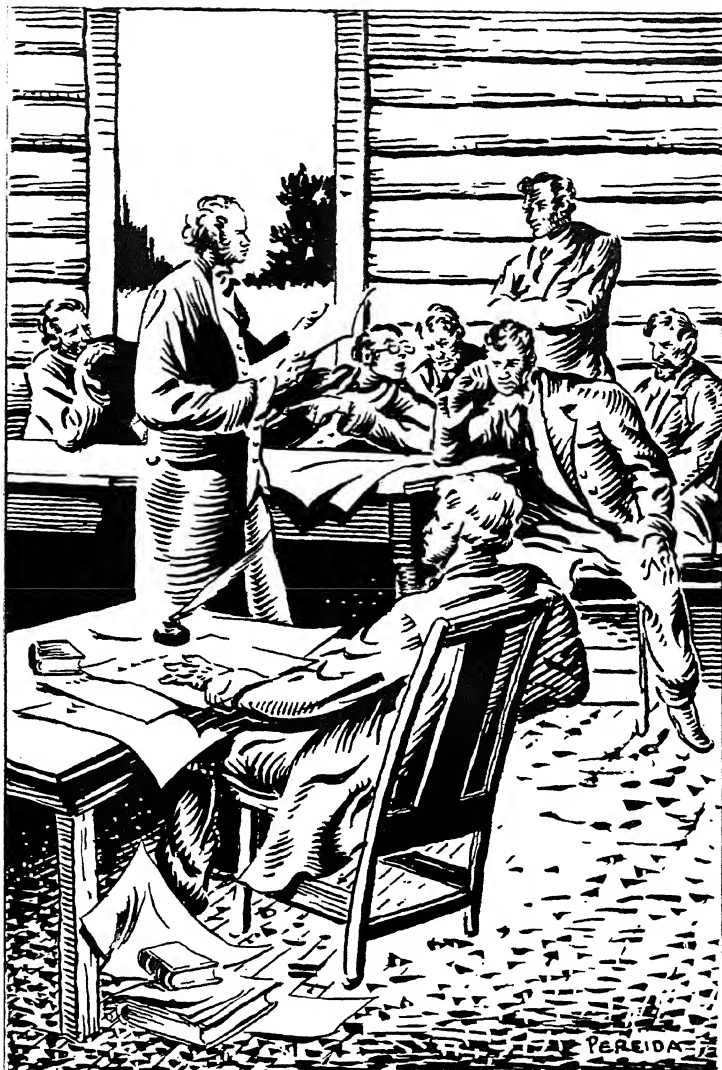
• **STEPHEN F. AUSTIN AND HIS COLONIES.** The chance meeting of Baron de Bastrop and Moses Austin in San Antonio . . . where Austin had gone to petition the Spanish governor for the right of establishing American colonies in Texas . . . changed hopeless despair to success and made possible the settlement of the future state by Anglo-Americans . . . although the elder Austin did not live to see the completion of his plans . . . His son was fully as capable, however, and despite many hardships, Stephen F. Austin brought many families to Texas . . . The safety of the colony was often jeopardized . . . and Stephen was forced to endure numerous delays on the part of officials . . . When the new Mexican government was established, Austin was forced to travel to Mexico City to confirm his concessions . . . a two-year stay in prison was part of the price he paid to win recognition . . . and plant more firmly the colony from which steadily developed the Republic of Texas.



F



• THE LEXINGTON OF TEXAS. Although minor disturbances, such as Hayden Edwards' Fredonian Rebellion . . . and the uprising at Anahuac . . . contributed to the feeling of unrest in the colonies . . . the first significant move in the Texas Revolution . . . took place at Gonzales, the Lexington of Texas, on October 2, 1835 . . . The shot was fired which started the Revolution . . . A Mexican company, under Captain Castenado . . . marched on Gonzales with a demand for the citizens to surrender a small brass cannon loaned by the Comandante at Bexar as a protection against Indians . . . The citizens hurriedly organized several volunteer companies . . . and the forces, under Col. John H. Moore . . . successfully resisted the Mexicans . . . and immediately took the aggressive side . . . the Revolution was now begun!



• **TEXAS' DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.** Undoubtedly the most important political gathering ever held on Texas soil . . . the results of which were the most momentous and far-reaching in all Texas history . . . was the Constitutional Convention . . . There had been a few previous attempts to unite the people of the colonies in a stand against Mexico . . . Ira Ingram wrote a Declaration of Independence which was signed by ninety-two men at Goliad on December 20, 1835 . . . and various other meetings were held . . . but they were all more or less local in scope . . . In the meeting at Washington-on-the-Brazos, some of the most eminent men in Texas were on hand to formulate plans for the future political and social security of the colonists . . . proof enough that the issues at hand were of fundamental importance . . . These delegates brought forth the greatest document in the history of Texas . . . when on that eventful day, March 2, 1836, they signed their names to the Declaration of Independence . . . and inaugurated the first united, sincere efforts on the part of the colonies to win the recognition due to them.

H

P.



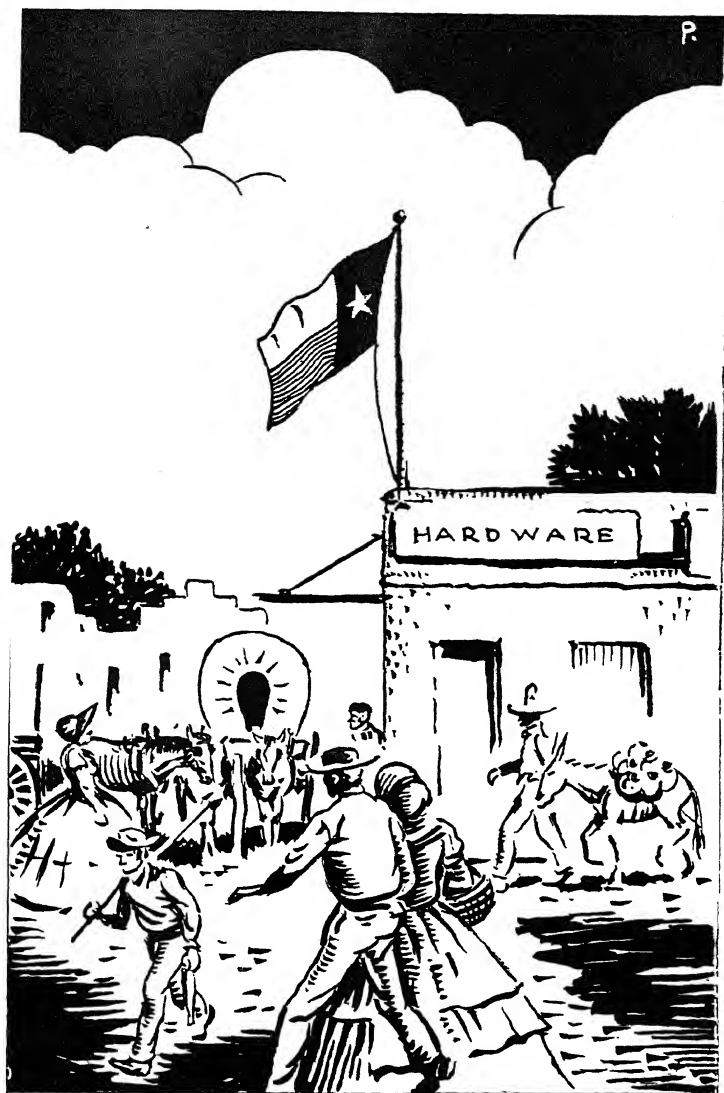
• **THE FALL OF THE ALAMO.** The darkest day in all the history of Texas . . . a day that has no counterpart in the story of civilized warfare . . . came to a close on March 6, 1836, just four days following the Declaration of Texas Independence . . . with Col. William B. Travis and his small but brave band slaughtered and burned on the Altar of Texas Liberty . . . the immortal Alamo . . . church and fortress that fell before the overwhelming forces of Santa Anna and his large Mexican army . . . Needless to say, revenge for the fall of the Alamo was the thought uppermost in the minds of Texans . . . and this desire for retaliation was of fundamental importance in bringing the struggle to a swift and decisive end.



• **THE MASSACRE AT GOLIAD.** The massacre of Fannin and his men at Goliad was certainly more brutal and unnecessary than the fall of the Alamo . . . The men of the Alamo died fighting, those of Goliad were murdered in cold blood . . . and although the disastrous slaughter spurred the colonists finally to victory, the occurrence was a tragic one, and could have been avoided . . . Fannin had a splendid military background . . . but many unfavorable conditions united to make his revolutionary efforts a dismal failure . . . Few managed to survive the carefully planned execution order . . . when on Palm Sunday, March 27, 1836, the captives were marched in three separate columns out of La Bahia . . . supposedly on innocent fatigue missions . . . and were, without warning, fired upon by the accompanying Mexican guards, many of them going to their deaths unaware of the Mexican treachery.



● **BATTLE OF SAN JACINTO.** The most glorious and decisive event in the entire struggle for Texas independence is the battle of San Jacinto . . . one of the shortest and most important fights in the world's warfare . . . yet it marked the culmination of a long period of suffering . . . a final, enlightening day that brought succor after months of darkness and hardship . . . Not the least to suffer was Sam Houston . . . for his was the job to restrain the eager Texans in the face of bitter opposition and ridicule . . . until that advantageous moment presented itself when Texas should have its chance . . . Sam Houston decided that chance had come as he surveyed the quiet camp of the over-confident Mexicans strategically located on the bank of Buffalo Bayou . . . and in a few minutes' time . . . that afternoon of April 21, 1836 . . . the Texans made good the opportunity and left no doubt as to the future security of the Lone Star Republic.



● THE TEXAS REPUBLIC PROGRESSES. Sam Houston . . . a leader in war . . . was equally as fine a leader in peace . . . and like George Washington, he played a major part in the organization of government and social and economic life after he had assisted in throwing off the bonds of oppression . . . The great natural resources of Texas responded immediately to development . . . and in a few years thriving cities and rural communities covered most of the Republic . . . a far cry from conditions two decades before . . . when the first Anglo-Americans were attempting to establish themselves . . . Under the leadership of Houston, Lamar, Jones and other eminent men, the policies of the Republic were formulated . . . diplomatic relations with other nations were established . . . facilities for education were developed . . . commerce and industry prospered . . . and in short, Texas was beginning to reap the benefit of natural wealth that had made the territory a scene of many conquests.

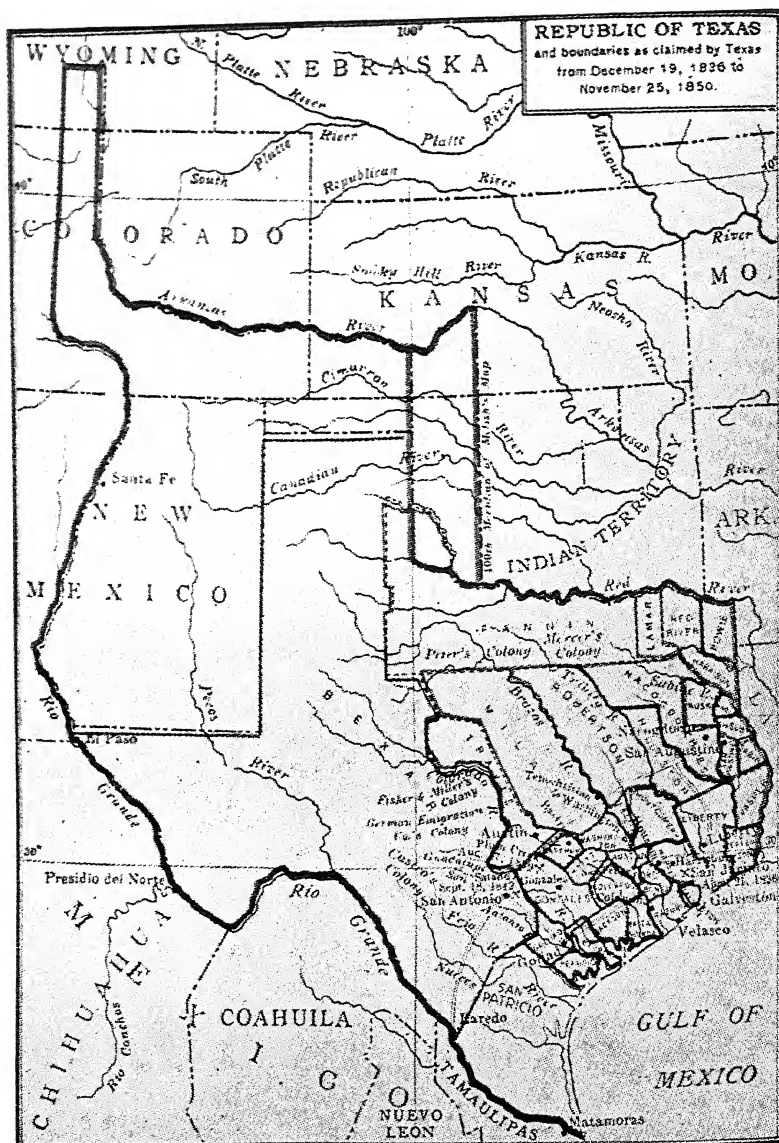
L



• **TEXAS JOINS THE UNION.** The first real development in Texas . . . it has been pointed out . . . took place with the introduction of American families into Texas . . . Spain, and later, Mexico, made no attempts to maintain a friendly feeling with these colonies . . . Families in Texas often sent their children to the States to be educated . . . and despite its remoteness from the United States . . . Texas was always considered a natural social, economic, and political subdivision of the United States . . . As soon as Mexico violated her agreements, the colonists felt that the contracts of the empresarios were no longer valid . . . and that Texas had a right to pursue her own course . . . After the establishment of the Republic, the tie of friendship between the two Anglo-American nations grew stronger . . . and it was no surprise to the world, when on June 23, 1845, the Congress of Texas passed the joint resolution of annexation which had been approved by the Congress of the United States . . . On the fourth of July following, a convention met at Austin and framed a state constitution . . . This was ratified by the people and went into effect several months later.







● Still a giant in terms of acres, Texas once claimed boundaries far more extensive. When the Republic of Texas abandoned its separate identity as a nation in 1845 and became a State of the Union, she claimed title to lands now embraced in five other states, namely, Oklahoma, New Mexico, Kansas, Colorado, and Wyoming. For several years the title to these lands was the subject of controversy between the State and the United States. In 1850, a compromise was effected whereby Texas was paid \$10,000,000 by the Federal Government in return for the abandonment of her claim. The accompanying map shows the Texas boundary as claimed by her until the Compromise of 1850, as well as the boundaries of various colonial grants within her present territory, development of which brought about her present estate as the empire of the Southwest.

# THE HISTORY OF TEXAS

## An Outline



SPAIN'S POSITION AS THE leading naval power in Europe qualified her eminently to follow up the discoveries of Columbus and lay claim to the greater part of the Western Hemisphere. Subsequent discoveries by Pineda, Cabeza de Vaca, Coronado and De Soto during the sixteenth century formed the basis of Spanish claims to the territory which is now Texas.

Spain's interest in the New World was centered primarily in the material wealth that was immediately available. Although elaborate plans were formulated by the Spanish to occupy the entire North American mainland, the insatiable desire for gold overshadowed any serious attempts to settle outlying districts, and consequently, Texas was not permanently occupied until two centuries following the voyage of Columbus.

Coronado's trip into the Southwest led to the establishment of settlements in New Mexico at an early date. The Spanish were temporarily driven out by the Indian uprising of 1689. The fugitives gathered on the Rio Grande and founded El Paso del Norte, now the present Mexican city of Juarez. Expansion of this settlement to the north side of the river marked the first definite Spanish location in Texas. Although this westerly portion of the state was the first to

be settled, it is interesting to note that it was the last portion of the state to develop in modern times.

Official action by the Spanish Government with a view to settling Texas was the outcome of many years of thought and planning. It was finally accelerated and carried out because of the encroachment of other Europeans. Back of the Spanish intentions lay economic, religious and political motives. The economic motive was the desire for a port closer to Mexico than Vera Cruz, to eliminate the long and expensive overland trade route for goods imported from Spain. The State church was anxious to extend its influence and Christianize the Indians. The political motive, as it has been pointed out, was the desire to hold the country against foreigners, especially the French.

The execution of these plans was stimulated by La Salle's attempt to locate the mouth of the Mississippi River, and his founding of Fort St. Louis on an inlet of Matagorda Bay. A number of Spanish parties were dispatched from Mexico to locate the intruders, and Father Damian Massanet, a priest who had accompanied one of these searching parties, made friends with the Indians. He returned to East Texas in 1690 and founded a mission among these tribes. This mission, San Francisco de los Tejas, was abandoned three years later.

Spanish fear of French invasion was heightened by the journey of a Frenchman across the whole of Texas. St. Denis, interested in opening up trade with the great virgin territory west of the Mississippi, suddenly appeared on the Rio Grande in 1715.

This easy, although peaceful, invasion showed the viceroy of New Spain the immediate need of prompt action towards carrying out the long cherished plans for Spanish occupancy of Texas. He enlisted the aid of St. Denis and a number of missions were established in East Texas, and intermediate points were developed. This East Texas region was maintained as a Spanish outpost almost continuously until 1762, when the cession of Louisiana to Spain made the maintenance of these post unnecessary.

The church missions, which had been established in the vicinity of the present Nacogdoches and San Augustine, were

for the most part reestablished in San Antonio, for in the previous attempts, the Indians soon got over the novelty of mission life, and the remoteness from Spanish assistance made it impossible to hold the converts in check. Since San Antonio was more favorably situated, and was rapidly becoming a considerable military post, there was little choice on the part of the mission fathers.

Following the cession of Louisiana to Spain, most of the Spanish left East Texas, but a few years later, some of the colonists, impelled by a longing for their old homes, came back under the lead of Antonio Gil Ybarbo and founded Nacogdoches. This town was later to become an important Spanish outpost with the acquisition of Louisiana by the United States in 1803.

Near the close of the eighteenth century, Nacogdoches, Goliad, and San Antonio constituted practically the net result of the various attempts of Spain over a long period of time permanently to settle Texas.

San Antonio was formally established in 1718, when the Alarcón Expedition reenforced the presidio established two years before by the Domingo Ramón Expedition, and the San Antonio de Valero mission, now known as the Alamo, was officially founded. The site had been approved four years earlier by St. Denis and had been a center of Indian life for many years before that.

Goliad was the final site selected for a mission that had originally been intended for the site of La Salle's attempted colony on Matagorda Bay.

The permanent nature of the mission reestablished in San Antonio is clearly indicated by the fine state of preservation of the mission buildings around this city today. With few exceptions, all the other mission buildings, those near Rockdale, near Menardville on the lower Trinity, on the coast, and in East Texas, have long since crumbled into ruins and disappeared.

Following the French and Indian War, which gave England all the territory east of the Mississippi, Spain held claim to the territory west of the Mississippi. After the winning of independence by the United States, Spain found

that she had a very unusual immediate neighbor.

Spain was much disturbed at the close proximity of a republican government, fearing a demoralizing influence on Texas and in the Floridas. This concern was deepened when, in 1803, only three years after Spain had returned western Louisiana to France, the latter conveyed it to the United States. Early indications of trouble between the United States and Spain were temporarily relieved by a treaty in 1806, in which it was agreed to recognize a frontier strip as neutral ground, and were permanently adjusted by the treaty of 1819, which set a definite boundary.

During the early years of the nineteenth century, the much-feared effect of republican ideas was felt by Spain. In 1810 the patriot Hidalgo sounded the first warning, and by 1821 Mexico had separated herself from Spanish domination. Thus was ended three centuries of Spanish rule in Texas.

Let us turn back a few decades and review the activities of Americans in Texas. A number of American parties entered Texas prior to 1800. These parties found little of interest, but the idea of capturing Texas from the Spanish and holding it for the United States was fascinating. Some of these filibustering expeditions ended disastrously, as the Spanish were alert to the new menace from the east. There was also a certain amount of migration, of which we have little record, having as its purpose permanent settlement.

The first officially sanctioned settlement of Texas of which we have record began with the Anglo-American colonization plans of Moses Austin. Austin died before his project bore fruit, but his able son, Stephen, inherited the concessions granted his father by the Spanish Government, and in December, 1821, the first colony from the States was in Texas.

Meanwhile, Mexico had taken the affairs of government into her own hands, and Austin was forced to wait a lengthy period to have his grants confirmed by the new republican government. When finally the affairs of the Mexican Government were straightened out, the future looked very bright for the colonies indeed. Mexico seemed anxious to offer every inducement possible for settlement by foreign immigrants, and Austin took out several additional colonization contracts, as did other empresarios. By 1835, it has been

estimated, there were nearly forty thousand people in Texas, the largest proportion of them being Americans. These people were for the most part energetic and resourceful and made an excellent beginning in developing the territory.

It was soon apparent that relations between the Mexican Government and the colonists would be unsatisfactory. At first, the centers of government were too far removed from Texas to exert much of an effect on everyday affairs. During the colony period, Texas was admitted as a part of the state of Coahuila, with the state governor and legislature located at Saltillo. A sub-department of the government was maintained at Bexar, and later, in 1834, three subdivisions in the state government were set up with headquarters at San Antonio, San Felipe de Austin, and Nacogdoches. The local government was usually headed by an *alcalde*, and there was a local municipal council known as the *ayuntamiento*.

The colonists were principally agriculturists, and had scant time to worry about government affairs. The average Anglo-Texan, then, came into little direct contact with Mexican officials and took little thought of Mexico.

With the United States, on the other hand, the relationship was very close. Most Texans had friends and relatives in the States. They looked to the United States as the source of most of their manufactured supplies and often sent their children there to be educated. The Mexicans, during the early years of their independence, were very liberal toward Americans in Texas. However, the wide barrier arising from differences in social and moral standards of two distinct racial types led to distrust and misunderstanding, and matters steadily grew worse, finally culminating in the Texas Revolution of 1835-36.

While the underlying causes of the Texas Revolution arose over a considerable period of time, and were due principally to a difference of opinion on social and political matters, three or four events occurred which clearly showed the development of mutual distrust and brought the issues clearly into the open.

The Fredonian Rebellion of Hayden and Benjamin W. Edwards in 1825, President Guerrero's emancipation proclamation of September 15, 1823, the Decree of April 6, 1830,

the Anahuac affair, the imprisonment of Austin in the course of his mission to Mexico City to urge the separation of Texas from Coahuila — all were events that plainly prophesied the impending struggle.

By a succession of tyrannical acts, all more or less directly attributable to General Antonio López de Santa Anna, who had taken over the Mexican Government as dictator, the difficulties were brought to a climax. The colonies particularly resented the occupation of Texas by Mexican soldiers, and the attempted arrest of several prominent Texans aroused Texans across the state.

Austin, upon his release from prison and his return from Mexico in September, 1835, issued a call to the colonists to arm themselves for the inevitable conflict. In less than two weeks, the Revolution was under way with the battle of Gonzales, October 2, 1835. Austin was made commander-in-chief of the Texan forces. In November delegates met at San Felipe de Austin and appointed Austin, Branch T. Archer, and William H. Wharton as commissioners to seek the aid of the United States. General Sam Houston was named to succeed Austin as head of the army.

The Texans actually began fighting, not for independence, but for their rights as granted by the Mexican Constitution of 1824. As time went on, however, the fight for complete independence became inevitable, and the Constitutional Convention which assembled on March 1, 1836, declared Texas a separate nation. Santa Anna forced the course of events by making known his intentions to crush every armed man in the colonies.

The various episodes of the seven-months' war are well known. Starting with the battle at Gonzales, the Texans took the aggressive side and in December of the same year San Antonio was captured. Then followed the slaughter of the small force of Texans under William Barrett Travis and the capture of the Alamo by the Mexicans on March 6, 1836. Three weeks later, Fannin and his men were massacred at La Bahía on Palm Sunday, in violation of conditions of surrender.

These two dreadful disasters, and Santa Anna's announcement that he would pursue rebellious Texans to the border

and wash their blood from his hands with the waters of the Sabine, caused a general exodus known as the "Runaway Scrape," in which practically every non-combatant took part. Finally Houston and his eastward-retreating band found the chance they were waiting for and, on the afternoon of April 21, 1836, they brought a definite end to the struggle by overwhelmingly defeating the Mexicans and capturing the "Napoleon of the West," Santa Anna.

Under the Constitution adopted following the Declaration of Independence at Washington-on-the-Brazos on March 2, 1836, an independent republican government, with David G. Burnet as provisional president, was set up to replace the provisional state government which had been in existence since November, 1835. Following the San Jacinto victory, action was immediately taken to organize a governmental machine. The Constitution was ratified by vote of the people, and Sam Houston was elected first president of the new Republic.

The succeeding ten years brought a multitude of troubles to the new Republic, but very definite progress was made toward a realization of the ideals which had prompted the revolution. Recognition by the United States and several European powers was secured. Mexico did not molest the Republic for several years, but Lamar, who succeeded Houston as president, pursued an active military campaign which resulted in a renewal of hostilities with Mexico.

Two Mexican invasions were made in 1842, partly in retaliation for Texan aggressiveness, and partly to emphasize the fact that Mexico had never recognized the independence of Texas. Following this came the unfortunate Mier Expedition.

Internal difficulties included the Archive War of 1842, the "Regulator-Moderator War" and various land disputes, Indian difficulties, and financial troubles.

The idea of annexation had been in the minds of the people of Texas from the earliest days of the Republic. The Southern states were also in favor of the move, but the anti-slave states vigorously opposed it. The matter was a presidential campaign issue in the United States, and Polk, in favor of annexation, won the race. Tyler, still in office, presented a resolution to Congress before his term expired, how-



ever, and Texas was accepted. The new state reserved the right to administer her public lands as well as other valuable considerations.

The annexation caused considerable trouble between the United States and Mexico. Four months after annexation, war was declared, and United States troops, under Zachary Taylor, aided by Texas forces, won decisive battles over the Mexicans on Texas soil. J. Pinckney Henderson, first governor of the state, who had succeeded President Anson Jones, took part in the campaign.

The trouble, which arose over the specific boundary of the United States, was finally closed with the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, February 2, 1848, wherein Mexico conceded Texas, and the territory which is now California, Nevada, Utah, Arizona, part of New Mexico, Colorado and Wyoming, to the United States for \$15,000,000. The Rio Grande was established as the western boundary of Texas.

Some trouble arose between the United States and Texas regarding the state's boundary. A compromise was made in 1850, giving Texas \$10,000,000 for her claim to a large part of the territory acquired by the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo. This defined the borders of Texas more or less as they are today.

The Civil War broke out sixteen years after the annexation of Texas. The state had been a slave state from the first. Most of the settlers were originally from the Southern states, and they had brought their slaves with them. Despite a strong Union sentiment in the state, of which Sam Houston was one of the chief leaders, Texas joined the Confederacy and seceded from the Union. Texas was a considerable distance from the centers of conflict, and consequently saw very little of the actual fighting. Texas exports played a large part in financing the Confederacy, and the Federals attempted to maintain a blockade of Texas ports. Galveston and Indianola were captured, other ports were attacked, and Brownsville was the scene of the last battle of the War Between the States.

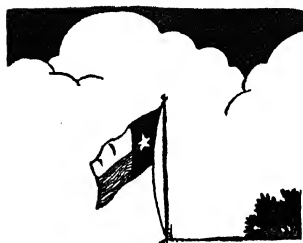
For a while following the collapse of the Confederacy, a provisional government was maintained, and then the constitutional state government was restored. The South was soon put back under military rule; however, all the state was

in a very turbulent condition for the following six years. Texas was restored to the Union in 1870. In 1872 the Democratic Party gained control and elected Richard Coke governor, putting to an end the abuses of harsh radical legislation.

Texas has enjoyed a remarkable and sensational growth since the Reconstruction. Wealth derived from cotton and other crops and from cattle raising has been augmented by tremendous incomes from petroleum, gas, sulphur, and other mineral resources. Texas has within her borders a diversity of conditions that present endless variety and opportunity, and the outlook for the future is one of great promise, free from the dangers and misfortunes which marked her past under six flags.



## Texas Symbols



**THE FLAG:** White star in a perpendicular field of blue. Two horizontal fields, white at top and red below.

**TEXAS STATE MOTTO:** Friendship

**TEXAS STATE TREE:** The Pecan

**TEXAS STATE FLOWER:** The Bluebonnet

**TEXAS STATE BIRD:** The Mockingbird

**TEXAS STATE SONG:** "Texas, Our Texas"

**TEXAS WEEK:** The calendar week in which the second day in March comes each year. Thus, Texas Week begins on Sunday and ends on the following Saturday of the week containing the second day of March.

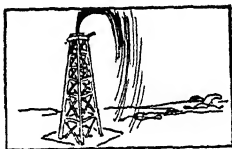
# JANUARY IN TEXAS



JANUARY 15, 1874, in his inaugural address, Governor Coke said: "When abandoning or ignoring principle, political parties become the mere partisans of men in their scramble for power and place, and they are hurtful and demoralizing to the government and people, and a bane and a curse upon the country. This is not a country for personal parties and personal issues."

1, 1851, is the first Texas New Year's celebration on record. It was at Fort McIntosh, built and occupied by U. S. troops near the town of Laredo, the oldest settlement on that frontier. The town was founded in 1757.

9, 1841, Juan N. Seguin, who commanded a company of Mexican patriots on the side of the Texans in the battle of San Jacinto, was installed as mayor of the city of San Antonio.



10, 1901, is the date the Lucas oil well, on Spindletop Heights, near Beaumont, began its nine-day period of spouting oil, "the wonder and puzzle of the world."

12, 1687, nearly two years after landing at Matagorda Bay, LaSalle bade farewell to the little group of colonists and started across the wilderness in an attempt to reach the Mississippi River.

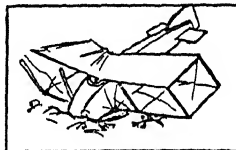
14, 1839, President Lamar of the Republic of Texas signed an act creating a commission of five to select a site for the permanent location of the government. This commission selected the village of Waterloo, on the east bank of the Colorado, and changed the name to Austin.

17, 1821, Moses Austin's application for a permit to colonize three hundred American families in Texas was granted by General Arredondo, supreme head of four provinces at that time.

17, 1838, the cornerstone of the Methodist church at McMahon's Chapel, in San Augustine County, was laid. The building is still well preserved.

19, 1807, General Robert E. Lee, after whom Lee County was named, was born in Stratford, Virginia. He was in Texas just before the War Between the States. Lee became the great chieftain of the Southern Confederacy, respected by North and South alike.

21, 1861, Sam Houston, who, as governor, was opposed to secession, called an extra session of the legislature to consider what should be done.



30, 1928, is the date on which Captain William Randolph, World War I veteran, was killed in an airplane accident at Gorman, Texas, in a cross-country flight from Kelly Field. Randolph Field was named in his honor.

# TEXAS AS IT WAS THEN

By CHRIS EMMETT

## INTRODUCTION

THE MISFORTUNES which attended the efforts of Cabeza de Vaca and La Salle in Texas can better be understood if we have at least a cursory knowledge of the explorations made before their times on the North American Continent. No conspectus of an introductory character could, of course, picture more than a skeleton of the information available, but a general knowledge is essential to an understanding of the conditions of the times.

The discovery and the successive voyages of Columbus gave the world a meager knowledge of the conformation of both North and South America, he having reached South America in 1497. Ojeda followed in his wake, in 1499, as far as Venezuela, while Bastidas and Cosa, in 1500 and 1501, explored the coast as far as the Gulf of Darien. Then Columbus made another voyage, in 1502, and sailed from Honduras to the Isthmus of Panama. Eleven years later Ponce de León struck farther north, finding and giving a name to Florida. He sailed the full length of the Atlantic Ocean side of this newly named land and passed around the tip, as far as Tampa Bay, while Balboa, a little later in the same year, stalked across the already discovered Isthmus and looked westward upon the Pacific Ocean. Four years later a slave-impressment expedition went out from Cuba to Yucatán and these searchers for human flesh traced out the meanderings of the continent as far as Campeche, and, in 1518, the Panuco was found by Grijalva. Then the following year Pineda made bold to continue northward until he passed beyond both the Mexico and Texas coasts and connected his exploration with that of Ponce de León at Florida.

Cortez then undertook the subjugation of Mexico and this was a reality as far north as Panuco by 1523, but no white man had succeeded in ferreting out the mystery of that vast expanse of territory which lay westward beyond the gigantic irregular semicircle of the Gulf of Mexico. This land even then had no name but came to be known first as Tejas, and then Texas.

Explorations on the Atlantic Seaboard were of two general characters: slow and substantial, and sporadic and ephemeral. The English are a slow and materialistic people who progress with measured, far-planned effort. Because of their calculated perseverance, once having touched the North American Atlantic Coast, they acquired, defended, and moved forward for more acquisitions. However, they relinquished none, making each colonization scheme essentially self-supporting. On the other hand, the French and Spaniards, of a quicker temperament, sporadic in their efforts, struck here and there in their quest for expansion, always looking for El Dorado. And as the English did not scatter their efforts, Texas was left to the ministrations of those who dreamed dreams and would do big things.

The entrances of Cabeza de Vaca and of La Salle into Texas were accidents but each man was engaged at the time in a chimerical scheme. The details of these schemes, the underlying purposes, the causes of their failures, and the attendant inexorable difficulties are little known. Perhaps the pages to follow may clarify the picture of Texas as it was then.

— CHRIS EMMETT.

# THE STORY OF CABEZA DE VACA

## Cabeza de Vaca Meets the Karankawa Indians

*"They are all barbarians, given to idleness, lazy, indolent . . . gluttonous and ravenous, and eat meat almost raw, roasted and dripping with blood. . . . They are idle and given over to all kinds of vices, especially the vices of lasciviousness. . . ."*

*— Extract from the Diary of Father Solis, 1768.*

THE SPAN of four centuries, that period intervening since Texas became known to civilized man, has so beclouded the origin of the state that only close students of its beginnings are informed. Few know that the aborigines of Texas were savages addicted to a degree of cannibalism and lechery which, by comparison, would make our modern "Robber Barons" and strumpets approach the Deity.

It has always been the way of man to push his perambulator, whether it be oxcart, ship, or wings-of-the-air, toward the glistening, golden rays of the setting sun.

The Spaniards were no exception. Columbus, following his hopes westward, discovered a new continent. His return to the world of civilized man — that turgid, restless world of the fifteenth century — was the signal for Spain to push onward toward greater power and larger possessions. She equipped her ships with expansive sails, fitted out six hundred of her Sindbads into what became known as the Narváez Expedition and commanded that all the possessions of Spain be "explored and the domains extended."

Safely ensconced in the luxury of a fifteenth-century palace, with nothing to do but wish, it was an easy matter to command that there be "explorations and extensions" of domain. But those forty men, a starving remnant of a proud expedition, after having had their ship swept from under them on the Florida coast and after sculling five barges westward in search of Panuco, near the present Tampico, Mexico, found conditions quite different from their anticipations. Here these venturesome Spaniards made so-called civilized man's first contact with the Texas coast, only to be met with

the sinister menacings of "Texas' first families," the original nudist colony — the Karankawa Indians.

The first history concerning Texas was written about this expedition by one of its members, Cabeza de Vaca. Naturally it concerned himself and his treatment at the hands of these Indians while he was their slave during the six years after he, with his shipwrecked band of forty, more dead than alive, had landed upon the coast of Texas.

So terrible were the experiences of this band of survivors that they, by one accord, designated their place of landing as the Isle of Malhado — the Isle of Misfortune. Spaniards coming in later years, knowing nothing of its previous designation, chose another name, one of forebodings, *Culebra* (Snake Island, from the many rattlesnakes found there).

A step into the night, when one has not been in the darkness before, invariably is taken with apprehension, and men make noctambulous explorations only when drawn by the thrill of adventure, or when urged by the prospect of gain, or driven by necessity. The most powerful of these urges is that arising from dire physical necessity. Hence, when the surviving forty Spaniards — men accustomed to civilization's requirements — were cast upon the Isle of Malhado, only to encounter its numberless *culebras*, and (as they were later to learn) its more deadly inhabitants, is it any wonder that they sat down morbidly upon the clean water-swept sands of the coast to await the physical urge rising out of starvation before they fared forth to provide food for their famished bodies? It was while on this maneuver that two of De Vaca's men encountered the "real owners" of Texas.

The first contact of the white man with the copper-colored one is mentioned in the picturesque report of Cabeza de Vaca. Wet, hungry, distraught, spurred on only by the necessity of securing food, two men of the expedition, leaving the others huddled in their misery upon the sands of the sea, scrambled westward into the canebreaks and high grass. One of them came upon a crude encampment. It was guarded by a dog. If this starving Spaniard had not been bereft of his reason, the presence of the dog might have been convincing evidence to him that man abode there. Even more convincing that he had come upon a human habitat was the discovery at the camp of a crude vessel containing a mess of fish. Snatching (as is the wont of civilized man) these posses-

sions from the unknown campers, and dragging behind him their faithful, although lethargic, dog, the first paleface to receive succor from the soil of Texas fled toward his companion who was exploring near by. But from out of the brambles came three lithe, limber, tall red men, each disporting no clothes except a breechclout, and a feather in his long black hair. Braided into strands, this coarse hair hung down their backs as absolute evidence that Samson's barber had not come hither to weaken their race. A glance at these Indians revived with a shock the ebbing life within the Spaniard and he pushed on rapidly toward his companions.

The Narváez Expedition, the report of which is given in Cabeza de Vaca's *Relación*, is in itself an adventure story unparalleled. To understand that story, now that Karankawa Indian history has assumed the mythical, it is well to visualize through the eyes of De Vaca and of later historians the character and habits of those savages who chased the starving Spaniards back to the water's edge. There the red men sat down to form a circle about the strange white men, while an ever increasing number came to sit and point their long six-foot arrows at the huddled dispirited forty.

Had Cabeza de Vaca, who then, of course, was devoid of a means of communication, been able to divine the future, had he been able to see some of the cruelties of the men who encircled him, had he known of the lechery practiced by this tribe, no doubt his courage would have failed.

But he had no way of knowing that he had been thrown upon the coast of Texas in a region uninhabited except by tribes of atrocious cruelties, cast into the very gastric maw of the only cannibals ever to occupy the North American Continent. Nor was he well enough informed of his whereabouts to know he was hundreds of miles from Panuco. However, it did soon become apparent that his life, as well as the lives of his companions, depended upon the adroitness with which he would be able to fit himself into the habit-life of these "Cronks," who now, in fact, possessed them.

A full appreciation of this fact no doubt crept into De Vaca's mind when the savages led him to their nearby village to begin the celebration, the *mitote*, over their good fortune in taking so many captives. They began by driving a stake into the ground and kindling a huge fire around it. They tapped with their fingers their diminutive drums, which



they had formed by stretching skins over turtle shells or gourds. They blew into long cane pipes, which gave off piercing high-pitched tones, all the while keeping the weird rhythm by shaking little gourds into which had been introduced pebbles and corn kernels. The lithe, powerful, naked Indians formed a circle around the fire, and with dreadful shrieks and incantations, wriggling their muscular bodies grotesquely, jumped and leaped unceasingly.

Cabeza de Vaca disappoints us by his failure to give his reactions to this strange *mitote*, but Fray Solís in his famous *Diary* (1768) paints a picture of these Indians from which it is easy to draw a conclusion about the price at which our forebears purchased Texas:

The music is accompanied by unnatural and dreadful shrieks . . . . The dancers make gestures and grimaces, wriggle their bodies in strange fashion . . . . They drive a stake in the ground. They then kindle a huge fire and bind to the stake the victim whom they are to make dance *or whom they are going to sacrifice*. All of them gather together and as soon as the discordant notes . . . are heard they begin to dance and jump about the fire . . . . Dancing and leaping, and with sharp knives in their hands, they draw near to the victim, or cut off a piece of his flesh, come to the fire and half-roast it, and within sight of the victim himself, devour it ravenously . . . In this way they go on tearing the victim to pieces until he dies . . . . They cut off the skull and, with the hair still clinging to it, place it on a stick so as to carry it in triumph during the dance . . . .

And when the first *mitote* had subsided and the forty still survived, was it not sufficient reason for Cabeza de Vaca to look furtively for a means of escape?

## Cabeza de Vaca Escapes from the Indians

*"Everything was ripe for the escape when Fate intervened in the shape of a woman over whom there arose a quarrel."*

HAD NOT Cabeza de Vaca been an extraordinary man his fortitude would have been insufficient for his predicament. Selected from the six hundred members of

the Narváez Expedition as "Treasurer and High Sheriff," with the duty devolving upon him of "collecting the royal percentage" upon all "gold, silver, jewels, and slaves, the collection of fines, the shipment of these receipts to the Seville officials and the payment of salaries," he was obviously a man of recognized abilities.

However, bereft by accident of all contacts with civilized man, held at the mercy of cannibals with whom he was not able to communicate, he had little use for title and rank. He did need a keen perception, which would permit him to transmute his bravery and fortitude into awesome idolatry in the eyes of his captors. He needed a commanding spirit, one which would make him immune to the frenzies of the tribes. By no other means, thought he, would he be able to escape.

Sensing their underlying religious fervor — a form of planetary worship — an obeisance to the inexplicable manifestations of Nature, he concluded that through this method his superior intellect would place him in a position of immunity. Perhaps, also, he may have been appreciative of the speculative — if questionable — advantages to come to those who were leaders in religious fervor, for he saw that the Indians were monogamous with "only the 'medicine-men' permitting themselves the luxury of two or three wives."

He therefore lent himself to the solicitations of his captors and agreed with them that "such extraordinary men as these must possess power and efficacy over all other things," and thereupon became a "shaman" or medicine man, aiding in cures where he could but charging fatalities to the derelictions of their own shamen or to "Bad Thing," of whom the Indians had the most frenzied fear.

A change from his confirmed Catholic faith to that of Indian shaman must have come about only after a struggle with his conscience, for throughout De Vaca's account of his efficacy as a shaman he reported "*they said* they were cured." But in his new environment expediency won over his religious predilections.

Having been exalted to the rank of medicine man and simultaneously pressed into service as a slave, he used every change of location of his migratory captors to survey his surroundings, always hoping he would find an avenue of escape. For one long year he was forced to remain on Galveston Is-

land, where his companions, weaker both in flesh and in spirit than he, succumbed to the rigors of winter and destitution. Their clothes fell to tatters. They caught fish with crude snares and dug into the soft earth for succulent sustaining roots. Only fifteen of their party remained alive. Then, to the horror even of their captors, these *civilized* men flayed some of their own number and consumed them. Then disease, as if acting the Implacable Avenger, spread stark death in their ranks. Their captors also fell under the scourge and the white men would have been slaughtered in retaliation but for De Vaca's lusty master, who was loth to lose his industrious slave. He successfully argued with his tribesmen that the disease had afflicted all alike, and therefore it was not of the white men's making. Consequently he decreed that De Vaca should cure them, and fearing the consequences of failure, he demurred until "they withheld food from us until we should practice what they required," and "finding ourselves in great want," he inaugurated a miraculous ritualistic cure which he described thus:

Our method was to bless the sick, breathing upon them and reciting a *Pater Noster* and *Ave Maria*, praying with all earnestness to God our Lord that He would give Health and influence to make us some good return. In His clemency He willed that all those for whom we supplicated should tell the others that they were sound and in good health directly after we had made the sign of the blessed Cross over them.

The regimen thrown around De Vaca was less severe now that he had a reputation as a shaman. He escaped to the mainland and with sharpened conches for scalpels, and combs ingeniously devised from oyster shells as his stock-in-trade, skirted the coastal country for many miles. At times he ventured far inland, trading combs to Indians for food, sometimes performing an operation upon an afflicted Indian with his conch-shell scalpel, which he kept sharp by endless delicate furbishing upon sandstones. But always he was seeking the way back to civilization.

Year after year passed and no sign of this civilization was found. He held the belief, however, that Panuco . . . and civilization . . . lay to the southwest. If only the four surviving companions would go with him, he would walk southward into the unknown. However, one was sick and could not

travel, and Oviedo fled from his captors, taking refuge with another tribe, for he, unlike De Vaca, was unable to endure the pain inflicted by the Indian children . . . much to the glee of the braves . . . who sat around the campfires at the close of the day and extracted hair after hair from the white men's beards!

Again De Vaca brought together three survivors — Dorantes, Castillo, and Estevanico, a Negro — and would have led the way out, but Castillo and the Negro were forced to go inland with the Iguases, a tribe which killed their female children for fear surrounding tribes would "by them increase the number of their enemies." Another long period passed before the Iguases again came to the coast with their white captives, but "Fate again intervened in the shape of a woman over whom there arose a quarrel," and De Vaca's hopes of escape were dashed for another year.

It was September again before the captives came together near the coast somewhere between the Sabine and Trinity rivers. De Vaca, no longer willing to trust his fate to the whims of woman, on the second day after their arrival set out with Dorantes and the Negro upon the trek which was to be the first crossing of Texas by civilized man.

They found Castillo in an Avavares village. Here they encountered delay but finally made a bold advance toward the west. They crossed the Trinity River and passed the night with a tribe who, the next morning, putting them in the fore, attacked and plundered an enemy camp, leaving the strangers to explain as best they could.

The defeated Indians seemed to accept this method of attack as an exceedingly good joke and thanked the white men for their presence. The next day they likewise attacked their nearest enemy and left the white men in the hands of their vanquished, with the explanation that they were "children of the sun with power to heal and destroy." They passed the Brazos and the Colorado; they skirted the hills of central Texas and subsisted on the flour made from the berries of the cedar. Finally they came to the Rio Grande, just below its confluence with the Pecos. Here they heard of buffalo to the east and learned of the Pueblo Indians to the north, who had great wealth in cotton. But De Vaca's hopes were not for wealth and cotton; he "ever held it certain that going toward the sunset we would find what we desired" — his people!

For many more days he walked up the sandy bed of the Rio Grande. Now the men were without clothing and "were going naked during the day, covering ourselves with deer-hides during the night and casting our bruised and sunburnt skins twice a year like serpents."

They left the Rio Grande where the Conchos joins this river and passed across the arid wastes of Chihuahua. Here they were surprised to find a settlement indicative of a civilization superior to any yet seen. Corn, pumpkins, and cotton were plentiful. And they found themselves in their nudity before Indian women, who were arrayed in long cotton shirts, with skirts of dressed deerskin, and whose feet were clad in moccasins. The people of this village washed their clothes with a saponaceous substance, a product of the root of the bayonet plant. Then Castillo saw the buckle of a sword belt and a horseshoe nail swung around an Indian's neck. This, he knew, was civilization!

Inquiry brought the explanation that "certain men. bearded like ourselves, with horses, lances, and swords, had come from heaven to the river, lanced two Indians and then plunged beneath the sea . . . again reappeared upon the surface traveling toward the sunset."

With this information Cabeza de Vaca and his followers pressed onward with renewed hopes. "For this we gave many thanks to God, our Lord. We had before despaired of ever hearing more of Christians." Their quest, now, was soon rewarded, for they came upon Diego de Alcárez, with twenty men and four horses, hunting Indians for slaves.

Alcárez directed them to San Miguel, where they were received by the Alcalde "with great humanity and with tears." On July 24, 1536, after ten months of ceaseless walking from the Texas coast, and nearly eight years after being cast upon Galveston Island, Cabeza de Vaca reached the City of Mexico.

On August 9, 1537, after another misadventure at sea with a French corsair, he landed at Lisbon, where he "reported the miserie of the Countrie, and the troubles which hee passed." And his Cup of Despond must have been filled to overflowing when he was told that he had come too late, that the prize he now sought, the governorship of Florida, had gone to De Soto three months before!

Estevanico, worn by the travel of years, concluded he

would remain in Mexico. While there he told of the rumors which had come to him and Cabeza de Vaca of the many rich cities to the north of Mexico, and probably these myths, which the Indians had already learned sounded well in the ears of the white man, did not suffer from contraction in Estevanico's telling.

Spurred by the desire of acquisition, Niza organized a party which left Culiacán (on the Gulf of California), and he took Estevanico, the Negro, with him as a guide. Estevanico led the party to the Indian city, Cibola, where he went ahead of the others, but was forced to remain outside the walls. Then he disported himself in a manner wholly displeasing to the Indians, who came out — and unceremoniously killed him.

## RENE ROBERT CAVELIER, SIEUR DE LA SALLE

### La Salle, First Colonizer of Texas

CIVILIZATION is built upon the dead bodies of those who have gone before. Explorers, essential stimuli to the speed of civilization, not unlike civilization itself, build upon the efforts of those who have trod the paths of the unknown. And explorers, not unlike others of mankind, often fail to avail themselves of the benefit of the efforts of their predecessors.

The career of Robert Cavalier de La Salle brings one to the conclusion that his critics were right: that he was a madman, or that he was unaware of the importance of the information which Cabeza De Vaca had given the world regarding the vastness of Texas. The *Relación*, De Vaca's account of his experiences in Texas, had been available to the world for nearly one hundred fifty years, and La Salle should have benefited from this record.

He was no novice when he landed upon the Texas coast. He was not by birth one of the "gentry" but the records show that his father was a "wealthy wholesale merchant and an honorable man." He acquired standing with the royalty, no doubt, through his family connections. He had a brother,

Nicholas, who was a lawyer; another brother, Jean, who became a Jesuit priest; and a sister who married a "counselor to the king."

La Salle had been educated for the priesthood, and because he took the vows of the Jesuit Order, lost his paternal inheritance. However, when he developed a disposition "teeming with pride and independence," wholly lacking docility, and when he concluded that his own mental make-up was not suitable to the narrow "*bourgeois* life" and that his impetuous nature was better fitted to a life of adventure, he deserted the Order of the Jesuits, recovered from his brothers and sisters an annuity of some three or four hundred dollars and sailed for New France (Canada) in 1666.

His arrival in Montreal was the cause of joy to the Jesuit Order for two reasons: he was the brother of Abbé Jean, then located in Canada, and, what was probably of more importance, he had some money.

Almost immediately La Salle was granted trading rights which should have netted him a fortune, but a fortune was not the thing of which this man dreamed. Instead of applying his talents to trade, he stood in the forest of the new land and sniffed the fragrance of the pine and spruce and his soul was filled with an ecstasy which urged him to go deeper into the unknown. He visited the camps of the Indians to watch the slowly formed words upon their lips, and came away talking their language. And when he saw their long, slim, birchbark canoes, almost feather-like in weight, but carrying four men, glide up the St. Lawrence toward the setting sun, his exploratory desires became irrepressible. He sold his possessions in the province and set about on a series of explorations which took him through the Great Lakes, down the Ohio, and finally to the very mouth of the Indians' *Missi-Sepi* — the Big Water.

Finding the Gulf of Mexico through the mouth of the Mississippi was a portentous discovery to La Salle. Through his previous explorations he had labored under what he called an *idée fixe*. In other words, he had had a firm conviction that a certain topographic condition existed. He thought Lake Superior was not in fact the western lake, but that a water route direct to China through the Great Lakes could be found. The discovery of the Gulf of Mexico through

the Mississippi made him know that his geographical conception had been wrong.

And now, as he tirelessly rowed his canoe against the current of the Father of Waters, the realization of the importance of his discovery came to him. He dipped his oars a little deeper and tugged a little stronger to hasten his return to New France. He saw that the Mississippi could be made the controlling factor in the development of the new hemisphere. France was safely entrenched along the St. Lawrence and the Great Lakes. England held the Eastern Seaboard. Spain controlled that vast unknown southern expanse, New Biscay (now Mexico and Texas), and the nation which could control the mouth of the Mississippi could control the continent. His spirits quickened when he realized the significance of the secret with which he struggled. Here was a scheme commensurate with his talents: for France he would control the continent by fortifying the river's mouth and would hold back the westward progress of the English, push commerce northward via the river to a juncture with French Canada, and by raiding across Cabeza de Vaca's Texas, destroy the Spanish to the south.

Possessed by the explorer's mania, La Salle hastily left Canada for France. His was a scheme for a king's backing; no mere man could accomplish it. For success it must have a nation's approval. But France was unfortunate in her ruler!

No description of Louis XIV would be necessary except by way of anticipation of the accomplishments of such a king. As La Salle bowed low before a gilded throne, he saw the insensate Louis, now turned forty-six, the smallpox pits blotching his pallid, dissolute face. One of his biographers described him as "coarse, somewhat vulgar, a lover of good cooking, overly fond of women, a man who appreciated chiefly the physical and sensual, yet one possessed of a fox-like cunning."

These characteristics La Salle likely overlooked, so intense was he in presenting his scheme to his ruler. With restless obstinacy, a true token of genius, he launched his attack upon the obstinacy of Louis, and, turning incredulity into sympathetic hope, painted a word picture of an empire incomparable to any then existing. Power and expansion appealed to Louis; he listened and asked questions.



As the tall, sinewy, square-shouldered, grizzle-headed Norman, flashing eyes emphasizing his dreams, paused to permit Louis to grasp the significance of his disclosures, Seignelay, the prime minister, directed the trend of events to a definite conclusion by interposing a suggestion to the King. "Would it not be the appropriate time to found a sea-port somewhere in the Gulf of Mexico?"

Louis demurred, thinking that such a scheme would offend the sensibilities of Spain, with which nation there then existed a peace. Cynically, however, the minister taunted the King with the words of his predecessor: "*It remains to be seen* whether the Spaniards wish to begin this type of warfare: viz; That all French ships navigating through the Gulf of Mexico be seized." And when La Salle added that by ascending the Red River through the Mississippi a small army sweeping westward could take the whole southern Spanish possessions, an accord was reached. Louis directed La Salle to file a list of specifications for the enterprise, but added the restriction that, should the enterprise not succeed within three years, La Salle must repay the entire cost.

At the termination of the interview La Salle had the imperial sanction to establish a fort at the mouth of the Mississippi. From the fort, he was to establish a direct line of trade by an all-water route, through the Mississippi, with New France. When the Spaniards should object to the use of the Gulf of Mexico by French ships, then, by ascending the Red River, La Salle was to attack them from the north by sweeping across Texas. Minimizing this eventuality, La Salle estimated his opposition as "some four hundred effeminate Spaniards" and "a vast ill-defended territory." He was pre-eminently correct in the latter conclusion but as to the "effeminacy" of the Spaniards, history records a different story.

To accomplish this colossal scheme La Salle asked Louis XIV to furnish him with two hundred men and "further authority to recruit fifty freebooters as my ships pass Santo Domingo." As supplements to his army he volunteered to recruit "my former companions who remained in the Illinois Valley" (a mere handful of men) and four thousand Indian warriors who had settled near the French fort, St. Louis, in the Illinois Valley. He "expected aid from the Aransas Indians," a tribe found on his river exploration. He

therefore could count his wartime strength as "five thousand marching men." He required of the Government a "ship with 30 guns, food, arms, and ammunition."

Seignelay placed at his disposal the *Joly*, a vessel of thirty-six guns, a storeship called the *Aimable*, the *Belle*, a frigate, and a ketch named the *St. Francis*. The *Joly* was manned with a crew of seventy. The request for men was reduced to one hundred soldiers, with the generous proviso that La Salle might have "authority to levy 100 more men at his own expense." Supplies for nine months were placed on board, as were eight cannon for the fort, a sufficient supply of small arms and ammunition, and supplies for a smithy and two chapels.

When La Salle terminated his negotiations with the King, Seignelay, in modern diplomatic style, gave out the official statement: "The King has heard La Salle and received him favorably. His business again is very much a secret."

Feverish preparations for the voyage might have been detected by close observers. La Salle, who appreciated the dangers incident to publicity, thwarted the inquisitive Spaniards by putting out false rumors concerning his destination and intentions. These reports returned to Beaujeau, who had been appointed to command the ship "in what concerns maneuvers" while "La Salle is to determine the route." This division of authority and the failure of the King to vest full command in the master of the ship incensed Beaujeau beyond control. Infatuated with his own nobility, proud of his birth, and feeling the poignancy of his pique over a divided command, he was unable to assuage his contempt for La Salle.

With a desire to cripple La Salle's command, Beaujeau, who was facile with the pen, wrote hither and yon, always being careful the contents of the letters would return either to La Salle or to Seignelay. In these letters he professed that La Salle was a "very honest man from Normandy but they are no longer in fashion" and that the explorer was "ignoring how to behave having spent his life amongst schoolboys, scribblers, and savages, and smelling of the provinces . . . ." At the same time he was not averse to others knowing "the difference between myself and La Salle," one who "had fought wars only with savages and who had no official rank,

whereas I have been captain of a ship for thirteen years and for thirty years have served on land as well as sea."

When it was suggested to Beaujeau that La Salle and Tonty (La Salle's selection as his successor in event of death) were invaluable because of previous exploratory experiences, he wiped away the premise with the assertion: "Although I have no knowledge of the country, I would be a very incompetent man if, being on the spot, I do not know it as well as they do at the end of a month."

Then, to harass La Salle, he predicted: "the expedition will be a failure"; that they were "bound to an unknown destination in pursuit of a goal almost as difficult to reach as the philosopher's stone . . . in an advanced season . . . [in] an overloaded ship with an ill-tempered man." But when it came to helpful suggestions, the ship's captain gave none. He even went so far as to permit the delivery to the ship of the poorest assortment of recruits imaginable, whose chief claim to fame was based upon wastrelcy and drunkenness and who had come into the service through purchase by pilfering government agents.

Despite the fribbling of Beaujeau, on July 24, 1684, the wind swelled the sails of the four ships and the expedition was on its way. But before the men had become accustomed to the sea — just four days to be exact — the main boom holding the forward sail on the *Joly* shivered, and La Salle was obliged to nurse his apprehensions of treachery as Beaujeau wheeled about to Rochefort for repairs.

Convinced that the damage had been done intentionally, each commander held every act of the other under suspicion. Each man's act was interpreted as a deliberate thrust at the other. And when, after a council of officers, it was decided that a landing would be made at Port de Paix, Beaujeau sailed past that place at night and cast anchor on the opposite side of the island of Santo Domingo, at Petit Guoave. La Salle could no longer trust his ship's captain.

At Petit Guoave it was discovered that the *Joly* was alone. This ship, faster than her mates, had outrun the others.

A landing was made, and fifty seriously ill men were taken ashore. Despite the protests of La Salle, the soldiers ranged freely with the natives. Then La Salle, ill himself, fell in the street and was carried to a nearby house. Beaujeau's sailors learned of the illness of the explorer and passed

in and out of a nearby tavern singing lustily; the more they were admonished to quietude "the more noise they made." For a time La Salle was in delirium, but he was nursed back to consciousness by his brother, the Abbé Jean, who had accompanied the expedition. He suffered a relapse when an irresponsible attendant informed him that the Spaniards had captured and confiscated his ketch, the *St. Francis*.

Before La Salle was able to resume his voyage, many distressing things had happened to the expeditionary force. Beaujeau had had time to instill into his followers a lack of confidence in their leader. Some deserted to join Santo Dominican buccaneers, and probably worst of all, as Joutel recorded in his diary: "The air of this place is bad: so are the fruits, and there are plenty of women worse than either."

The loss of the ketch was a serious one, but there was no remedy for it and the expedition went forward. They coasted along the shores of Cuba. La Salle landed to shoot an alligator, half of which he proffered to Beaujeau, hoping this act of courtesy would assure him of a willingness to cooperate.

They entered the Gulf of Mexico and veered toward the west, thinking that the strong Gulf Stream flowing to the eastward would thus be counteracted. Finally they sighted land, but at the same time the discovery was made that they had lost the *Joly*. They stood by trying to determine the outlines of the coast and to find the mouth of the Mississippi, whose latitude only was known to La Salle. A boat was sent ashore, but this effort determined nothing. They moved on, only to discover an island (Galveston Island), from which some Indians swam out to meet them. These Indians spoke an unknown language, however, and no information was acquired.

Now the coast dipped toward the south and La Salle became apprehensive. A fog enveloped them and they lay listless in the vaporous translucent film. Fearing the *Joly* had sailed beyond them, they spread sail again, but La Salle concluded that he had gone too far south, and attempted to return. A calm caught them and their sails dropped languid. Then, a breeze came shifting the fog and, to their joy, Beaujeau, with the *Joly*, was seen approaching. However, when he came alongside, the commanders quarreled again, each charging the other with bad faith in keeping the ships together.

Evidently La Salle wished to rid himself of Beaujeau and his constant interference, for he decided very suddenly to land troops and colonists: so that "I may fulfil my commission," he said. Such a statement would indicate he thought he had reached the mouth of the Mississippi. About that time a gale blew up and he was prevented from making the landing for another week. Then he expressed bewilderment as to his location, but when Beaujeau vexed him again, he landed the troops and scouted along the coast.

Joutel and Moranget came upon a pass between the islands, known as Pass Cavallo, later to become famous as the entrance to the old port of Indianola, which once boasted a teeming population, but which now is of the forgotten past. Believing the current sweeping out from Matagorda Bay through the pass to be the mouth of a large river (probably the Mississippi), the men constructed a raft, and La Salle, now having joined the party, ferried across to the mainland, where temporary camp was set up, while the ships lay at anchor beyond the bar.

It is interesting to note that, although the coast was described as marshy and grown up with reeds, there were trees large enough for the construction of canoes. This coastal region now does not afford a tree larger than a waving salt cedar within the range of man's vision. The only evidence of the explorer's portentous landing is a wooden cross, recently erected by an enterprising land company, on which is inscribed "LA SALLE."

With the camp established under great difficulties by men unaccustomed to improvisation, by men, as described by Joutel, "unfit for anything except eating," La Salle ordered the commander of the *Aimable* to feel her way carefully and slowly across the bar and to anchor inside land-locked Matagorda Bay. Just as the *Aimable* spread full sail — in direct disobedience to orders — and was about to run across the treacherous pass, some of the colonists hastened to La Salle with the sad intelligence that an Indian raid had accomplished the capture of several men.

The situation of the captives was critical. Despite a desire to watch the ominous progress of the *Aimable*, La Salle hastened to the Indians' tented village. He was wroth beyond expression at the turn of affairs, and his heart sank in dejection when he heard the boom of cannon. He knew its mean-

ing: the *Aimable* was calling for help. She had foundered on a reef.

The Indians, however, unaccustomed to such sounds, fell to the ground in fright and groveled at the feet of this strange man who stamped unceremoniously through their village, snatching at concealing tents, in search of their chief and his own companions.

La Salle was a master with the savages and, with the propitious booming of cannon adding to his mastery, he left their camp with his kidnapped men. Back at his own quarters again, he looked across the channel. His worst fears were realities. The *Aimable* lay on her side. A rising wind lashed frothy waves against her hull, and she split. Her cargo, those precious provisions so necessary for the lives of these adventurers, floated out to sea.

## The Death of La Salle

A SHIP CAPTURED by the Spaniards, a ship commander refusing to cooperate, and an only supply ship beating itself to shreds on a sandbar would have been sufficient deterrents to cause the average man to succumb to Fate. But not so with La Salle. Once he had recovered from the shock of the duplicity and treachery of the ship's master in wrecking the *Aimable*, he set about making his men as comfortable as possible, at the same time working feverishly to recover such supplies from the stranded vessel as came within range.

A small camp grew up rapidly on the point, later to be known as Indian Point, Karlshaven, and finally Indianola, by which it is now known. Timber from the wrecked vessel went into the construction of the rude quarters. Perishable goods were concealed in pits in the ground . . . and the first Texas coastal village was started.

Henri Joutel, Texas' second historian, has left this record:

He caus'd all that had been sav'd from the Shipwreck, to be brought together in one place, threw up Intrenchments about it, to secure his Effects, and perceiving that the Water of the River, where we were, roul'd down violently into the

Sea, he fancy'd that might be one of the Branches of the Mississippi, and propos'd to go up it . . . .

While explorations of the river<sup>1</sup> were being made, La Salle suffered another unexpected loss. Captain Aigron, of the wrecked *Aimable*, being ordered to make fast her well-filled launch to the poop, let the hawser break, and again much-coveted supplies floated away with the tide. This added touch of treachery resulted in La Salle's placing Captain Aigron under arrest, and putting him aboard the *Joly* for return to France by Beaujeau when that vessel should make its homeward trip. Beaujeau, however, having long wished to discredit the expedition and condemn La Salle, avowed to Minister Seignelay that the accusation by La Salle against Captain Aigron was insufficient "inasmuch as it did not fulfill legal requirements."<sup>2</sup>

In the meantime Beaujeau made La Salle's position as uncomfortable as possible. A demand from La Salle that the cannon be unloaded brought only a reply that they were in the hold of the vessel and that he dared not shift his ballast for fear of capsizing. Evidently, however, the cannon came ashore, for Joutel made this significant diary entry:

He [Beaujeau] knew we had Eight Pieces of Cannon and not one Bullet. I do not know how that Affair was decided between them.<sup>3</sup>

Then Beaujeau crowded sail and sped through the pass.

---

<sup>1</sup> It would be interesting to know whether Joutel referred to the river to the north or south of their position. If to the south, then it was the Guadalupe, but if to the north, it was the Lavaca.

The presumption is that the north river was the one to which reference was made, for there is no record of any explorations having been made either on the Guadalupe or the tributary, the San Antonio River. There is abundant reference, however, to the explorations of the Arenoso, Lavaca and Navidad rivers, which lie to the north of La Salle's original landing point. The current of the combined rivers, the Guadalupe and San Antonio, is much stronger normally than that of either of the rivers to the north. Had La Salle known of both rivers it is quite likely he would have hunted southward, because of the fact of the greater strength of the river current, since he was under the impression that the Mississippi lay near.

<sup>2</sup> Legal requirements, however, were dispensed with when Seignelay later saw the testimony, and Aigron was incarcerated in the tower at La Rochelle for his perfidy.

<sup>3</sup> The presumption is that the two commanders were then quarreling over the unloading of the "bullets" for the cannon.

leaving La Salle under the impression he was to return after replenishing his ship with fresh water.

After the *Joly* had passed from view, a Spanish ship skirted the coast, evidently seeking the colonists, who knew that discovery meant death. Fearful lest they be found, the colonists' courage fell to a low ebb. Some fled like frightened animals, seeking they knew not what:

A Spaniard and a French Man stole away and fled, and were never heard of. Four or five others follow'd their Example, but Monsieur de La Salle, having timely Notice, sent after them, and they were brought back. One of them was condemn'd to Death.<sup>4</sup>

La Salle's colonists now were on their own resources. The thoughtful leaders encouraged a friendship with the Indians who "came and imbraced us in a particular Manner, blowing upon our Ears." They scouted out the adjacent country and found the "plains adorn'd with several little woods . . . . We also had an infinite Number of Beeves,<sup>5</sup> wild Goats, Rabbits, Turkeys, Bustards, Geese, Swans . . . and many other Sorts of Fowl fit to eat, and among them one called *le grand Grosier*, or the Great Gullet, because it has a very large one . . . another . . . the *Spatula*, because its Beak is shap'd like one, and the feathers of it being of a pale red, are very beautiful. . . ."<sup>6</sup> As for fish in the nearby waters they caught a sort of Barbles . . . having three bones sticking out, one on the back, the other on each side of the Head, and without Scales.<sup>7</sup>

La Salle's explorations resulted in the abandonment of the original encampment just off the point near Matagorda Island, and the *Belle*, their last ship, in which they placed all their hopes of discovering the Mississippi River, sailed toward the mouth of the river found toward the north.

Ascending as far as they thought practicable, and above

---

<sup>4</sup> From Joutel.

<sup>5</sup> Without question, the buffalo.

<sup>6</sup> The bird here described is probably the flamingo, which has almost entirely disappeared from the Texas coast. He may have had the "spoon-bill" duck in mind, which is sometimes called the "spatula."

<sup>7</sup> This was the catfish, which is found in both the fresh and salt waters of Texas.



salt-water tide, even above the point where the *Belle* could come alongside them, they found a considerable embankment and reestablished their fort near the fresh water of the river, not far distant from a skirt of timber. Their position there was one that could be more easily defended against the Indians, who had now become very troublesome because of indiscretions on the part of the colonists.

While yet encamped upon the bayfront, a little to the south of the present location known as "Miller's Point" (a renowned fishing resort), La Salle learned that the Indians had recovered some bales of blankets from the bay, part of the cargo of the *Aimable*. He sent some men after the blankets, admonishing them not to take the goods by force but to engage the Indians in trade, thus bringing about the desired results while retaining their friendship. The party, however, disregarding orders, probably because of fear of the Indians, came upon the savages' camp flourishing their guns in such a manner as to cause the Indians to believe they were to be slaughtered, and therefore to run away, leaving only some small boys and women in the camp.

With the "braves" fleeing in the tall grass and no one to interfere, the La Salle party took the blankets and such canoes as they needed and set out upon the return to camp. However, they had no oars, and the small poles with which they had provided themselves failed them against the deep water and the steady waves now coming in from the south and east. They were, therefore, forced to land and take to the salt grass, where night came upon them.

During the night they suffered a devastating attack, and from then on, were forced to be on their guard continually. Night attacks were common: men were killed; some disappeared without explanation, never to be heard of. To add to their plight, one day when the wind blew steadily from the land, a great fire swept from off the vast prairie toward their encampment, threatening all their possessions, and putting La Salle in great fear that his powder, so essential to their existence, would be destroyed.

The new quarters, having the advantage of being on high ground, near fresh water and firewood, and near timber for the fort construction, had also the disadvantage of being just across the stream from an Indian encampment. But despite

impending dangers, all who were able to work were pressed to the task of erecting the fort. Many, however, had now fallen prey to the effects of their dissipation at Petit Guoave.

The fort soon took form. It was a two-story affair, constructed chiefly from wood, and having a "lean-to" addition. But the exhausting labor done in dragging logs and heavy timbers from the woodlands some two miles away, and the even more arduous drudgery involved in transporting, partly by water and partly on land, the abandoned timbers from the wrecked *Aimable*, which had previously been placed in the temporary camp at Indianola, reduced the number of laboring men to a bare minimum. Some even died of their diseases, aggravated by their labor.

Others of the colonists succumbed to accidents while this work was going on, and food, always scarce, had to be rationed under the order of the commander. Fresh meat, luckily, was always available, and this was made the more palatable by the discovery of a salt lake which had formed from the evaporation of the water from the sea. Up to this time, the lack of salt had been one of the commander's greatest concerns.

Indians continued their forays, and it was necessary to post a guard continuously. No one was allowed the privilege of leaving the palisade without orders. And to add to the mental dejection of the colonists, one of their number, who had been ordered to follow behind a seine sent out after fish, was drawn into swift water and floated out to sea, whilst his comrades, having no boats, looked on until he perished in the distance.

Then, one of the priests, who had thought to be serviceable to the hunters, ventured near a wounded buffalo and for this indiscretion was impaled upon the horns of the bull. Only because of this ecclesiastic's agility did he come off with his life, but even then he remained in bed for a number of months of recuperation.

More and more it became evident to La Salle and to his ever faithful Joutel that help would have to be brought to the colonists from the civilized world, that he would be forced to find the mouth of the Mississippi and establish contact with the French in Canada, or his colony would dwindle beyond succor.

With the desire to find civilization, and forgetting his original purpose — finding the Mississippi — except as this was incidental to relief, La Salle made repeated trips along the coast. Failing to find any landmarks familiar to him or to learn through the Indians of the existence of the big river, he concluded it was imperative to make a supreme effort to walk to the Mississippi, or to perish in the effort.

One of the trusted men of the expedition, one of the most valuable for the purpose of the commander, was Monsieur le Gros, but Fate had it that La Salle should lose him. Joutel described this unfortunate incident in this manner:

About that Time, and on Easter-day that Year, an unfortunate Accident befel Monsieur le Gros. After Divine Service he took a Gun to kill some Snipe about the Fort. He shot one, which fell in a Marsh; he took off his Shoes and Stockings to fetch it out, and returning, through Carelessness trod upon a Rattle Snake, so called, because it has a Sort of Scale on the Tail, which makes a Noise. The Serpent bit him a little above the ankle, he was carefully dress'd and look'd after, yet after having endur'd very much, he dy'd at last, as I shall mention in its place . . .

. . . The Sieur le Gros, who had remain'd aboard the Bark *La Belle*, ever since the first voyage she made to our former Habitation, was carry'd to the new One. And his leg still swelling the Surgeon was apprehensive of a Mortification, and advis'd him to consent to have it cut off. He did so, tho' with Regret, the Operation was made, but a Fever follow'd immediately, and he liv'd but two Days, dying on the Feast of the Decollation of St. John Baptist . . .

This toll of accident, sickness, and depredation added materially to the discontent of the survivors. La Salle, harsh, domineering and seclusive, did not fail to understand the growing lack of faith in his leadership. It was like an ominous cloud which became more and more forbidding each day. The rumble of the thunder of discontent reached his ears, and he knew it was necessary to have action or revolt would follow. Then, despite the fact that he was only just recovering from a disease which had its incipency in exposure, and that he was badly discommoded from a congenital hernia, La Salle hastened the preparations for a last long walk into the unknown. He resolved to walk eastward into civilization, or failing, to let his fate be sealed with the effort.

So serious were the evidences of revolt in the fort that he even let his plans be known, and the colonists took heart again, only to fall back into mental despondency when their leader failed to recover sufficiently to make the trip as scheduled. Joutel, sensing the growth of revolt and wishing to keep the anticipations of the colonists more hopeful than there was reason for them to be, volunteered to lead the rescue expedition without the commander. This permission was refused, for La Salle felt that his knowledge of the country, three times explored far toward the Sabine, and his acquaintance with the Indians with whom he had made friends in his travels, were essentials to the successful completion of the journey. But when an alligator pulled down into the water one of the colonists who tried to cross a stream, and chewed him to shreds, and when several more men lay down from exhaustion and died, La Salle announced a definite determination to depart.

Joutel was ever the psychologist of the expedition. When the commander left the palisade, Joutel, conscious of the panicky condition of the men and the ever growing belief that La Salle was allowing the colony to die through inertia, caused all to enter enthusiastically into games which brought forth mirthful reactions. But when La Salle reappeared, the steady grind of discipline was again inaugurated, with the resultant melancholy. But with all the omens of hopelessness encompassing them, there were still some who thought hopefully of the delivery of the morrow, and some of the women, anticipating a profitable future as a result of their colonization, even quarreled over the position they might occupy when the King of France should know that they had been the first to be mothers of children born in the colony.

Descriptive of these contentions, Joutel wrote during the long night vigils:

We spent some time longer after this Manner, during the which there arose a Controversy about the Privileges the King grants to the First-born of the French Colonies in America. The Sieur Barbier's wife was with Child, and he claimed the Privilege granted for that Child. The Widow Talon had a Child born in the Passage from France to America and alleg'd that her Child, tho' born before our Arrival, ought to be preferr'd, but the Sieur Barbier's wife miscarrying the Dispute was not decided.

Joutel had lent himself to that situation in June of 1686 when he permitted the marriage of Barbier and one of the young girls who had come with the expedition. This was one of the first marriage ceremonies performed in Texas. Joutel describes the marriage as follows:

When the Sieur Barbier went out a Hunting, I commonly sent with him some Women and Maids, to help the Hunters to dress and dry the Flesh; but being informed that he used to slip aside from the Company with a young Maid he had a Kindness for, and which gave occasion to some well grounded Railleries; the said Barbier being told I was acquainted with that Affair, came and spoke to me in private, desiring leave to marry that young Woman. I made some Difficulty of it at first, advising him to stay till Monsieur de la Salle return'd; but at last, considering they might have anticipated upon Matrimony, I took the Advise of the Recolet Fathers and of Monsieur Chedeville the Priest, and allowed them to marry. Monsieur le Marquis de la Sabloniere following this Example, ask'd the same Liberty, being in Love with a young Maid which I absolutely refused and forbid them seeing one another.<sup>8</sup>

La Salle looked upon his worn and disheartened colonists and knew he must hurry. The pinch of winter had reduced their number; the covering of their houses, made of the skins of animals, chiefly the buffalo, sagged when wet and contracted when drying, thus filling the structures with rain; their clothes were nearly worn out; and for footwear they were reduced to using the untanned hides of the buffalo. These skins dried on their feet and pinched them sorely, and they were constantly forced to dip their feet in water to soften their improvised shoes.

As much as La Salle wished to remain at the fort during the remainder of the winter, he saw that this condition could not endure without a showing of action, so on Christmas Night, 1687, he assembled the entire colony within the chapel of the fort where "Midnight Mass was solemnly sung, and on Twelve Day, we cry'd 'THE KING DRINKS' (though we had only water)! When that was done we began to think of setting out."

---

<sup>8</sup> The reason for this refusal was the fact that Sabloniere was of higher rank than the maid, and Joutel disdained the idea of the Marquis' descending to a lower social position.

Numerous details had to be completed before the party could actually leave the fort. Twenty-seven people were selected to be left as its garrison. For purposes of defense, according to Joutel, "eight pieces of Cannon [were left] without any bullets." This was not generosity on the part of La Salle, for he could not have taken any of the cannon with him had he so wished, even if there had been any "bullets," and without the bullets they were equally as useless to the colonists, although they could be relied upon to make a noise in the case of Indian attacks.

Finally January 12, 1687, came. Seventeen men, including Joutel, the close observer, and later to be the historian of the expedition, Moranget, the nephew of La Salle; Father Douay, and Abbé Cavelier, the brother of La Salle, passed from within the protection of the palisade. They took a course northwest of the fort, and with packs on their backs, in which they carried an ill assortment of rations for such an endeavor, they went a short distance and turned to look back at their comrades, who had mounted the fort for a departing view.

Those who remained behind realized the importance of the party for relief, and the farewell was a touching one. With little food either in the fort or on the backs of the men going away, these survivors of the first colony in Texas knew they were face to face with their last effort.

Since the food supply was the paramount thought of the wanderers, they lived "off the country" as much as possible. Joutel says of the things they found to eat:

. . . among the rest some Creatures as big as an indifferent Cat, very like a Rat, having a Bag under their Throat, in which they carry their Young. They feed upon Nuts and Acorns, are very fat, and their Flesh is much like a Pig.<sup>9</sup>

On and on they went, lessening their burdens as best they could by using two horses they acquired from friendly Indians, who accepted knives and beads in exchange. Their general course was north. It is believed they forded the Colorado River in the vicinity of either Alleyton or Columbus, Texas. The winter rains were falling. Each river encountered

---

<sup>9</sup> Despite the opinion of some historians that this was a large rat, undoubtedly the reference is to the opossum.

increased their fording troubles. But they swam their horses loaded with all the brutes could carry, and transported their perishables in a rudely constructed boat which they had improvised from the skins of buffaloes.

From Columbus they turned slightly toward the east, keeping far enough inland to avoid the inundated coastal country. Finally La Salle recognized a territory in which he previously had made a cache of corn. Not wishing to turn aside from his course, La Salle directed eight men to go for the corn. With this party were Liotot, the surgeon, Duhaut, and Nica, La Salle's faithful Indian guide.

The corn was found, but the moisture had rendered it useless as food. They therefore set about to kill buffalo. Nica was successful, and they sent word to La Salle that they were delaying their return so as to "jerk" their beef. They went about preparing their food, and Moranget and Duhaut found themselves quarreling over the right of eating the "marrow bones and other offals." Liotot engaged in the quarrel because of his dislike of Moranget, and during the night, concealed by the blanket of darkness, he crawled stealthily toward him and hacked him to death with his hatchet. Then Nica, awakened by the blows, stirred in his bed, and he too had the same fate meted out to him.

In the meantime La Salle, becoming fearful at the failure of the hunters to arrive, started out to find them. Announcing his arrival, at the point where he expected to find the party, by firing his gun, Duhaut (concealed and watching his approach) "fired his Piece and shot Monsr. de La Salle thro' the Head, so he dropped down dead on the Spot, without Speaking one Word."

The body of La Salle was then stripped and was rolled ruthlessly into the bushes. The murderers turned away, going to the camp where the leader had left the remainder of the party.

Joutel had been second in command, but now that La Salle was dead, it was questionable whether the murderers would submit to authority. However, an agreement was reached, and they traveled along together until they encountered the Ceniz Indians. Here they heard of some of the men who had deserted La Salle on a previous expedition. Camping with the Indians, they sent for their former comrades, and one Frenchman returned. This man, however, refused

to continue the search for the Mississippi, preferring to remain with the Indians, although he gave Joutel such information as he had acquired from the savages.

Again the murderers quarreled, and this time they killed each other. But Joutel, Abbé Cavelier, Father Douay and two others pushed on toward the east and finally reached the Mississippi. From there they worked north to Canada and then to France, but they harbored the true story of the death of La Salle and the condition of the colony until it was too late for rescue.

## DISCOVERY OF FORT ST. LOUIS BY THE SPANIARDS

**I**F COMING EVENTS cast their shadows before them, then, most certainly, events which have transpired leave a residue by which they may be interpreted.

As far as the French people were concerned, they heard nothing more from the colonists except what news came with the few survivors who accompanied Joutel and the brother of La Salle.

The Spaniards, however, were untiring in their efforts to acquire information concerning the French colonists and persisted in their determination to find them. From the passengers taken off the captured ship, the *St. Francis*, and from the deserters, probably, who took leave at Petit Guoave to join their fortunes with the Santo Dominican buccaneers, the Spaniards knew of the intentions, and the probable location, of the La Salle colony. A French corsair was captured off the coast of Yucatán in 1684. Its crew confirmed the intelligence that La Salle sought to plant his colony at the mouth of the Mississippi. Consequently, Spanish expeditions cruised the waters of the Gulf and skirted the coastline incessantly searching for the intruders:

In 1687, the Spaniards found the wrecks of the *Belle* and the *Aimable*. They took from the wreckage four pieces of artillery and three painted *fleurs-de-lis* as evidence of the fact, as they thought, that the expedition had perished in the bay. They reported their conclusions to Spanish authorities but Spain was not satisfied without a better showing of the *corpus delicti* and they were again required to put out in search of the colony.



Five expeditions went out from Mexico via sea and these were followed by four upon the land. Alonso de León was one of the most persistent and adventurous of the searchers. He retraced his path into Texas in 1686, and again in 1687. and in the following year he learned of a strange white man in the vicinity of what is now Eagle Pass. He conducted his forces to that place and found a lone Frenchman, who, unhindered, was impressing his rule upon a large group of Indians. He was captured, taken to Mexico, and, upon promise of release, led De León's expedition back into Texas toward Fort St. Louis. The quest came to an end in 1689, when De León found the ruins of the dilapidated fort which had so long eluded their eyes.

When he approached the fort all was silent. Within the palisade the scattered wreckage told its own story. The Frenchmen's chests were torn open. The contents were scattered about. Costly books, their bindings showing with what care they had been made, were torn and wet and tossed to the fury of the winds. The gunstocks were broken. The arquebuses lay impotent. Spiders had spun their webs across the doorways. The fort had returned to the solitude of the uninhabited. Near by on the prairie three clean-picked skeletons were found. One was identified as that of a woman. The Spaniards needed no one to tell them. The Indians had preceded them. Their blood-letting, although undelegated, had been done for them.

Poking into the possessions of the deceased colonists, the Spaniards, according to their report, found that the fort had consisted of six small houses within the palisade and a larger house, thought to have been a shed constructed for the protection of their animals. Besides these, the fort itself, still in a good state of repair, was found to have been constructed from the timbers of a vessel. The lower floor had four rooms and a chapel. The upper floor was not divided and it was evident that this had been reserved for storage. In the yard were "eight small guns of four or six pounds." Some of these were yet on their carriages.

De León made inquiry of the Indians regarding the fate of the Frenchmen. He was told that some Frenchmen still lived to the northeast with the Indians. Consequently, he sent a searching party for them, and withdrawing his forces to the mouth of the Guadalupe River, waited for their re-

turn.<sup>10</sup> The searchers succeeded in bringing with them two Frenchmen, one being Jean L' Archeveque, an active participant in the La Salle murder conspiracy. Pierre Muesnier and Pierre Talon refused to return with the Spaniards, choosing to take their chances for life with the Indians in preference to trusting the Spaniards. Being in a measure subservient to the will of the Indians, De León's cohorts used discretion, permitted them to remain, and did not attempt to force the issue, for fear of bringing down upon themselves the ire of the Indian tribes.

Pierre Talon<sup>11</sup> had been one of the party that had gone out in search of the Mississippi shortly after the colonists landed. While away from the fort he had either deserted La Salle or become lost and he had not returned. When found by the Spanish searching party, having accustomed himself to the habits of the Indians, he expressed his intention to remain with the red men, even though he did not know then the fate of his four children and his wife, who had remained at the fort.

Although Talon did not know it at that time, and neither did De León, the children of Talon were captives of the Indians. Two of the boys were rescued later by the Spaniards, and they acted as guides for subsequent explorations. They became the real messengers depicting the fate of the St. Louis colony. They told how, shortly after the departure of La Salle, smallpox had ravaged the colonists and their number had again been depleted. Death, misery, hunger, and lassitude, then torpor—which followed the sound of the incessant dashing of the waves against the unbroken shoreline—were their only companions. With a hopelessness born of fear they had looked across the prairies and waited for the return of La Salle, at the same time hoping, yet fearing, that even the Spaniards would find them.

With their minds in this condition they had relaxed their vigil against the Indians and had attempted to make friends with them. Forgetting the precautionary admonitions of

---

<sup>10</sup> It is not plain why De León left the security of the fort to camp at the mouth of the Guadalupe River, unless his position on the river could be more easily found than at the fort.

<sup>11</sup> Evidently the La Salle Expedition had two persons named Talon with it, for there was one who was called the "Widow" Talon and another the "Canadian" Talon, the latter having a wife and four children, three boys and a girl.

La Salle, they had permitted the Indians to come and go in the village at will. But the surface pretense of friendship of the Indians did not change their characteristic trait of revenge. They recalled with rancor their experience with the Frenchmen who came with flaunted arms to recover the bales of blankets lost in the water when the *Aimable* was wrecked and how these same white men had stolen their canoes.

Consequently, one day five Indians came into the village under the guise of traders and commenced a noisy barter. Any noise was welcome to the dejected Frenchmen, and unsuspectingly they gathered around the traders. Then, quite suddenly, a band of warriors, bedecked as flamboyant Jezebels of Hell, with cane-pierced lips and ochre-smeared, naked bodies, arose from hiding against the river bank and slaughtered with hideous cruelty and torture all except the children of Talon and one man named Breman. The mother of these three small boys and one daughter was hacked to death before the children's eyes, and they were impotent to interfere. But a squaw threw the mantle of her protection around the children and they went off with her.

When the colonists were dead, the Indians spread their destruction to the fort, pillaging and plundering until there was no more devilry to be done, and it was in this condition that the Spaniards had found the site.

In 1690, De León came back to Texas, stopping his contingent again on the Guadalupe River while he, accompanied by Father Massanet and twenty soldiers, again returned to the fort. Father Massanet in his report claims the distinction (a distinction, indeed, which will not let him be forgotten in history!) of having set fire with his own hands to Fort St. Louis, which was entirely consumed by the flames.

In the summer of 1690, another expedition came out of Mexico, this time under the command of Captain Francisco de Llanos. With him was Gregorio de Salinas. This man seems to have been with the previous De León Expedition and to have acted as guide. They had with them also M. J. de Cárdenas y Magana, famed in Mexico as a surveyor. This expedition came by ship into the bay, before what is now Indianola and Port Lavaca. They traced out the coastline, delineating a marvelously accurate map, showing the channel between the islands at the entrance of the bay, the point of

outjutting land (Indian Point) on which La Salle had originally set up his temporary camp, Chocolate Bayou (now called), and farther north, the confluence of two rivers, indisputably the Garcitas and Arenoso. They gave the more southerly river the name "Rio de Franceses"<sup>12</sup> and marked the map of the south bank with three crosses, labeling the spot "Población de Francés," intending without doubt for this to indicate the site of Fort St. Louis.

To be certain that he had found the remnant of the fort, Cárdenas made this satisfying investigation and entered in his report this memorandum: "We found the place where the artillery of the fort was said to be, and we uncovered it in order to see it and satisfy ourselves. We saw that it was made of iron."

It was the intention of Spain to brook no intrusions upon the territory of Texas, and when she realized that France could become a menace upon the coast, she set about the establishment of missionary posts, strengthened by soldiers. One of the sites selected for a mission was the exact spot on which La Salle had built Fort St. Louis. Excavating the cannon "made of iron," the Spaniards used them as their instruments of protection—the same cannon over which La Salle and Beaujeau had quarreled, and over which Joutel wrote despairingly: "We had eight pieces of cannon and not one bullet."

It was the intention of the Spaniards to make a permanent establishment when they erected their mission upon the foundations set by La Salle. Aguayo, the builder, completed his task in 1722 and gave the building the name *Nuestra Señora de Loreto*.<sup>13</sup> The mission was occupied for a period of four years, after which both the fort and mission were re-

---

<sup>12</sup> Historians from 1690 until 1914 have almost uniformly designated the Lavaca River, in Jackson County, as the site of La Salle's Fort St. Louis. This mistake may be accounted for because of the fact that the Lavaca and the Navidad rivers, as well as the Garcitas and Arenoso rivers, have their confluence near the Bay of Matagorda and only a short distance east of the confluence of the latter named rivers, and these combined rivers are larger than the Garcitas (which incidentally is wholly in Victoria County) and the Arenoso, which latter is the line of county demarcation between Victoria and Jackson counties.

<sup>13</sup> *Nuestra Señora de Loreto* is not to be confused, as is frequently the case, with another mission, *Espíritu Santo*, which was across the bay from *Nuestra Señora de Loreto* and the old Fort St. Louis.

moved to a point now in the Davidson pasture, on the south side, and overlooking the Guadalupe River near Victoria, and between what is now called the "Mission Valley Road" and the Guadalupe River. The entire establishment of Nuestra Señora de Loreto, including the La Salle cannon, went to the Victoria location. This mission existed for another term of twenty-seven years and was then transferred to Goliad, or more particularly to the mission at La Bahía (which is immediately south of the present city of Goliad and across the San Antonio River from that city).

The history of the mission at La Bahía is intertwined with the La Salle Expedition to this extent: The cannon, first quarreled over by the joint commanders, then deplored by Joutel as being without "bullets," then dug up by the Spaniards after the sacking of the fort, removed to Mission Valley, and then to La Bahía, became a part of the accoutrements of war at Goliad, first in the hands of the Spanish, then commanded by the Mexicans, and finally those on which Colonel Fannin staked the independence of the Republic. But it was on March 11, 1836, that these cannon ceased to be used. On that day, less than a hundred years after they had come to their La Bahía home, Sam Houston, newly elected to command the force of the Texas Republic, from his headquarters at his camp in Gonzales, directed the following message to Colonel Fannin, commanding at Goliad:

SIR: You will as soon as practicable after the receipt of this order, fall back on Guadalupe Victoria, with your command and such artillery as can be brought with expedition. *The remainder will be sunk in the river . . .*

Fannin rolled his cannon into the river and otherwise concealed them from the Mexicans and began his retreat, with what results the world too well knows. Ninety-four years rolled around before the cannon were heard of again.

In the meantime the Cárdenas report of the location of the site of Fort St. Louis had been in existence amongst the Spanish records, but the importance of the report was not appreciated until it came into the hands of Dr. Herbert E. Bolton, in 1914. The report was then two hundred and twenty-four years old. Dr. Bolton, in possession of the map, concluded to test its accuracy by going upon the ground and comparing the old map with more recent and detailed

surveys. This he did, leaving Austin, where he held a chair in the Department of History, University of Texas, on July 3, 1914.<sup>14</sup>

Passing through Victoria on July 4, he stopped at Placedo. Inquiries made there convinced him that the object of his search was on the Claude Keeran Ranch, which lies between Placedo and the Garcitas River. He established communication with Mr. Keeran, who volunteered to assist him, and after the Doctor had spent the night at a camp on the ranch with a Mr. Vickers, he was joined the following morning by Mr. Claude Keeran and Mr. Charles Webb. Both Mr. Keeran and Mr. J. S. Webb, of Placedo, were familiar with a location overlooking the Garcitas River, which had been locally called the "Old Mission" for many years, without any history having been known of it. With the guidance of Mr. Keeran they went to the spot, and found that, in the language of Dr. Bolton: "It is exactly where Cárdenas' map shows La Salle's settlement, on the west bank of the Garcitas River, about five miles above its mouth, and on the highest point of the cliff-like bank of that stream." Thus, for all time to come, has the exact location of La Salle's Fort St. Louis been established.

North of the old Presidio La Bahía, so the stories have persisted year upon year, the boys of the town of Goliad were accustomed to feel along the right bank of the San Antonio River with the feet while swimming until they found a round piece of metal concealed beneath the water. This they would use as their diving post. When the water of the river ran low, a long brass cannon showed above the surface. With the history of La Bahía, and the famous order from Houston to Fannin to abandon the fort and sink the cannon in the river, then familiar to the early-day Goliad citizens, it became common knowledge that the diving post was one of the cannon which Fannin had rolled into the river.

Time went on; boys grew to manhood and forgot the exact spot of their old swimming post. Shifting sands aided in

---

<sup>14</sup> The author was then a resident of Victoria and an opportunity was afforded him to accompany Dr. Bolton on this trip to the site of the old fort. Only recently he had been a student in the University of Texas, and Dr. Bolton had been one of his instructors. He did not, however, avail himself of the privilege of going on this expedition but followed the results of the discoveries with much interest.

the concealment. Torrential rains filled the river bank-full, causing changes in the riverbed, and diligent afteryear search failed to locate the cannon, believed to have been one of the "8 small guns of four or six pounds."

Then in September, 1930, newspaper reporters of Texas announced the finding of "the big brass cannon" by two boys while swimming in the San Antonio River adjacent to the old Presidio La Bahía. This proved to be untrue, and such men as Will T. Lott, Stoner Whitney, and Herman Bergmann, who as boys disported themselves from their brass-mounting, continued aiding enthusiasts in their search for the cannon in the river. These who sought the "brass cannon" as one of the "eight pieces of cannon and not one bullet" over which La Salle and Beaujeau had so persistently quarreled, forgot that Cárdenas, when prying around through the remains of the destroyed fort, had written of these cannon: "We found the place where the artillery of the fort was said to be and we uncovered it in order to see it and satisfy ourselves. We saw that it was made of iron." However, there was a discovery, in 1930, of a cannon at the presidio and the importance of the discovery of a "divining-rod" manipulator, who found the cannon, was overlooked by nearly all who took notice of the incident.

In September, 1930, two men, with the aid of an electromagnetic contrivance, made extensive explorations around the river and in the vicinity of the Presidio La Bahía. The result was the discovery of two cannon buried within the presidio. These, with other residual relics, chiefly of pottery, were placed on display in the corridor of the Goliad (Texas) courthouse, where they may now be seen.

The *Dallas News*, in reporting the finding of the cannon, stated that two cannon were found in the San Antonio River, September, 1930, "one with the coat of arms of Ferdinand & Isabella, the other with a crest so puzzling that it has not yet been identified."<sup>15</sup> The *Texas Outlook* after investigation of the importance of the discovery of the old cannon, said it was a small cannon "elaborately decorated with the *fleur-de-lis* of France and the coat-of-arms of Louis XIV. . . . Since La Salle's settlement at St. Louis is not many miles distant.

---

<sup>15</sup> The *Dallas News*, "Coat of Arms-Goliad Cannon." Crouch. Carrie J. Carrington & Dabney, *Texas Outlook*, Apr., 1932.

probably the cannon was one of the eight left La Salle by Beaujeau when he returned to France." Therefore, that one of the cannon now in the Goliad courthouse is La Salle's can scarcely be questioned.

Myth and rumor oftentimes confuse people in the transmission of facts. This has been the case with reference to the "big brass cannon in the river" and the cannon buried in the presidio by Fannin. Mr. J. H. Weber, Editor, *The Advance-Guard*, Goliad, Texas, however, has carefully separated myth from fact in the following statement:

. . . Regarding the finding of cannon now on exhibit in the Goliad County Court-house, will say that this finding of the cannon has been confused with legend and current history here about a brass cannon which is in some part of the San Antonio River from which some of the middle-aged citizens of this community claim they did their diving in their boyhood days when swimming in the stream.

The cannon on exhibit here were unearthed by one Sam Johnson and a helper, the latter claiming to have an instrument or device, patent, or what-you-may-call-it that was a sure-shot in recovering buried or lost treasure. The cannon and several other relics, evidently buried by Fannin or someone else in retreat from Presidio La Bahía, were found with the aid of the stranger's machine near or within the confines of the mission's court-walls.

The big brass cannon of which I have heard so many stories has never been located. Changes in the river-bed have evidently contributed to the loss of its location. The treasure-finding-instrument was also used in the attempt to find this cannon, but without avail.

With the discovery of the exact location of the old Fort St. Louis and the recovery of one of the cannon of La Salle, there only remains to be found some of the residue of the wrecked *Aimable*. Since the location of the wreck is fairly accurately known, its discovery would not be altogether unexpected.



## The First Travel Book

The first travel book written within the boundaries of the United States is said to be the record of Cabeza de Vaca, narrating his wanderings.



# FEBRUARY IN TEXAS

FEBRUARY 26, 1843, is a date long to be remembered in Texas history. Then it was that the one hundred and seventy remaining prisoners of the Mier Expedition were punished by having every tenth man executed. The men were compelled to draw beans from an earthen mug in which there were seventeen black beans and one hundred and fifty-three white beans. Those drawing black beans were put to death by order of Colonel Domingo Huerta, Mexican officer in charge.



1, 1836, is the date Santa Anna, at the head of 6,000 of his "Regulars," set out for Texas to put down the rebellion. He reached the Rio Grande on the 12th.

1, 1845, Baylor University, at old Independence, was chartered by the Republic of Texas. Later it was divided into two branches, the co-educational university being moved to Waco, and the "female institution" moving to Belton as Baylor College for Women.

1, 1861, Texas, in convention assembled at Austin, voted overwhelmingly to secede from the Union. But the state did not join the Confederacy until March 2, following.

13, 1834, Stephen F. Austin was imprisoned in a dark dungeon in Mexico City, according to a diary kept by him, and published many years later.

15, 1876, is the date when the present Constitution of Texas was ratified by the people.



16, 1846, is the last day on which Texas was served by the Government of the Republic of Texas, President Anson Jones yielding the Government that day to Governor J. Pinckney Henderson, first governor of the state of Texas.



8, 1850, the legislature provided for the appointment of a special commission to inspect and investigate all Spanish and Mexican grants west of the Nueces River to "quiet the land titles in that section."

12, 1830, General Thomas J. Chambers was granted a contract to bring eight hundred families in to Texas.

19, 1846, marks the time when both the laws and postal services of the United States became those of Texas.

20, 1685, is the date of LaSalle's landing at Matagorda Bay, where he established his Texas colony, known as Fort St. Louis.

# CABEZA DE VACA AND HORSEHEAD

By J. FRANK DOBIE

IN VIEW of how Texas was later to become seamed by the trails of multiplied millions of Spanish cattle, ranged over by countless mustangs of Spanish blood, and dominated by men who rode these horses, it was fitting that the very first civilized human being to traverse it should have borne the name of Cabeza de Vaca. The story of how he came by it is common. The family name was originally Alhaja, but in 1212 one of Cabeza's ancestors, a peasant, informed Christian Castilians of a mountain pass that could be used to circumvent the Moors, and marked the entrance to it with the skull of a cow. The infidels were by this means defeated, and Alhaja was ennobled, granted a coat of arms, and dubbed Cabeza de Vaca.

The bleached skull of a horse or cow makes a signal marker, whether hung on bush or tree or laid on bare ground. The most noted use of such a marker in Texas was at what became known as Horsehead Crossing on the Pecos River. Before beaten roads made their own sign, no other stream in America more required markers to indicate a crossing. Ages ago its lower reaches, before disgorging into the Rio Grande, cut an impassable canyon through solid rock. Higher up, its writhings for hundreds of miles resemble a great canal rather than a river, not a bush or tree along its banks of saline soil to mark its course, no valley or bottom to distinguish its presence, barren prairies on either side of it. The traveler of early days across the trackless land did not know that he was near the Pecos until he was within a few yards of it. Then he saw a wide sullen stream of dark water, in time of drought often so bitter that no animal will drink it, flowing far below between high perpendicular banks—a profound gulch as impassable as the deepest moat ever trenched around a medieval castle. The word Pecos seems to be a corruption of *puerco* (hog), and the name was probably given to the stream by Spaniards who at some time saw some javelinas (peccaries, or Mexican hogs) on it.

There was one crossing on the river that became continent famous. It is no longer used, but it will always be remembered. Remote from any road and to be gained only by traversing bleak and solitary range land that will never be plowed under, it is still Horsehead Crossing. What white man first discovered it or who marked it or named it will probably never be known. Two of the early routes to California crossed here: the road from San Antonio to the southeast and the Butterfield Stage Road from Jefferson Barracks on the Missouri River to the northwest. Before the Chisholm Trail had yet been beaten out by the hoofs of a Texas herd of longhorns, Charles Goodnight and Oliver Loving, in 1866, drove ninety-six miles westward across the desert land from the Concho and brought their thirst-maddened herd to Horsehead Crossing. It became the most noted, the most desired, and the most dreaded mark on the Goodnight-Loving Trail. Here bands of Comanches lay in wait to rob and kill travelers and herdsman; here grew up a little graveyard untended and uncherished, for no habitation of the living was ever erected at Horsehead Crossing, and no camper tarried here longer than necessary, such a dreary, forsaken place it was.

Whether the Spanish ever used Horsehead Crossing is doubtful. One old story has it that Indians — Apaches or Comanches — placed the skulls of mustangs at the crossing as a sign for some of their tribesmen who were following.<sup>1</sup> When Judge O. W. Williams, of Fort Stockton, reached the Trans-Pecos country in 1884, he heard this explanation. Away back in the forties a small detachment of soldiers or Rangers who had captured a herd of ponies from Indians near the Pecos and found them an impediment killed the animals at the crossing, then unnamed and little known. Subsequently the skulls of these massacred horses were placed by somebody to mark the approach to the water's edge.

Corroborative of this account is the entry made by John R. Bartlett in his journal for October 30, 1850, upon reaching the Pecos River.

After our fatiguing march of two days and one night without rest . . . I examined the river. . . . Found the water

---

<sup>1</sup> "The Cienegas Fight," by Donald F. McCarthy, in *Frontier Times*, Vol. IV, No. 3, Dec., 1926, p. 4.

at the Horsehead Crossing, which was a quarter of a mile from our encampment, to afford the greatest facilities. Here there was a bank about half the height of the main bank, to which there was an easy descent, and one equally so to the water. It is the place where other parties seem to have crossed, and hence rendered easy of access. *I noticed a long line of horse or mule skulls placed along the bank which probably gave it [the crossing] the name it bears.*<sup>2</sup>

There is a Horsehead Canyon, too, in Erath County, although before 1861 it was known to the few frontiersmen acquainted with it as Mulberry Canyon. In that year, however, a posse of settlers whose horses had been raided followed the Indian raiders into the canyon. During the fight that followed many horses were killed and for years their bones lay on the ground. Hence the name Horsehead Canyon.<sup>3</sup>

Mustang Bayou, Mustang Island, Mustang Pens, Wild Horse Mesa, Horse Thief Canyon, Dead Horse Canyon, Caballo (Horse) Pass, Laguna de Caballo, Horse Pen Creek and Horse Pen Bayou, Arroyo Potranca (Filly Creek), and Yegua (Mare) Creek — these names, like those "certain dank gardens" Stevenson speaks of, "cry aloud" for a story. Yet of the twenty-odd creeks listed in the *Gazetteer of Streams of Texas* issued by the United States Geological Survey<sup>4</sup> and of more than that many other Mustang place names in Texas probably not listed, and of yet many additional features of the land named Horse, Wild Horse and other cognates of the word horse, there are few actual stories known to me. Many of these names are no doubt general; yet many also must have been prompted by particular horses or particular experiences with horses.

Years before the Civil War, Joe Tomlinson got together a large number of ropes — *reatas* made out of rawhide — to build mustang pens with. His idea was to use the *reatas* successively for pens in several places, for it was hard to drive a band of mustangs off their own range. How successful he was with his pens is not remembered. The rawhide probably held, in accordance with the old saying that Texas was held

---

<sup>2</sup> John Russell Bartlett, *Personal Narrative of Explorations and Incidents*, New York, 1854, Vol. I, p. 96.

<sup>3</sup> *Frontier Times*, Bandera, Texas, February, 1926, pp. 41-43.

<sup>4</sup> Prepared by Glenn A. Gray and published at Washington, D. C., 1919.

together with rawhide. The name of Rope Pen Creek in De Witt County commemorates Joe Tomlinson's enterprise.

Early in this century John Dinn established a ranch in the Hebbbronville country at a lake, far better known than its unpermanent water would warrant in a less arid country. According to Mexican tradition, an Indian once stole a horse from the Santa Niña (Holy Child) Ranch near by and led him off. At the lake, he tried to ride the horse, mounting three times, to be thrown each time. Then the Indian shot the horse and killed him and went "*pa' ahí.*" Ever since then the lake has been known as Laguna de Caballo (Lake of the Horse), which name the ranch also bears.

About 1880 a considerable party of surveyors under the direction of General Gano of the United States Army was making its way down the Rio Grande in the Big Bend country. The country became so rough and canyon-cut that they could proceed no farther with horses. They could leave the river and make a great detour by way of Fort Stockton or they could make rafts and float down the river. They decided to abandon their horses and take to rafts. In order to prevent their horses from falling into the hands of Apaches, who were yet marauding back and forth across the Rio Grande, they shot them down, thirty or forty head. That is how the deep gorge of the Rio Grande for a long distance above Del Rio got the name of Dead Horse Canyon.<sup>5</sup>

"A mare is a horse, but a horse ain't a mare, and a mule is neither," as the old-timers used to say. There are plenty of Mule Creeks in Texas and there is at least one White Mule Creek, which might have been named either for the white-colored scion of a mare and a jack or for that liquid known as "tarantula juice," "rot gut," "red-eye," and "mountain dew" as well as "white mule." I know the story of the naming of but one Mule Creek, the one in Haskell County.

In the early days a famous mule, branded U S and as "stubborn as a government mule" is supposed to be, ran with mustangs in that country. He was warier and fleetest than the wariest and fleetest of the native horses and came to be widely known and sought for. Finally he was somehow captured near a creek, and the creek henceforth was known as Mule Creek.

---

<sup>5</sup> Victor J. Smith, in *Legends of Texas*, p. 209.

Of Bulls, Cows and kindred names there are as many creeks as the horse has given his name to. Again only a few definite anecdotes explain the names, but some of them are sufficiently interesting in themselves: Brindle Creek, in Brewster County, very likely named for some outlaw Mexican cow or steer of a brindle color; several Maverick Creeks, on which we may be sure maverick cattle were roped; and Heifer Creek, in Van Zandt County, the origin of which name has been preserved. When the Cherokee Indians were forced out of Texas, they left most of their cattle on the Neches River. For years this stock and their increase ran wild, suffering in the end the same fate as the buffaloes. It is said that a man by the name of Monroe Upton killed the last remnant of the Cherokee herd, a fat heifer, on a creek that from that incident was named Heifer Creek.<sup>6</sup>

One of the old roads of Texas was called Cow Head Road. It was marked in the forties between Corsicana and Waco by placing the dried skulls of cattle along the route — markers more visible than the blazes of trees.<sup>7</sup>

A few miles south of Sabinal, Texas, is a markedly conspicuous hill, called sometimes Malone Hill — from the name of the people who own the ranch in which it is situated — but known to old-timers as Ox Skull Hill. In early days, so they tell, the top of this hill was signalized by a number of ox skulls — the only remnant of a wagon train traveling between San Antonio and Eagle Pass on the "upper road." Beset by Indians, the freighters corralled their wagons on top of the hill and fought until they and their oxen were all killed. The Indians burned the wagons and perhaps the bodies of the freighters also. Nobody knows what became of the wagon irons; perhaps they were salvaged for use by early settlers. Anyway, for years the bleached ox skulls, some of them with the horns slipped off, some with the slivered horns still attached, lay on the hill to give it a name and a story.

Because a creek is named Cow or Bull or Beef does not of course mean that more cattle — wild cattle particularly — ranged on it than on the next creek. The contrary might even

---

6 Wentworth Manning, *Some History of Van Zandt County*, 1919, pp. 178-179.

7 Annie Carpenter, *History of Navarro County*, Dallas, 1933, p. 76.

be true. A creek in Montana named Sage, says Granville Stuart, is so called "because there is not so much as one sage bush on it." For years I have tried to find out if ever a live oak tree grew in the vicinity of Encinal (Live Oak Grove) in Webb County, Texas. But while the range was still all open, George B. Erath assures us in his *Memoirs*, wild cattle ran on Cow Bayou, McLennan County, and thus gave it its name. A hunter named Castleman, Erath continues, hung a bullhide on a tree to dry; it shrunk and remained on the tree for years, thus giving Bullhide Creek its name.

*Cuero* means "hide," and Cuero Creek, in De Witt County, which gave its name to the town of Cuero, is said to have derived it from the fact that in early days many cattle bogged down in it and died and were skinned, the hides being left to dry along the banks.

Cowhouse Creek, in Coryell and Bell counties, did not derive its name from the humanitarian activities of some settler in constructing houses for his kine. Along the creek are many shelters, or caves, under the limestone bluffs, and therein cows that it would have taken a dog to catch and a cowboy with two ropes to tie for milking, and that would have given just about a tin coffee cup half full of milk, used to den up against the northers of winter and the suns of summer.

In the same region are two creeks called Stampede — a word that in the minds of Texans is connected with cattle or horses. In 1839 Erath, the surveyor, who left very informative *Memoirs*, led in pursuit of some Indians who had raided Milam County and were returning west. "On their way down," he says, "the Indians had driven the buffalo before them, killing large numbers, so that the whole country was covered with carcasses. The stench of these bodies, together with that of the bodies of the dead Indians, terrified our horses at night and caused them to stampede. We lost a large number of them. This occurrence gave the name Stampede to the creek where it took place." The horses ran on west to a creek where they were captured, and the name of Horse was given it.



# THE AMERICANIZATION OF TEXAS

By CHRIS EMMETT



*T*HE TIME was March 2, 1805. The place was the Senate Chamber of the United States. Aaron Burr was making his last speech as presiding officer. It was his last act as Vice President of the United States. He had killed Alexander Hamilton, the great Republican leader. The Republicans had said many unwarranted things about Burr. His star was dimming. Its bright light — that bright piercing light coming before darkness — was filtering through the minds of his traducers. "Every gentleman was silent," wrote a contemporary in his diary. "Not a whisper was heard, and the deepest concern was manifested."

Even Burr, the principal actor, knew the eyes of America were upon him. He wrote of the event to his daughter:

It was the solemnity, the anxiety, the expectation and the interest which I saw strongly painted on the countenances of the auditors, that inspired whatever was said . . . .



He — the most hated, the most discussed man in America at that hour, the man who had shot to death the leader of the Republican Party — was lecturing the members of the Senate, laying down the rules for their future conduct, for the conduct of government, criticising demagogues and traitors.

... This house is a sanctuary; a citadel of law, of order and of liberty . . . here will resistance be made to the storms of political frenzy and the silent arts of corruption; and if the Constitution be destined ever to perish by the sacrilegious hands of the demagogue or the usurper, which God avert, its expiring agonies will be witnessed on this floor.

With these words reverberating in the ears of his auditors (they were not necessarily his friends, and he had not called them friends), he stopped speaking to survey the faces of the men before him as if he were taking their measure for courage. Dejection was stamped upon his own face but even then he was unabashed. He had come to the end of his term of office. Time, ruthless time, was checking him out of the picture. Standing motionless before the dais, he stared across the Senate Chamber. No doubt a panorama like a fast-moving cinema was scudding across his mind . . . his ambitions . . . his success as a soldier . . . as a Member of Congress . . . his valiant part in building the Government . . . election to the Vice Presidency . . . the villainy of his traducers . . . his unfortunate duel with Hamilton . . . and now the end! He lowered his eyes, "descended from the chair (the seat of the Vice President of the United States) and in a dignified manner walked to the door, which resounded with some force as he shut it after him."

Burr was walking out to Destiny a crushed, bewildered man. Was there not something prophetic in his last words? Was there not something of the resentful in the slamming of the door "which resounded as he with some force shut it after him?" Was he not telling those Senators and his political enemy, the President of the United States, Thomas Jefferson, that they could have their government and all its emoluments and he would go his way and build another, one west of the Mississippi, perhaps with Texas as its center?

But back of the door which had been slammed in their



faces there was another scene, a pathetic one. Senator Mitchell was tremendously affected. Burr "did it with so much

tenderness, knowledge and concern that it wrought upon the sympathy of the Senators in a very uncommon manner . . . . There was a solemn and silent weeping for perhaps five minutes . . . . General Smith, stout and manly as he is, wept as profusely as I did. He laid his head upon his table and did not recover from his emotion for a quarter of an hour or more . . . . *Where he is going or how he is going to get through his difficulties I know not."*

Of course Senator Mitchell did not know how Burr was to get through his difficulties and, as portentous as was the moment, there was none there with a sufficiently prophetic eye to envision the future of this most remarkable man and tell just how important to Texas Burr's conduct was to be.

It is a long swing in history from the uncharted rambling of Cabeza de Vaca and the trudging of La Salle across Texas to the day when Aaron Burr slammed the Senate Chamber door in the faces of the Senators so dramatically as to make the Senators lay their heads on their desks and cry, but the acts of all these men are so inseparably connected with the development of Texas as to form, when the links are properly welded together, the chain of Texas history.

The actual physical accomplishments of Cabeza de Vaca and La Salle were of small importance either to Spain or to France. The mere fact, however, that they landed upon the Texas coast permitted their countries to list the lands lying west of the Mississippi as belonging by rights of discovery to each nation. Basically then, the controversies of these nations date back to the discoveries by these adventurers, and they were not to cease until Spain lost her claim upon Texas to Mexico by power of revolution; and although Spain then passed out of the picture, still, the same covetousness persisted until the United States decided the issue by its annexation of Texas. France, of course, passed out of the squabble by its territorial relinquishment upon payment by the United States under the Louisiana Purchase Act.

With the basis of the quarrel between these two nations well grounded, in that age when nations quarreled and fought upon mere pretext, it is only natural that the pages of history should be smeared with national bickerings and unsavory relations. And we must expect to find both France and Spain playing the game of chess, political maneuvering;

attempting to gain advantage without open hostilities; conceding nothing but claiming all. This interregnum, from discovery to alienation, first was filled with a mission-building movement, then, colonization, and finally, revolution.

France's attempt to plant a colony in Texas was an open menace to Spain. A counter-move, of course, was essential. This took form in the establishment of a number of missions across the face of Texas from the Rio Grande to the Sabine, notably those of Nuestra Señora de Loreto (the scene of the Fort St. Louis settlement), San Francisco de los Tejas (somewhere between the Trinity and the Neches, the exact location of which is unknown but is believed to be about forty-five miles southwest of Nacogdoches), and those of La Bahía (near Goliad), Victoria, Refugio, and the chain of missions around San Antonio, as well as others.

These missions, with their accompanying garrisons, afforded a semblance, and only a semblance, of repression to further intrusions by the French. They were only make-believe buffers. Over to the east, however, Bienville, for the French, had accomplished what La Salle had failed to do because of bad navigation, and New Orleans, the controlling city on the Mississippi, became a reality. Thus there grew up international intrigues and private profiteerings, centering around the largess to be garnered from coveted territories (the richest of these was Texas but intrigues were seldom confined to any particular section). What affected Florida usually was intended to affect Texas, or Mexico, as this vast expanse was then known.

It is quite unfair to study the machinations of a nation and those individuals directing her destinies without previously understanding the moral tenor of the people of the time. When Texas was being populated, self-government was coming to the front. This form of government in many instances had been acquired by the people through political, and not altogether sincere, maneuvering.

And when it was common knowledge that Spain, France, Great Britain and the United States were ever on the alert to out-manuever each other, we can only expect there would grow up small depredating bands, groups of adventurers, who would seek their own profit first and then add their mite to the nation they represented in acquiring the dis-

puted territory in the South and West. These men operated with a modicum of bravado, for they felt their governments would turn unseeing eyes upon their commercial intrusions even if they did not give actual active support.

The truth is that adventurers seldom fly in the face of established law and order. Almost invariably there is a feeling of supporting power. That power need not be necessarily the avowed support of an orderly government. It might take the form of simple acquiescence of men in authority who would lend aid in emergency, or it might take the form of the sentiment of the people of the nation approving the depredations of the adventurers. And, too, adventurers are keen to sense a national consciousness. Therefore, in searching for the story of Texas' political transmutations, the transgressions of the adventurers, the freebooters, the intriguants (important as they are to show the course of the wind), must be read in the light of the opinions and acts of men in high government places.

We have seen the political set-up west of the Mississippi. East of the Mississippi, however, that part of the country which formed the nucleus for the United States of America had none of the international bickerings. These people were predominantly English-speaking. They were substantial folk who secured a footing and grew from the center. Having planted themselves upon the Atlantic Coast, they spread westward as fast as their increase in population let them hold the territory onto which they grew.

The French, a more mutable people, had established widely scattered trading posts up the St. Lawrence River and along the Great Lakes. They were the chief anti-English opponents and, except for the fortuitous navigation of La Salle's hated Beaujeau, would have established a ring of commerce, so to speak, around the English colonies by occupying the full length of the Mississippi and the territory contiguous to the Gulf of Mexico eastward of the Mississippi. Through the work of Bienville, they corrected their error and established commerce on the Mississippi northward out of New Orleans and eastward along the Gulf shore. This intrusion made France an active competitor of both Spain's and England's colonial possessions.

The Spaniards, a tempestuous people, full of romance and adventure, had been crowded into the far-flung South and

Southwest, and, because of the overlapping of claims based upon the Cabeza de Vaca discovery, vied with the French with one hand and pressed back the English-speaking people with the other.

There was never a time, in fact, when Great Britain thought any of the territory of the North American Continent should belong to any nation besides Great Britain, and the liberated colonies did not relinquish the thought. There was, consequently, a disposition on the part of the people of the United States to press all other nations incessantly for the lands of the South and Southwest.

The interests of the three nations, therefore, being inverse, could result in nothing but friction until English-speaking people absorbed the whole. Because of her position on the map, Texas was the chief bone of contention.

Those little Texas missions were just the flags of warning to "keep off the grass," but they served simply as invitations to the people of the United States to test the strength of the possessors. Once the warning was displayed one might expect to find willing trespassers.

The forerunner of this period of introgression was Philip Nolan. Very little is known of his life and connections but the company he sought *ipso facto* left a stain upon him. One of the very first mentions of his name is in connection with a visit to General James Wilkinson, America's most scheming military character. Evidently, in 1797, he was following out a design of Wilkinson, for in July he applied for and received a passport from the governor of Louisiana to go into Texas. He assigned as his mission the capture of wild horses, which he proposed to drive back to Louisiana for use by a cavalry troop. Using the permission granted, Nolan, went as far as San Antonio; here he applied through the proper channel at Chihuahua to the commandant, De Nava, for permission to buy horses. This request was also granted and he left with thirteen hundred animals. They went north as far as the Trinity River (evidently an exploratory party), where they pastured the horses and finally delivered them into Louisiana.

After Nolan completed his trip, Louisiana had a change of governors, and during the second year after the issuance of the passport, the new governor registered a protest to De Nava

against Nolan. The Governor advised De Nava to arrest all foreigners entering Spanish territory, assigning as a reason for this unusual request that he had information that there were some Americans who intended to invade Texas, cultivate the Indians and stir them up in revolt against the Spaniards. With the same pen he put special emphasis on the activities of Philip Nolan, requesting that he be particularly watched.

Again in the same year, excited no doubt by the activities of the United States, this same governor made the additional recommendation that "no American" be permitted to examine Texas territory, and he threw in a gratuity that Nolan was a "dangerous man and a sacrilegious hypocrite who had deceived the previous governor to get a passport." Then, as if this were not enough, he asked that Nolan be "secured and made away with," for, said he, Nolan is "commissioned by Wilkinson to make maps of the country and persuade the friendly Indians to rebel against the Spanish."

General Wilkinson was not a new fly in the Spaniard's political ointment. Neither was the scheme of Wilkinson to have Nolan disrupt the political tranquillity of Texas a new proposition. The United States Government had taken actual cognizance of both by appointing a commission to determine the boundary lines in the South, sending Ellicott and Freeman as representatives of the United States in the survey, and charging Ellicott with the additional duty of watching Wilkinson!

Wilkinson would bear watching, too. He had trained with the wrong group. He first came into prominence as a volunteer serving with Colonel Benedict Arnold against Quebec. He was the trusted friend of Aaron Burr; he served on the staff of General Gates (which was to his credit, however), and had the distinction of carrying the news of Saratoga to Congress, where he succeeded in having himself appointed brigadier general by fraudulently representing acts of bravery to be his own. Another perfidy was discovered and he resigned his commission when implicated in a treachery to George Washington.

In 1784, he went to Kentucky and stopped on the Ohio River. Here he was visited by Philip Nolan and it was known he had some kind of an arrangement with the Spaniards to

the south with "trader's rights" in New Orleans and received payments "by the mule load." No other reasonable deduction can be drawn from his conduct in Kentucky than that he connived with the Spanish to make that state the Indian fighting ground of the West so that Kentucky, through desperation, because of her inability to get assistance across the mountains, would sever her political affiliations with the United States and join Spain. In fact, Wilkinson unhesitatingly proposed the secession of Kentucky and recommended that she go to Spain. But such things as these did not amount to anything! And when the old Republican Party came again into ascendancy, Wilkinson was ushered back into the Army and was soon its commander.

At that time in his history, however, it was not known that Wilkinson was the actual agent of the Spanish Government for a specific compensation and was carried on the King's payroll as Special Agent No. 13.

Regardless of the motives of Philip Nolan, he felt that Wilkinson was supporting him, and despite the protestations of the Governor, he concluded to venture another foray into Texas.

In October, 1800, information went from a Spanish source in Louisiana that Nolan was mustering a force "of thirty to forty men to invade Texas" and De Nava ordered Nolan's arrest, but not before a protest had been made to the United States authorities, who disclaimed any obligation to interfere because of the passport he held. He was permitted to pass into Texas.

Here again, most likely, was registered the work of Wilkinson. In December, a man named Richards, who was a deserter from the Nolan Expedition, told his story to the Spaniards. Nolan, according to the deserter-informant, planned to build a fort near the Caddo Indians from which to explore the country, hunt for mines, secure enough horses to make the venture profitable, and return to Kentucky, where he would be joined by others and "receive instructions to conquer Texas."

This expedition was not wholly chimerical. Nolan evidently knew this, and what is probably also true, he was fully aware of the wishes of the officeholders in the United States to blast Spanish expansion and to free Spanish colonial possessions by aiding revolution. If Nolan did not know



it, then he is about the only man in the United States who did not know there was such a plot being fomented in the United States.

With revolution in the making, a certain South American Spaniard, untrue to the country under whose flag he was born, had been in the United States studying the military set-up, acquainting himself with Government officials, and preaching a Spanish colonial revolution similar to that just completed successfully in America and in France. With the Spanish revolution being talked on every turn, every buccaneer in the country awaited with impatience the time when the United States Armies would be ordered out on the mission of wresting from Spain her Santo Dominican and South American possessions. This scheme, fostered by Francisco de Miranda and bolstered by a black, Toussaint L'Ouverture, who chose to call himself the Napoleon of Santo Domingo, rang pleasingly in the ears of some of our nationally prominent officeholders and seekers of power, who felt that anything done to disturb the power of Spain would more likely bring Spanish territory into the hands of the United States.

John Adams knew of the scheme. He wrote his reactions to the plan in his diary:

General Miranda came to the United States . . . was introduced to General Washington, and his aides and secretaries . . . all the gentlemen of his family . . . to the general officers, and to many of the colonels . . . . He acquired a character of great sagacity, an inquisitive mind, and insatiable curiosity . . . . His constant topic was the independence of South America . . . . Hamilton was one of his most intimate friends and confidential admirers . . . . Of Burr I will say nothing for I know nothing with certainty . . . . Of Wilkinson, nothing at all at present.

If Burr, Adams, Hamilton and Washington knew of the revolutionary scheme, then most certainly Wilkinson, that plausible, insincere, American Army officer who made it his business to know everything pertaining to Spain, knew the intimate details of the scheme. Further, he must have passed along such information to Nolan as would make him bold to venture into Texas, for they had only shortly before that been cloistered together on the Ohio, in Kentucky, where he expected to get his orders "to conquer Texas."

The Nolan Expedition, therefore, appears to be one of the sporadic shoots from the general scheme to harass Spain. Hamilton and Miranda actually had been corresponding about it. "England was to furnish the money and a fleet of more than twenty ships" while "America was to furnish an army of 5000 foot and 2000 horse, preferably under the command of General Hamilton" and together they would descend upon the Spanish West Indies and South America. The spoils were to be divided and America was to have the territory west of the Mississippi.

The very fact, therefore, that the Senator from Kentucky was conniving for a separation of Kentucky and the United States was to raise "5000 foot and 2000 horse" is proof of the truthfulness of Richards' statement that Nolan was bent upon driving the entering wedge into Spanish Texas, expecting the support of Kentucky and relying upon the acquiescence of General Wilkinson.

With this in mind, Nolan ventured the second time into Texas with twenty-one men. He was promptly overtaken by a Spanish posse of fifty, but here, again, the hand of Wilkinson probably showed, for Nolan was permitted to pass deeper into Texas. The ostensible "horse hunters" went as far as the Brazos River, where they made a camp and captured three hundred horses. From the Brazos they went north to the Red River, stayed a month, and returned to their original camp. Here, on March 21, 1801, they were attacked by a hundred men who had ridden out from Nacogdoches. The fight which ensued cost Nolan his life and resulted in the capture of the remainder of the band.

Waco\* claims the distinction of having within its confines this battleground. The captured "horse hunters" were tried and acquitted and the judge ordered them released. The commandant, however, objected, and despite the fact they had already been tried, acquitted and ordered released, the disposition of the prisoners was referred to the King, who *gratuitously* ordered the hanging of one man, the selection to be made by lot — an old Spanish custom! And strange as it may seem, the fatal black bean showed up in the hand of

---

\*NOTE: It is highly probable, however, that Waco's claim is inaccurate, despite such a good authority as Dr. Geo. P. Garrison. It is now believed the death of Nolan took place near Cleburne and close to the Johnson and Hill County line.—C.E.

Ephraim Blackburn, a non-combatant Quaker, who paid the penalty at the end of a rope. The others were scattered throughout Mexico as prisoners, and only one, Ellis P. Bean, an illiterate man, appeared again in the United States after many years to tell his story in writing. An inimitable one it is, full of glamor, suffering and adventure.

The death of Nolan was too small a matter to excite Wilkinson, but the Spaniards took notice of the invasion and made plans to prevent colonization "along the borders to other nations," requiring passports to enter by the way of "northern frontiers." It was not long before Spain was making a public declaration that Anglo-Americans "begin by introducing themselves into the country they covet under pretext of business or colonization, then become the dominant part of the population, set up unfounded claims, raise disturbances, and by diplomacy or violence obtain possession." And to this they added: "They have been using such methods in Texas, with the collusion of the State government."

It is therefore quite plain that all the news had gone through via the Wilkinson route and that Spain knew the intention of the United States Government and her important men, and Spain, of course, was not caught napping when the news of the "Burr Conspiracy" to seize Texas broke into print.

Aaron Burr was one of the most remarkable men ever to live in America. His fame as a great man was degraded to notoriety and infamy. There was some basis in fact for this, but circumstances in a great measure were responsible for his decline. To have killed the leader of the Republican Party and to have brought down upon himself the contumely of the friends of Hamilton was sufficient cause for his name forever to be anathema. For political reasons, if for no other, the shot that stilled the heart of General Hamilton, the Republican, coming from the pistol of the Democratic Vice President of the United States, would ring forever in the ears of voting Americans.

To understand the constant effort on the part of the United States to acquire Texas (along with the south and southwest territory, Florida, Mississippi and Louisiana), a conception of the character and conduct of Burr is essential.

Aaron Burr's grandfather was a religious zealot, a preacher-educator of uncommon attainments, whose son — Aaron's father — founded "Prince Town" University.

There was quite a surprise in the Burr family on February 6, 1756 . . . at least Burr's mother wrote it was, for she said: "I was unexpectedly delivered of a son." The event was not only "unexpected" but evidently it was also highly to her satisfaction, for she added: "although it pleased God in infinite wisdom so to order it Mr. Burr was from home" and "I had a very quick and good time." Then she expressed a resolution "to bring up this child in a peculiar manner for God" but evidently thought less of both her resolution and her son the following year when she then classed him as a "little, dirty, noisy boy . . . not so good tempered . . . very resolute . . . and requires a good governor to bring him to terms . . . ."

When he was old enough his parents sent him to Princeton, where "the students in general behave well; some among [them] that give good evidence of real piety, and a prospect of special usefulness in the Church of Christ . . ." and "some were enquiring the way to Zion." Father Burr, no doubt, was highly pleased, for he discovered the students in their religious zeal one night . . . "20 young men in one room crying and begging to know what they could do to be saved, 4 of them under the deepest sense of their wicked hearts and need of Christ." This discovery caused the elder Burr to hustle off an emissary in search of a minister of the gospel "to come and assist in drawing the Net ashore for it is ready to break with the abundance of the Fish [that] are caught in it."

We are justified in thinking that "the little Fish, Aaron" escaped the meshes of the net, but whether he did or not, he was soon left alone (except for a sister) by the death, first, of his father, then his mother. His Princeton career was interrupted as a consequence, but not before he was known to "declaim," "dispute," and take "Physick," during which time he had been preparing and releasing essays upon a variety of subjects, notably one on dueling — that terrible thing which was to be his undoing. He ended this juvenile masterpiece with the words of another: "I have courage to fight with feeble man, but am afraid to sin against Almighty God."

Perhaps as he was going to and fro, attending classes and

formulating the phrases of his dueling essay, he was meeting for the first time a little boy — one of uncertain parentage — a newcomer from the West Indies, who was first his friend, then his political enemy, finally his ruin. He was none other than Alexander Hamilton, loved by many, admired by others, but called by John Adams "the bastard brat of a Scotch peddler."

Just about the time Aaron decided to master theology, in line with what he knew to be his father's wishes, he came to the conclusion his mother was wrong in trying "to bring up this child in a peculiar manner for God," but Paul Revere, by his dash across the country, saved the situation for him and Burr's mind started into another channel. John Hancock, whose bold monicker is emblazoned across the Declaration of Independence, was approached and Burr strutted off to General Washington to tender Hancock's endorsement of "Mr. Ogden and Mr. Burr of the Jerseys" as prospective soldiers. While waiting for the General to place him in a service commensurate with his enthusiasm, Burr became a great hero in the eyes of his sister Sarah, who vowed she would come to him if "wounded" and even the "frightful noise of great guns cannot keep me away."

General Washington was entirely too passive a belligerent to suit the enthusiastic Aaron, so he took his credentials to one Benedict Arnold, who was then enlisting a troop for an attack upon Quebec. And who should Burr take with him but a certain gentleman — later, a very uncertain gentleman — from Maryland, one James Wilkinson!

As a Colonial soldier, Burr gained popularity which, had his conduct in several matters been more decorous, would have established for him undying fame, but he finally left the Army with less rank than Hamilton, with a stigma, because of his service with and under Benedict Arnold, and a lack of confidence on the part of General Washington.

Several versions of Washington's disdain of Burr have been given, but one thing is certain: When he returned from Quebec he had sufficiently distinguished himself to cause Washington to order him transferred to headquarters to become a member of his staff. As a staff officer, he remained a very short time. Dame Rumor had it then (this madam, then as now, had a habit of fixing the gossip upon delicate subjects!) that Burr had chuckled in polite society over his

discovery of an unsavory love affair in which the commander was involved and Burr had done nothing, much to the consternation of the General, to quash the gossipy imputations. Others had it that "the little colonel," who was just tall enough to look over the General's shoulder with convenience, talked with insolence approaching insubordination in derogation of Washington's military plans, and irked the latter to wrath beyond control by peering interestedly over the General's shoulder at his papers. But anyway Burr left the staff, talked too frequently and too long in the moonlight with a winsome lady (who was later arrested as a spy) and left the Army service with Washington saying of him: "By all I have known and heard, Colonel Burr is a brave and able officer, but the question is whether he has not equal talents for intrigue."

Near the end of the war, then as always, the select few, those in good repute with the "higher-ups," were getting "official mention" as well as having "badges of merit" pinned conspicuously upon their manly breasts. Not so for Burr. He, likely with reflective amusement recalling the embarrassment of the commander, expressed himself as satisfied "if I have any plain metal buttons." He must have been, in fact, in dire need of substantial clothing as well as "plain metal buttons," for he added in this letter to his sister: "If I have a pr. of leathern drawers send them . . ."

If he left the Army without the enthusiastic respect of the officers, he did take with him the confidence of the men in the ranks. In this he differed from Hamilton. The confidence the men had in him traveled from man to man and found lodgment in the hearts of the more enterprising souls, and it was to be the thing which marked a distinct cleavage between him and Hamilton — Hamilton the austere aristocrat; Burr the daring, genial democrat. Probably the respect came about because of his implacableness as a disciplinarian. He was, as an officer, kind but adamant. A horrible example of this quality — so cruel an act, however, as to make one wonder how men could be inspired to follow him — took place near Staten Island after Burr had learned of a scheme to assassinate him. Being informed of the plot, the colonel caused the balls to be extracted from the gun of the soldier who was to shoot him, thus permitting the soldier to fire blank at him. Then Burr, with a callousness born of a fiend,

with one slashing blow of his sword, severed completely the arm of the conspirator!

This is the man who abandoned military life, just as he had abandoned theology, to build up a practice as one of the successful lawyers of the infant nation, aiding sometimes, but more oftener opposing, General Hamilton.

It was inevitable that the austere aristocrat, the advocate of a strong monarchistic centralized government, would clash with the mystifying, genial, verbose democrat, who believed that the people to be governed should determine the form of that government.

Of course, it was a new form of government these ambitious men were fitting to the needs and demands of the Colonists just turned independent. There had never before been such a confederacy of states. Few men, with only the turbulent history of Europe to look back upon, thought the covenant between the states would last. None at the time of the formation of the Union questioned the right of any state to withdraw at will from the agreement. Even the great Jefferson felt all was well with the North American Continent: "Whether we remain in one confederacy, or form into Atlantic and Mississippi confederacies, I believe not very important to the happiness of either part. Those of the Western Confederacy will be as much our children and descendants as those of the Eastern, and I feel myself as much identified with that Country in future time as with this," and "It is the older and younger son differing. God bless them both, and keep them in union, if it is for their good, but separate them if it be better."

General Hamilton, however, was a centralist. He was also a politician who did not care to fly his opinions vigorously in the face of the New England States where "separation" was their constant threat. He advised: "Dismemberment of our empire will be a clear sacrifice of great positive advantage without any counterbalancing good; administering no relief to our real disease, which is democracy."

With these opinions being bandied about, Burr was crafty enough to hold his counsel and refrain from expressing himself upon dismemberment of the Union, although for some cause he was looked upon by the Western men and the New England secessionists from Hamilton's party as the Elijah who could lead them away from the woes of this new govern-

ment's oppression. Therefore, with their independence fresh, with the British view (that all of North America rightfully belonged to the English-speaking people) indelibly printed on their minds, there is no surprise to be registered when we find these people thinking that all the West and the South, regardless of by whom claimed, should be added to an English-speaking confederacy, a confederacy of the "Atlantic" or the "Mississippi." The very thought itself was a grasp for contiguous territory, and consequently, Texas.

Avarice was not confined to United States politicians. The times were pregnant with the spirit of independence. America had gained her independence; France had thrown off the political yoke, and Miranda was fostering a spirit of expansion in the United States which he intended to turn into power sufficient to free all Spanish colonies — and Texas, should United States politicians so desire. Even down in New Orleans the "liberty-loving Mexicans," so they called themselves, were organizing the "Mexican Association." And who was better able to state its purposes than Judge Workman, a member? He could have chosen, it is needless to say, a more worthy recipient for his secret. He told James Wilkinson: "I have been one of the persons who have long contemplated a plan to emancipate Mexico from the Spanish government; the plan is to raise an army at the expense of the adventurers, *under the auspices of the United States* . . . march into the Spanish provinces west of the Mississippi . . . *erect an independent government under the protection of the United States.*"

And when the Wilkinson-inspired Nolan Expedition aborted, the Miranda plan was revived. Its promulgator, General Miranda, "picked his teeth . . . it was his constant habit . . . at Mr. Jefferson's table" and made a public announcement he had chartered a ship to sail against Spain; that he had employed a United States colonel to furnish the supplies and enlist men and avowed that "Mr. Madison is prepared, at least, to look the other way while the American Government connives." To make sure Jefferson did not intend to disturb him, if he ever had any doubts about it, Miranda published the broadside:

"We are encouraged in our belief that our government has given its implied sanction to this expedition." This he followed up with a note to the Secretary of State, written



aboard the *Leander*, then under sail, to keep this "the deepest secret until the final results of this delicate affair," avowing that he had been acting "on the supposition, conforming myself in everything to the intentions of the government," which he had "observed with exactitude."

When Spain kicked up a fuss over this revolutionary move, challenging North American good faith and lack of neutrality, President Jefferson was hard put to it to save his face. All he could do was to explain that "the President is moving against the culprits" and avow his ignorance, or confess his vapidty, by the assertion: "We never had the least intimation or suspicion of his [Miranda] engaging men in this enterprise until he was gone." The fact that President Jefferson, in the trial of the "culprits" which followed, used his executive authority to prevent the attendance of damaging witnesses, whose testimony was essential to the cause of the prosecution, convinces one of his complete lack of sincerity. A great Presidential spectacle — but, of course, he had a purpose!

The Western political situation suddenly changed by the ceding of Louisiana by Spain to France. The false report also reached the U. S. that Florida had simultaneously gone with Louisiana. This news excited the annexationist politicians. Louisiana, Florida, Texas — all Spanish Southwestern possessions — were about to slip away from the United States and pass into the hands of a friendly nation. Even Burr thought "the arrangement appears pregnant with evil to the United States . . . I wish you to excite attention to it." And what did Jefferson do? "From the moment (he would, so he said) . . . marry ourselves to the British fleet and nation," but when the Spanish heard of the contemplated "marriage," Jefferson hastened to pen America's "most friendly disposition."

During the general mixup of maneuvers to acquire the Spanish Southwest, by a peculiar mistake of intention of the electoral college, Burr received an equal number of votes with Jefferson for the Presidency. As a consequence the decision went to the House of Representatives, where Burr's friends made a valiant effort to elect him President over Jefferson, with the consequence that bitterness, born of fear, grew cankerously in the heart of Jefferson, much to the pleasure of Hamilton. And thereafter Hamilton's vituperations

assumed scandalous proportions and Jefferson did nothing to shield his Vice President from the aspersions.

And while Hamilton defamed Burr, Jefferson wrote slyly about Mexico: "So popular is an enterprise in that country [Mexico and Texas] . . . that we had only to be still and [Burr] could have had followers enough to be in the city of Mexico in 6 weeks . . . . We ask but one month to be in the city of Mexico . . . ." Spain felt the influence of the United States being directed against her, and Jefferson tried to allay her feelings by saying: "We want nothing of her [Spain] and we want no other nation to possess what is hers," but all this time the President had representatives trying to buy Louisiana and Florida through the good offices of the French (who intended to get the money, of course).

Hamilton's political affiliations left him outside the purview of the Jeffersonian diplomacy, and he had to be content to believe there was to be a war with France, for which eventuality he had prepared himself by having Jefferson's predecessor appoint him "second in command" of the Army. The General was very proud of his military prowess and never failed to emphasize the fact that he was "second in command." He really wanted a war with France. France was Burr's friend. She was also the home of democracy, the real "disease" (according to Hamilton) which afflicted the United States. If Jefferson wanted a war at all he preferred to have it with Spain, but he chose a war of words, words which set out in contrast his "democracy" against the staid rules of social procedure of the British..

He unbosomed his spleen by directing sarcasm toward the wife of the Minister of Great Britain, Mrs. Merry, whom he called a "virago" who "must eat her soup at home." Burr, however, courted the favor of the husband of the "virago" whose soup plate was no longer placed at the Presidential board, and thinking Great Britain would have money for daring enterprises in the West where Spanish territory might be the goal, proposed to Minister Merry "to lend my assistance to his Majesty's government in any manner in which they may think fit to employ me, particularly in endeavouring to effect a separation of the western part of the United States . . . in its whole extent. "

At the same time that Burr was intimating a Western confederacy to the British, Jefferson was playing the Janus, and

with one face turned toward the populace, hoping to receive their plaudits, directed a war message to Congress. It was a real war message, so the people thought, in which he placed his nation on the doorstep of war with Spain over aggressions from Texas. "With Spain," he wrote, "our negotiations . . . have not had a satisfactory issue . . . Propositions adjusting amicably the boundaries of Louisiana have not been acceded to . . . I have found it necessary . . . to give orders to our troops on that [Texas] frontier to be made in readiness." Was that not tantamount to demanding of Congress that he be supported in his war upon Spain? No one could believe otherwise. He was also assuring Great Britain of his ferocious earnestness, for if "obliged at last to resort to force, we will throw away the scabbard."

But the other face of Janus was looking toward France and chicanery with Napoleon's arch diplomat, Talleyrand; and with his other hand he was penning another message to Congress. This was a secret message, not for the ears of the Westerners who were waiting to spread the Kentucky doctrine of expansion at the end of a gun. In this message to Congress he confided he was about to buy the Floridas. France was to aid the purchase; she was to force Spain into a choice — sell to Jefferson or fight. But he could not keep his counsel. He had to tell England his plan also: "As soon as she is at war [with England] we [will] push them [Spain] strongly with one hand, holding out a price with the other; we shall certainly obtain the Floridas . . ."

But Burr had made his last speech in the Senate. There could never again be a place for him in the Government of the United States. Was it unnatural his mind should turn to the vast expanse of Spanish territory in the west and the possibilities it tendered to an ambitious man?

Trailing Burr's departure from the Senate there came a series of rumors. Burr was plotting in the west. Blannerhassett's Island was spoken of in soft terms, the rendezvous of plotters. Andrew Jackson, running a small store in Kentucky, was contracting supplies to Burr. Boats were being constructed. Burr announced the purchase of "four hundred thousand Bastrop acres," a tremendous land deal for one who had only recently lost his home for debt. "I have bought of Colonel Lynch 400 M. acres of the tract called Bastrop's lying on the Washita (that was far down toward

Texas, an easy place of assembly preparatory to going into Texas, so the rumor persisted). . . . If you should incline to partake and to join us, I will give you 10,000 acres. I want your Society. I want your advice . . . ." At the same time he deposited five thousand dollars with Colonel Lynch, a sizable sum for one who was bankrupt.

And Burr made his second trip down the Ohio and on to New Orleans. He visited the Mexican Association. He was invited to membership; this he declined. He wrote a letter in code to General Wilkinson, who kept it for future use despite specific instructions he had from Washington to forward the letter to the President. Suspicion and accusation came from every angle. Burr called on Andrew Jackson but "Aunt Rachel" was cool and did not invite him to stay. Burr later explained the rumors to the entire satisfaction of the impetuous Jackson. It was a colonization scheme, thought Jackson; the intrepid Burr intended to plant a colony of valiant men in the very face of Texas and if Jefferson had his war with Spain, then the men of the Mississippi would be ready. Then came Burr's arrest. He was released and re-arrested, and on the third incarceration he was charged with a misdemeanor as well as treason: Jefferson was summoned as a witness. Again exercising his prerogative as Chief Executive he refused to attend the trial and give his testimony. Wilkinson was summoned. Proceedings of the court were delayed while this witness determined his course. Jackson was subpoenaed and he was present upon call, but when Jefferson announced his determination not to testify, the voluble Jackson lost his composure. He would make a speech: "I will address the people from the steps of the State-house after the adjournment of court." He did address the people and they listened for a full hour.

"Mr. Jefferson," he screamed, "has plenty of courage to seize peaceable Americans [meaning Burr] . . . and prosecute them for political purposes. But he is too cowardly to resent foreign outrage on the Republic . . . ."

That was enough. The Administration now knew how Jackson would talk. They had no more use for him as a witness and he was excused, and James Wilkinson was left to make out the case for the prosecution. And of him John Randolph wrote: "And perhaps you never saw human nature in so degraded a situation as in the person of Wilkin-

son before the grand jury; and yet this man stands on the very summit and pinnacle of Executive favor . . . .” The trial was had with the result, an acquittal, too well known, but not without Wilkinson’s exerting every mental effort to ensnare his erstwhile friend.

The Spanish, however, had not been duped by the outcry, even though Wilkinson had with great haste sent a special messenger to Mexico City to inform that government of the Burr plot to cut a new nation out of Spanish and United States territory. The King was advised: “Wilkinson is entirely devoted to us. . . . He anticipated the failure of an expedition of this nature . . . . [This would] leave him like the dog in the fable” . . . without his King’s pension and off the American payroll. And by the betrayal of Burr “he assures his pension and will allege his conduct on this occasion as an extraordinary service, either for getting it increased or for some generous compensation.”

But he had attempted to perfect that situation. His special Mexico City representative had just asked the Spaniards to approve for Wilkinson two small bills for services rendered in the matter of the Burr Conspiracy: one was for the modest sum of \$26,000; the other, he felt, was more in proportion to his service to Spain — \$85,000 — but neither was paid. Jefferson, however, paid the Mexican envoy’s expenses.

For a number of years, while reviving from the shock incident to the entanglement of the Burr trial, Spanish possessions adjacent to the United States were molested by our people, and Texas grew, as it was natural it should grow, via colonization. Stephen F. Austin came, as did other sincere colonizers, but throughout the time the minds of the colonizers were more in unison with the United States than with the government in Mexico.

Then came the Fredonian Rebellion, a premature effort of East Texans to throw off Mexican rule. And this was followed by the efforts of Jackson’s protégé, Sam Houston, aided by the inimitable patriot, David Crockett, who, in a spirit of anger, told his constituents they could “go to hell and I’ll go to Texas.”

And it was through the efforts of such men — even the honest thought of Stephen F. Austin who, while returning from Mexico, confided: “If there is any way of getting at it . . . we must, and ought to become a part of the United

States" — that Texas became a republic and only to surrender that sovereignty, wrung at the price of blood of English-speaking North Americans, to the only country to which she could peaceably belong.

And now that our history has made the last loop of the hundred-year cycle, and has commemorated its milestones of commercial progress, a dip backward into the motives and purposes of those great Americans who made an independent Texas possible should be done with charity, even if charity cannot always stand uppermost, for the results were right — the formation of Texas, the greatest state in the nation.



## Origin of the Name Texas

Just how the name Texas originated is a question of doubt. Many authorities are of the opinion that it was derived from an Indian word of salutation, *Tehas*, which meant friendly. One early explorer credits the origin to the roof-shaped habitations of the Texas Indians, called in the Spanish language *tejas* or *texas*. Yet another early historian states that *tecas* was used as an affix to the names of many Indian provinces to denote the inhabitants; as for instance, those of Tlaxcalla were called Tlaxcaltecas; those of Cholula, Cholutecas; those of Chuitlahauac, Chuitlahtecas. The territory now called Texas was known to the Spanish missionaries in 1524 as Mixtecapan, and its inhabitants as Mixtecas; these were the descendants of Mixtecatl. Thus, the modern name Texas was derived from a shortening of the original name for the territory. This question will probably never be definitely settled.



A Texan remonstrated with his son:

"I heard you asking a man just now what state he was from. If a man is from Texas, he'll tell you; if he's not, there's no use embarrassing him."

By BOYCE HOUSE

—From *I Give You Texas!* (Naylor Co.)

# MARCH IN TEXAS



MARCH 25, 1843, remaining members of the Mier Expedition were marched into the confines of Perote Castle, not far from Mexico City, where they found fifty fellow Texans who had been captured by General Woll in the latter's seizure of San Antonio the previous year.

2, 1793, is the date of Sam Houston's birth, at Timber Ridge Church, in Rockbridge County, Virginia.

2, 1836, a convention met at Washington-on-the-Brazos for the purpose of declaring the independence of Texas, and establishing a permanent government. Of this convention, Richard Ellis was elected president, and H. S. Kimble, secretary.

3, 1836, is the date of the last appeal made by Colonel William Barrett Travis from the besieged Alamo.

9, 1731, the Villa Capital, San Fernando de Bejar, came into existence with the arrival of the Canary Islanders at San Antonio.

12, 1829, Lorenzo de Zavala was granted a contract to colonize five hundred families in Texas.



4, 1836, marks the date when General Sam Houston was elected commander-in-chief of the army of the Republic of Texas. On March 7, he took the field with the determination of relieving Travis in the Alamo.

6, 1836, is the day the Alamo was stormed. The gallant defenders went to their death.

19, 1840, is the date of the celebrated "Council House Fight" in San Antonio, when thirty-three Indians were killed and thirty-two taken prisoners after they had fought with the town's leaders in the bloody aftermath of what had been planned as a conference leading to the release of twelve or more white captives held by the tribe. Needless to say, the white captives were butchered by other members of the tribe later when they learned what had happened in San Antonio. Eight Texans, including the sheriff, two judges and other leaders, were killed in the fight.

# THE AUSTINS

## Advance Agents of Destiny

By FRANK H. BUSHICK

SURELY the fates gathered about and had a lot to do when Moses and Stephen F. Austin rocked the cradle of Texas more than a hundred years ago.

Sometimes the tapestry of history is shot athwart by a single incident or circumstance, of little significance at the moment, but in ultimate consequences fatefully affecting the destiny of the country and a large portion of the human race. December, 1820, marks the planting of the first seed of the Anglo-Saxon civilization of Texas. In that month Moses Austin arrived in San Antonio to obtain the Spanish governor's approval to found an American colony on the Brazos River. He was a Connecticut Yankee who had failed in other enterprises in Virginia and Louisiana and expected to recoup his fortunes in colonization and land transactions in the new wonderland of Texas.

At that time all the great stretch of country between the Mississippi River and the Pacific Ocean, west of the French territory of Louisiana, was a vast unsettled wilderness. It was uninhabited except for a few thousand Indians.

San Antonio was almost the only permanent settlement. It was a little Spanish pueblo consisting of a few dozen adobe houses and the neighboring Catholic missions. It was the northernmost outpost of Spain's feeble attempt to settle and hold all this vast extent of territory, the Spanish claim to which had been recognized by the United States only the year before in a treaty adjustment of territorial disputes.

The Spanish governor, Martínez, occupied the palace on the west side of what is now Military Plaza in San Antonio. He had received orders not to permit foreigners, especially Americans, to come into Texas.

When Austin arrived in San Antonio, weary but determined, after a thousand-mile journey on horseback through the wilderness, Martínez refused to consider his project and dismissed him. Austin was fortunate that he escaped arrest. Then occurred one of those chance happenings which often



shape the course of empires. This episode had a vast effect on the future history of the Western World.

Leaving the Governors' Palace dejectedly, his plans seemingly hopeless, his dream seemingly shattered, Austin unexpectedly met face to face an old friend, the Baron de Bastrop. This man Bastrop is another of the interesting and dramatic figures of those times.

Baron de Bastrop was a Hollander who had been in the Prussian service. When the French armies of the Revolution overran Holland, he came to America and gave allegiance to Spain. He had met and known Austin in Louisiana, where both of them had figured in unsuccessful attempts to plant colonies under French rule.

That's why Bastrop had fled to Texas. Like Austin, he was advanced in years and stripped of fortune, but here he was in San Antonio on that fateful day in 1820, when unexpectedly his path again crossed that of Moses Austin. For Austin this meeting was a whim of destiny, a providential rescue from final failure and defeat.

Bastrop, who had become a Spaniard, enjoyed the confidence of Governor Martínez. He espoused the plans of Moses Austin with such success that Governor Martínez recommended them to the Spanish authorities in Mexico. Austin's petition was later granted in the form of a permit, dated January 17, 1821, to settle three hundred families in Texas.

In the meantime Austin had left San Antonio on his return to his home in Missouri. As a result of the hardships and exposure of the trip he died in Missouri on June 10, 1821. Moses Austin bequeathed all his plans and projects to his son, Stephen F. Austin, who left New Orleans in November, 1821, with his first colonists, who were settled on the Brazos and Colorado rivers in Texas. Under the Spanish grant each head of a family was to receive a grant of land for a nominal consideration.

The successful Mexican revolution for independence from Spain in 1821 put a new regime in power in Mexico, and Austin found it necessary to journey all the way to Mexico City to confirm his concessions. After much labor and patience, he secured the necessary papers from the usurping Emperor Iturbide, but another upset and delay was occasioned by the overthrow of Iturbide by the republicans of

Mexico, under the leadership of General Santa Anna. Austin tactfully worked with the republican government and rose to high favor. He was then arrested and spent two years in prison but again secured approval of his plans for introducing settlers into the Mexican state of Coahuila and Texas, which were united as one state under the Mexican Constitution of 1824.

Austin's colonists had many hardships. They were beset by Indians and poverty. They subsisted mostly on wild game, clabber and cornbread. They used buckskin and homespun for wearing apparel. They never had any newspapers and got along swimmingly without bathtubs, store clothes or cosmetics. But they persisted, with the characteristic courage and tenacity of their race.

As a result of this colonization, Texas was settled by a sturdy agricultural population from the American states. Then followed the revolution for Texan independence in 1836, the annexation of Texas, the Mexican War of 1846-48, the expansion of the United States to the Pacific Ocean and other historic events of momentous importance.

In short, the pioneers brought to Texas and the great Southwest a civilization and form of government born of the struggles of the American Revolution.

Stephen F. Austin earned for himself the honored appellation of being one of the founders of the great Lone Star State of Texas. General Sam Houston called him "The Father of Texas." His marble statue, with that of General Houston, occupies an honored place in the Valhalla of America's great in the Statuary Hall of the National Capitol at Washington.

Moses and Stephen F. Austin were the first empresarios of Texas. The indirect fruits of their exploits added to the United States two thirds of its continental domain.

The sun of their glory has now risen high on the exploits of Moses and Stephen F. Austin. History will crown them with immortality. They were the advance agents of America's larger destiny.



## The First Girl Born in Texas

The first girl born in Texas of whom there is any record was a daughter born to Dr. James Long in 1821 in a mud fort he erected at Bolivar Point, near Galveston.

# APRIL IN TEXAS



APRIL 1, 1536, nearly eight years after being stranded on the Texas Gulf Coast, Cabeza de Vaca and three of his surviving companions reached San Miguel, in Nueva Galicia (New Mexico). They had become widely known among the Plains Indians as wonderworkers because of cures they effected.

2, 1689, a Spanish expedition under Captain Alonso de León crossed the Rio Grande in a search for the French under LaSalle, supposedly still in Texas. They found the deserted Fort St. Louis, and near by three unburied bodies.

4, 1789, David G. Burnet, for whom Burnet County was named, was born at Newark, N. J. He came to Texas in 1826 and obtained a contract to colonize a large tract of country in East Texas, later being named provisional president of the Republic.

7, 1900, the first great dam to be built in Texas, the dam over the Colorado River at Austin, washed away, causing the loss of the million dollars spent building the structure.

10, 1794, Pedro de Nava, commandant general of Provincias Internas, ordered the missions about San Antonio secularized, and in June and July the order was carried out in part by Governor Manuel Muñoz, when the mission lands were partitioned among the Indian dependents.

11, 1842, is the date the first issue of the *Galveston News* came from the press. The paper's first crusade was a campaign for the annexation of the Republic to the United States. The *Galveston News* also is the forerunner of the *Dallas News*, being divorced from the A. H. Belo Company in 1923 when the Moody interests of Galveston purchased the *Galveston News*.

19, 1787, Erastus "Deaf" Smith, after whom Deaf Smith County was named, was born in New York State. He was in command of all scouts in the War for Independence.



21, 1836, the most glorious and decisive event in Texas: the defeat of Santa Anna in the Battle of San Jacinto.

21, 1907, the last meeting of the Texas Veterans, including those still alive who had served at San Jacinto, was held at Austin.

21, 1898, the United States declared war against Spain during the course of which war Teddy Roosevelt's famous Rough Riders regiment was organized at San Antonio.

24, 1909, the first large fine, \$718,009.14, paid to the state of Texas by a corporation found guilty of violating the state's anti-trust laws, was paid by the Water-Pierce Oil Company.

**MEN OF  
THE ALAMO,  
GOLIAD  
AND  
SAN JACINTO**

By JACK C. BUTTERFIE



## Heroes of the Alamo\*

Juan Abamillo, R. Allen, Miles De Forest Andross, Micajah Autry, Peter James Bailey, Isaac G. Baker, William Charles M. Baker, John J. Ballentine, Robert W. Ballentine, John J. Baugh, Joseph Bayliss, John Blair, Samuel C. Blair, William Blazeby, James Butler Bonham, James Bowie, Jesse B. Bowman, Daniel Bourne, George Brown, James Brown, Robert Brown, James Buchanan, Samuel E. Burns, George D. Butler, Robert Campbell, John Cane, William R. Carey, M. B. Clark, Daniel William Cloud, Robert Cochran, George Washington Cottle, Henry Courtman, Lemuel Crawford, David Crockett, Robert Crossman, David P. Cummings, Robert Cunningham, Squire Damon, Jacob C. Darst, John Davis, Freeman H. R. Day, Jerry C. Day, William Dearduff, Stephen Dennison, Charles Despallier, Almaron Dickerson, James H. Dillard, James Dimpkins, Sherod J. Dover, Lewis Duel, Andrew Duval, Carlos Espalier, Gregorio Esparza, Robert Evans, Samuel B. Evans, James L. Ewing, William Fishbaugh, John Flanders, Dolphin Floyd, John Hubbard Forsyth, Antonio Fuentes, Galba Fuqua, William H. Furtleroy, William Garnett, James W. Garrand, James Girard Garrett, John E. Garvin, John E. Gaston, James George, John Calvin Goodrich, Alfred Calvin Grimes, José Maria Guerrero, James C. Gwin, James Hannum, John Harris, Andrew Jackson Harrison, William B. Harrison, Charles M. Haskell, Joseph Hawkins, Thomas Hendricks, Patrick Henry Herndon, William Hersee, Tapley Holland, Samuel Holloway, William D. Howell, William D. Jackson, Thomas Jackson, Green B. Jameson, Gordon C. Jennings, Lewis Johnson, John Jones, Johnny Kellogg, James Kenney, Andrew Kent, Joseph Kerr, George C. Kimble, John G. King, William P. King, William J. Lightfoot, Jonathan L. Lindley, William Linn, Toribio D. Losoya, George Washington Main, William T. Malone, William Marshall, Albert Martin, Edward McCafferty, Jesse McCoy, William McDowell, James McGee, John McGregor, Robert McKinney, Eliel Melton, Thomas R. Miller, William Mills, Isaac Millsaps, Edward F. Mitchasson, Edwin T. Mitchell, Napoleon B. Mitchell, Robert B. Moore, Willis A. Moore, Robert Musselman, Andres Nava, George Neggan, Andrew M. Nelson, Edward Nelson, George Nelson, James Northcross, James Nowlan, Juan Antonio Padillo, George Pagan, Christopher A. Parker, William Parks, Richardson Perry, Amos Pollard, John Purdy Reynolds, Isaac Robinson, Thomas H. Roberts, James Robertson, James M. Rose, Jackson J. Rusk, Joseph Rutherford, Isaac Ryan, Mial Scurlock, Marcus L. Sewell, Manson Shied, Cleveland Kenlock Simmons, Andrew H. Smith, Charles S. Smith, Joshua G. Smith, William H. Smith, Richard Starr, John W. Stewart, Richard L. Stockton, A. Spain Summerlin, William E. Summers, William D. Sutherland, Edward Taylor, George Taylor, James Taylor, William Taylor, B. Archer M. Thomas, Henry Thomas, John W. Thomson, John M. Thruston, Burke Trammel, William Barret Travis, George W. Tumlinson, Asa Walker, Jacob Walker, Michael W. Ward, Joseph G. Washington, Thomas Waters, William Wells, Isaac White, Robert W. White, Hiram J. Williamson, David L. Wilson, John Wilson, Anthony Wolfe, Claiborne Wright.

---

\* As listed on the Cenotaph.



## MEN OF THE ALAMO



*"I shall never surrender or retreat!"*

*— Travis.*

WE TEXANS are prone to claim David Crockett and the other heroes of the Alamo as our own when, as a matter of fact, with the exception of seven who bore Spanish names, James Bowie was the only one among them all who had spent more than half a dozen years in Texas. Many of them were recent volunteers from the United States. Crockett, for instance, could not have been in Texas more than a few weeks before he died. He was a Tennessean and had just completed his second term as Congressman from that state. The last session of Congress which he attended adjourned for the holidays just before Christmas, and he had to make his way from Washington back to Tennessee and thence to Texas, a journey of several weeks at least in those days. I often wonder if he came to Texas because that other Tennessean, Sam Houston (acting, it has never been disproved, with the entire knowledge and cooperation of still

another Tennessean, Andrew Jackson, who was President of the United States at the time), was one of the guiding spirits of the Texan revolt against Mexico. The real story of the Texas Revolution and all the things that led up to it will probably never be known, but nobody has a right to question the motives of the men who died to make it successful.

In 1936 Texas celebrated the one hundredth anniversary of her independence. The more than six million people within her borders today can scarcely realize the debt they owe the handful of Americans who wrested about three hundred thousand square miles of territory from Mexico, and the world at large has never fully appreciated the epic qualities of the Texas Revolution. The state of Texas, after having voluntarily sloughed off a lot of surplus square miles in order to round out a few other states, is more than four times the size of all New England, with New York thrown in for *pilón*, and it has a couple of counties that can easily take care of such states as Rhode Island, Delaware, and even Connecticut.

Yet in 1836 the total population was less than forty thousand, including Indians; and the armed force of Americans that compelled Mexico to relinquish this vast territory consisted of some four hundred massacred at Goliad, one hundred eighty-three who died at the Alamo, and seven hundred eighty-three who fought and won the battle of San Jacinto. Added to these were certainly not over two thousand more scattered from the Colorado to the Sabine. Mexico hurled against them a force variously estimated at from ten thousand to twenty-five thousand. Even at the lower figure the odds were great enough to be discouraging. And from Gonzales to San Jacinto scarcely seven months elapsed.

The Texas Revolution got off to a glorious start at Gonzales in September, 1835, although at that time the people were fighting for a restoration of the Mexican Constitution of 1824 (which had been abrogated by Santa Anna), with no thought of complete independence except in the minds of a few hotheads who did not believe in halfway measures. In early December San Antonio de Bejar was captured and a force of one hundred fifty men was left to guard this southernmost outpost of Texas, which had always been a Mexican stronghold. This force was composed entirely of volunteers, who had no quarrel with the natives of the town, and frater-

nized with them. That discipline was lax, if not entirely lacking, is not to be wondered at when one considers the character of the men. Inaction did not suit them at all, and inaction was the prospect for several months, inasmuch as every armed Mexican had been driven from Texas soil; so when Dr. James Grant renewed his wild scheme to invade Mexico, they responded enthusiastically.

Dr. Grant was a Scotchman whose estates and mines in Coahuila had been confiscated. He was a refugee from Mexico, with a price on his head, and he cared not a rap for Texas. His sole idea was to use the Texan forces to regain possession of his properties, but he seems to have been plausible enough to gain the support of a large number of the political and military leaders of Texas who were otherwise sane, level-headed men. He proved a greater menace to Texas independence than the entire army of Mexico. He gathered between three hundred and four hundred men in San Antonio, including eighty-seven from the garrison, and they forcibly took all the arms, ammunition and supplies they wanted from the Alamo, and departed for Matamoros. This was late in December, 1835.

Late in January, 1836, Lieutenant Colonel William Barrett Travis, a young North Carolinian who had been in Texas several years, arrived with a few volunteers and assumed command at Bejar. Just when David Crockett arrived, and what rank he held, is not entirely clear; neither is the rank of another prominent member of the force, James B. Bonham, of South Carolina, who had also arrived but recently. It is quite probable that they were among the volunteers Travis brought with him. James Bowie, who held the rank of colonel of cavalry in the Texan Army, had previously been sent to San Antonio de Bejar by Sam Houston. He had had more experience than Travis and apparently ranked him; consequently he would have seemed the natural leader, but Travis was in actual command.

The free and easy life, as well as the utter lack of anything like ordinary military precaution, is evidenced by the fact that Travis had no idea that Santa Anna had crossed the Rio Grande, a hundred and fifty miles south of San Antonio. True, a friendly Mexican had sent word from Laredo of the advance of the Mexican Army, but he was not believed, and the men were attending a fandango the night before the



advance guard appeared on the southwestern edge of the little town that was San Antonio in those days. The surprise of the Americans was complete but they managed to retire to the Alamo in good order, leaving the town itself undefended. This was the morning of February 21, 1836.

Without doubt the most inspiring episode in all history is the Fall of the Alamo. Nowhere else is there recorded the equal of this deliberate sacrifice of their own lives by men in order that others might be saved — and those others for the most part entire strangers to them.

Travis was one of the firebrands of the Texas Revolution who had never believed any other course possible for the Americans but complete independence from Mexico. He was violently and somewhat bitterly opposed to the cautious policies of Sam Houston, who had been appointed commander-in-chief of the Texan Army. Houston had perhaps too wholesome a respect for the soldiery of Mexico and too little confidence in the fighting ability of the Volunteer Texan Army, and he had ordered a concentration of the widely scattered forces at a point on the Colorado River. One of his first and most imperative orders was that San Antonio de Bejar should be abandoned, the Alamo blown up, and Travis and his men fall back to Gonzales. His orders were not obeyed by his subordinates — at least not so promptly as military orders should be obeyed — and Travis was caught in what was practically enemy territory, seventy-five miles from the nearest American settlement and a hundred and thirty miles from the nearest body of armed men who might have been able to help him, and who had been ordered by Houston to join him. These latter, under Fannin, were themselves shortly to pay the supreme penalty at Goliad for a similar failure to obey orders promptly.

In justice to the men who failed to obey the orders of the Commander-in-Chief, it must be added that everything was in a state of confusion at the time. The Americans in Texas were divided into two distinct groups, best described as Conservatives and Radicals. The former were represented by Stephen F. Austin and his colonists, who were bona fide citizens of Mexico. They asked of that country only justice and a compliance with the agreement under which they had come, namely, that Texas be a separate state of the Mexican

Republic and that they be accorded a measure of self-government. They were seeking a restoration of the liberal Mexican Constitution of 1824 and were opposed to independence except as a last resort.

The Radicals, represented by John A. and William H. Wharton, David G. Burnet, Thomas J. Rusk, Sam Houston and others, were the pure adventurer type, and were concentrated in the redlands of East Texas, near the United States boundary. Strangely enough, the greatest adventurer of them all, James Bowie, was allied with the Conservatives.

The Governor, Henry Smith, was a Radical from East Texas, the Council predominantly Conservative, but with no men or group of men the equal of the Whartons and Sam Houston in the fine art of playing politics. Houston, a rank newcomer, distrusted by the Conservatives because of the rumors that he was an agent of Jackson's, was named commander-in-chief over men who felt they had a better right to the honor. Because of his experience his choice undoubtedly was a wise one, but the Council had not concurred in his appointment; ill feeling resulted, and his authority was questioned.

The site of the Alamo lies today in the heart of the city of San Antonio, with the old church and the restored walls of the convent adjoining it. These, together with the Cenotaph, erected in 1936 on Alamo Plaza, are the monuments within the city to the memory of the men who fell in its defense. In 1836 the city of San Antonio de Bejar was grouped around the Plaza de las Yslas (Main Plaza) and the Plaza de Armas (Military) and extended no farther eastward than the present Yturri Street, so that the Alamo then was a full half-mile away. It was completed on its present site in 1744 as the Mission of San Antonio de Valero, and it was abandoned as a mission in 1783, although the chapel continued to be used for religious purposes as late as 1825. Prior to its occupancy by the Texan forces after the capture of San Antonio in December, 1835, it was an abandoned ruin used principally by campers and freighters.

The Mission was grouped around the church, the central portion of which was roofless at the time of the siege; but arched rooms on either side of the entrance and the sacristy, which was used as a powder magazine, were covered with a roof of masonry. Adjoining the church on the north was the

convent yard, an enclosure about a hundred feet square, with walls thirty-three inches thick and sixteen feet high. Near the south end of the east wall of the convent yard was a large gate defended by a small redoubt. The convent cells and hospital, two stories in height and eighteen feet in width, extended along the west side of the convent yard, and entrance from it to the main Plaza was by a couple of small doors. The large double gate that one sees now near the church did not exist in the old days.

The main Plaza extended in front of the church and the convent in the form of a rectangle, the walls of which were thirty-three inches thick and eight feet high, and extended northward from the northwest corner of the convent to the present postoffice site; thence west to the rear of the Gibbs Building; thence south along the west side of Alamo Plaza to just north of Crockett Street; thence across Alamo Plaza, with a wooden stockade from near the intersection of Crockett Street and the east curb of the park in Alamo Plaza to the southwest corner of the church. This Plaza was almost three acres in extent. Along the south end was an adobe building used during the mission era as a prison and barracks. There were other buildings and houses inside the walls of the Plaza, but they were of no consequence. The main entrance to the Plaza was through a double door in the prison building.

Just when or why the Mission of San Antonio de Valero became "The Alamo" is a question that will never be settled to the satisfaction of all Texans. The most popular story is that the change arose from the fact that a row of cottonwood trees grew along the banks of an *acequia*, or ditch, that ran just outside the east wall, "alamo" being the Spanish name for the cottonwood. As late as thirty-five years ago there were still half a dozen specimens of this tree growing along the ditch. When this ditch was closed, the trees all died.

How different the course of history might have been IF — ! Travis was no novice at fighting Mexicans. Five years before he had been thrown into prison by them down on the coast, and he had been fighting them ever since. Bowie had been in close contact with them for more than twenty years, and he knew their ways better, perhaps, than any other American in the state at the time. Crockett and

Bonham were newcomers on the scene, but they were men of more than ordinary intelligence. Why did they choose to make their last stand at the Alamo when Mission Concepción was such a short distance away, a smaller, more compact fortress, more easily to be defended by a small force? Bowie, four months earlier, during the advance upon San Antonio, had recommended the Mission Concepción as a base over all the other missions. Military men have expressed the opinion that they might have held it indefinitely against the force that annihilated them at the Alamo. This is one of the inexplicable blunders of that whole campaign of blunders. However, the blunders they committed do not detract in the least from their heroism and do not lessen the debt Texas owes them. They paid for the mistakes they made in a spirit that cannot be surpassed.

Travis sent out several appeals for help, the first dated February 24, addressed "To the People of Texas and all Americans in the world." It is such a masterpiece of simplicity and pure patriotism that it ought to be memorized by every Texan:

FELLOW CITIZENS AND COMPATRIOTS: I am besieged by a thousand or more of the Mexicans under Santa Anna. I have sustained a continual bombardment and cannonade for 24 hours and have not lost a man. The enemy has demanded a surrender at discretion, otherwise the garrison are to be put to the sword, if the fort is taken. I have answered the demand with a cannon shot, and our flag still waves proudly from the walls. *I shall never surrender or retreat.* Then, I call on you in the name of Liberty, of patriotism and everything dear to the American character, to come to our aid with all despatch. The enemy is receiving reinforcements daily and will no doubt increase to three or four thousand in four or five days. If this call is neglected, I am determined to sustain myself as long as possible and die like a soldier who never forgets what is due to his own honor and that of his country. VICTORY OR DEATH.

WILLIAM BARRETT TRAVIS,  
*Lt. Col. Comdt.*

P.S. The Lord is on our side. When the enemy appeared in sight we had not three bushels of corn. We have since

found in deserted houses 80 or 90 bushels and have got into the walls 20 or 30 head of bees.

#### TRAVIS.

The flag to which Travis referred was the Mexican Constitutional flag of 1824 and not the Lone Star emblem of the Republic of Texas. The Men of the Alamo died without knowing that Texas had declared her independence on March 2, a thing for which Travis had pleaded and fought for two years or more.

Travis' appeal reached the delegates who were in session at Washington-on-the-Brazos (near the present town of Nava-sota), just before they had finished framing their declaration of independence. They passed a resolution to adjourn the Convention and proceed in a body to the rescue of those besieged in the Alamo! Fortunately a few of the more level-headed among them were able to convince the rest of the folly of such a proceeding. For once the Governor and the Council acted in harmony and confirmed Houston as commander-in-chief, and delegated to him the task of helping Travis. It was too late, however. He was not confirmed until the 4th, and Washington was a hundred and fifty miles from the Alamo, and communication was — well, according to our standards, there was no communication in those days. The Alamo fell on March 6. Houston could not leave Washington until that morning, and he heard the first definite news of the disaster at Gonzales on the 11th. The Convention at Washington did not receive word of the tragedy until the 15th.

The only direct response to Travis' appeals was by thirty-two men from Gonzales, practically the entire male population of the little settlement. On the night of March 1 they made their way through the Mexican lines and entered the Alamo, fully aware, one may be sure, that the odds against their ever emerging alive were less than nothing in a thousand. They were perfectly willing to face the odds in order to delay the Mexican advance and give their fellow Americans a chance. And James B. Bonham, who had carried a plea for help to Fannin at Goliad, reentered the Alamo alone on March 3. He must have known that he was going to certain death, yet he deliberately spurned the chance to live. He

preferred to share the fate of comrades who a few weeks before had been strangers to him. History records no parallel for such acts as these.

The Alamo was invested on February 23. It was too large for the small defending force to man the outer walls properly, but Travis did the best he could under the circumstances. He had fourteen small cannon, but a limited supply of powder and cannon balls. He mounted the cannon where they would do the most execution: three on the roof of the church, pointing north, east and south; two at the stockade; two at the entrance to the convent yard; six on the convent roof, and one in the northwest corner of the outer enclosure, commanding a breach that existed in the north wall. He was personally in command here; Bonham, on the church roof. The siege lasted until the morning of Sunday, March 6, when the first and only assault was made. During the interval there was incessant cannonading and many feint attacks, but the fact that nobody was either killed or wounded during all that time testifies to their futility. They served the purpose, however, of harassing the defenders and wearing them down physically and mentally.

The Americans were under no illusions as to what their ultimate fate was to be. The demand for their surrender "at discretion" they understood to mean, if accepted, their murder in cold blood, for such was the Mexican way with rebels, which Santa Anna considered them to be; and during the duration of the siege the blood-red flag that signified "no quarter" flew from a pole in front of Mexican headquarters in full view, as well as from the tower of San Fernando church in town. It was a fight to the death and both sides knew it.

The final assault was under the direction of General Castrillon, a Spaniard and a trained soldier. It is to be presumed that the plan also was General Castrillon's, but history does not say so; and one is tempted to wonder if a Spanish gentleman such as he approved the ruthless slaughter of such brave men and worthy foes as he met that day.

One column was to attack the breach in the north wall, another the gate to the convent yard, and a third the stockade. The attack began simultaneously on three sides at dawn. The outer defenses fell quickly enough, and with them Travis, killed by a bayonet thrust. His last words were, "No

*rendirse, muchachos!"* (Don't surrender, boys!) They responded so well that the attack on the north wall was repulsed three times before the Mexicans finally succeeded in entering through the breach, about the time they came over the wooden stockade on the south.

With the enemy swarming into the outer enclosure the garrison was slowly forced back to the convent building. Although the present ruins show doors between the hospital and the various rooms, descriptions of the Alamo as it was at the time of the Fall seem to indicate that there was no communication between them, and that those who took refuge in the various rooms fought without hope of escape or of help from their comrades. The battle was simply a hand-to-hand fight between groups of men.

After the first few moments of the assault the Americans relied almost altogether upon the rifle. The gun beside which the body of Travis lay was turned against the convent walls, together with several others that were brought up for the purpose, and shots were sent crashing through the doors. Each ball was followed by a hail of musketry and a quick charge, room after room carried through sheer weight of numbers, and those within were killed by the bayonet, fighting to the last. The few Texans who manned the guns on the church roof turned them on the Mexicans pouring into the convent yard and fired them until the last man was killed — long before which time they had exhausted their supply of cannon balls and were loading the guns with pieces of iron, rocks, and anything else that came handy.

Crockett retreated to the prison or barracks at the south end of the outer enclosure. He was either alone or all his comrades had been killed early. He sallied forth at last to meet his fate in the open and was shot down in front of the chapel — but not before he had shot and clubbed many of the enemy to death. One account says his body was found surrounded by those of seventeen Mexicans whom he had killed during those last desperate moments.

Bowie was sick and confined to his cot in a room inside the chapel. He propped himself against the wall as the Mexicans entered and used his pistols with deadly effect until killed by a bayonet thrust, whereupon the Mexicans hoisted his body onto their bayonets and carried it triumphantly

around the room in an ecstasy of joy at the death of so valiant a foe.

The chapel was the last stronghold taken, and during the closing minutes of the struggle for its possession, Lieutenant A. M. Dickinson leaped from the upper rear window to the ground, with his little son in his arms. Both were shot to death.

In half an hour of actual fighting the Alamo had fallen! The butchery of the wounded, however, was not finished until nine o'clock.

As for Moses Rose, the only man who was not willing to die with Travis, it may be said that he was not a soldier, nor a volunteer. He was a French trader from Louisiana, caught in the whirl by accident.

No white man escaped the massacre. The last was killed trying to blow up the powder magazine. Seven native Texans of Spanish parentage were also killed. Only three were natives of Bejar. Mrs. Dickinson and one child, a Negro servant of Travis', two Mexican women and a Mexican child were spared. Every man who showed signs of life when Santa Anna came up (after the danger was over) was ruthlessly bayoneted by his orders, and all the bodies were burned in two huge pyres on either side of what is now East Commerce Street, in the vicinity of Rusk Street.

The correct number of Mexicans who opposed the one hundred and eighty-three men of the Alamo will never be known. Santa Anna reported that his army consisted of fourteen hundred men; but Santa Anna treated the encounter more in the nature of a skirmish, and his official report is valueless. Estimates from other sources vary from two thousand to six thousand men, and I have seen it stated that there were ten thousand Mexicans surrounding the Alamo during those fateful two weeks. Most reliable data would indicate that there were from four thousand to six thousand soldiers under direct command of Santa Anna at the time of the final assault on March 6, although the advance guard that appeared on February 21 was not over a thousand.

How many Mexicans were killed during the assault? Nobody knows. Santa Anna reported seventy killed and three hundred wounded, but that, as one historian bluntly says, is obviously an outrageous lie. Mr. Reuben M. Potter, who is considered an authority, says five hundred were killed.



Dr. Barnard, who was spared from Fannin's massacre with other surgeons so that they could treat the Mexican wounded, says in his diary:

"The surgeons [at San Antonio] inform us that there were four hundred brought into the hospitals the morning they assaulted the Alamo, but I should think from appearances there were more. I see many around town who were crippled there, apparently three or four hundred such; and citizens inform me that three or four hundred have died of their wounds." He adds: "Travis and his faithful few did a pretty piece of work."

Francisco Ruíz, a native, and Alcalde of San Antonio de Bejar at the time of the Fall, states that sixteen hundred were killed and three hundred wounded.

Sergeant Becero, who was one of the assaulting force, afterwards captured at San Jacinto, and who subsequently became a good citizen of Texas, says two thousand were killed and three hundred wounded. He should know, for he was in charge of the detail that gathered the bodies of the Mexican dead and burned them. Whichever is true, it would appear that Travis and his faithful few certainly did do a pretty piece of work!

When one realizes that these men had been under a terrific strain for nearly two weeks, that they were fighting with the knowledge that death for them was inevitable; when one remembers that they were not using machine guns, nor even modern high-powered quick action rifles, but primitive old muzzle loaders into which each charge had to be rammed home before it could be fired, one can but dimly begin to appreciate the stuff from which the Men of the Alamo were made.



## Origin of the Name "Alamo"

The name *Alamo* is supposed to be derived from the Spanish name for cottonwood, a species of poplar tree common in Texas. Cottonwood trees grew in the vicinity of the Alamo until comparatively recent times.

## MEN OF GOLIAD



*"Pobrecitos!"*

OF ALL the tragedies of Texas history the most pathetic is the massacre of Fannin and his men at Goliad. The Men of the Alamo died gloriously, fighting to the last and exacting a terrific toll from the enemy; but the Men of Goliad were unarmed, helpless, unsuspecting, shot down in the most deliberate, coldblooded way after they had surrendered as prisoners of war under a solemn agreement that they should be treated in accordance with the usages of civilized nations. It matters not that Santa Anna claimed he did not know Urrea had agreed to terms. It matters not that General Urrea claimed they surrendered unconditionally and offered his diary in proof. There is nothing in the history or character of any of the Mexican officers connected with the brutal slaughter of these men, with the exception of Colonel Garay, that would induce thinking people to put credence in any plea they might make in extenuation. There can be no justification for the massacre. It was foul murder.

The gathering storm of indignation on the part of the American colonists in Texas at the outrageous treatment they were receiving from the Mexican Government, in violation of every agreement under which they had come, broke at Gonzales in October, 1835. The subsequent capture of San Antonio de Bejar in December and the surrender of General Cos (Santa Anna's brother-in-law), with fourteen hundred Mexican soldiers, who were paroled on their solemn oaths never again to bear arms against Texas, left the state without a single armed Mexican soldier within its boundaries. It was figured that it would take from four to six months for Santa Anna to gather another army and re-invade Texas. But Cos and his fourteen hundred Mexican soldiers violated their parole and formed the nucleus of the new army that was ready to cross the Rio Grande in February, a full two months earlier than expected.

Meanwhile the Americans in Texas began preparing in leisurely fashion for the inevitable renewal of the struggle. A provisional government was formed, a call for volunteers published throughout the United States, and the colonists, who had hitherto borne the brunt of the fighting, returned to their homes to prepare for the spring planting. Only a few scattered bands of armed Texans remained, over whom the provisional governor, Henry Smith, named Sam Houston commander-in-chief. The conservative element in the Council opposed Houston's choice and refused to confirm his appointment. Instead they commissioned several officers themselves from among those who had been active in the affairs of Texas before the advent of Houston — men who felt that they had a better right to the honor than he.

One of these was James W. Fannin, Jr., of Georgia, who had come to Texas early in 1834 and had thrown himself wholeheartedly into the impending struggle. Fannin was a graduate of the United States Military Academy, was thirty-one years old, and had fought with distinction at San Antonio. Possibly because of his military training, and perhaps to win him over, Houston singled him out and commissioned him inspector general with the rank of colonel. Fannin had expected a brigadier-generalship, and while expressing his disappointment, accepted the commission and was sent by Houston to Copano to whip into shape the volunteers who

were beginning to arrive. While at Copano he accepted a commission from the Council as their "agent" and was subsequently elected by the volunteers as commander-in-chief, which election was confirmed by the Council. Whether Fannin took this to mean commander-in-chief of this particular company of volunteers, or of the entire Texan forces is debatable, but he signed several proclamations as "Commander-in-Chief" without the knowledge or consent of Houston, and began diverting the volunteers to Colonel F. W. Johnson and Dr. James Grant for their projected invasion of Mexico via Matamoros, a chimerical scheme which Houston opposed.

Late in January, 1836, Fannin was at Refugio with some five hundred well-equipped men, the only force in any way resembling an army in the whole of Texas. These were volunteers lately arrived, and included the New Orleans Grays, the Red Rovers from Alabama, the Mobile Grays, companies from Kentucky and Tennessee, and a large contingent from Fannin's own state of Georgia. It is a matter of record that he wrote the Council there were only six men with him who had had previous experience in Texas. Only six who had any knowledge of the country or the character of the enemy they were to fight!

Although his authority was disputed, Houston went to Refugio in an endeavor to discourage Dr. Grant's farcical expedition to capture Matamoros. Fannin had been won over to the Matamoros project but Houston's open ridicule caused him and the men under him to begin to doubt the wisdom of it. Fannin seems to have had difficulty at this time in making up his mind whether to exercise the authority vested in him by the Council or to acknowledge Houston as commander-in-chief. Since Houston was shrewd enough to realize there was no glory in commanding an insubordinate army, he asked Governor Smith for a "leave of absence" and withdrew. He left Fannin in command, with strict orders to abandon both Refugio and Goliad and concentrate his forces at Victoria, in preparation to join Travis, who was at the Alamo, for a further retreat to the Colorado River. Houston then had himself chosen by the citizens of Refugio as their delegate to the convention that was to meet at Washington-on-the-Brazos on March 1, and left the scene. Fannin made no attempt to obey Houston's orders for twelve days.

Meanwhile the Alamo unexpectedly had been invested

by a large force of Mexicans, and Fannin received word of another force advancing from Matamoros along the coast for the purpose of annihilating Colonel Johnson and Dr. Grant, as well as the defenders of Refugio, who had at length fallen back to Goliad and made themselves comfortable in the old mission of La Bahía. Here Fannin received a further imperative command from Houston to blow up his fort and retire to Victoria to await further orders; and on February 28 Colonel James B. Bonham arrived from the Alamo with an urgent appeal from Travis for help. Fannin did nothing.

It must be emphasized that Fannin's force consisted entirely of recent volunteers from the United States. They were for the most part mere boys, under twenty-five years of age, unused to discipline and animated by the desire for adventure. They were filled with the supreme confidence of youth, and had come to Texas to fight, not to retreat. Moreover, as was customary with volunteer troops in those days, the company commander had to be consulted upon all matters affecting the men under him, and, as a rule, he referred vital questions to the men themselves, with whom rested the ultimate decision. Although there is nothing in the record to indicate it to be a fact, it is highly probable that the vacillating, easy-going, gentlemanly Fannin did not know how to control the turbulent spirits under him, or to exact obedience from them. This would explain a great deal in his conduct, his apparent hesitation and indecision, that is at variance with the training he had had.

All this time General Urrea was advancing rapidly from Matamoros with over fifteen hundred men. Knowing this, Fannin ordered Captain Pierce, who was at San Patricio with forty men, to join him at Goliad; but Johnson and Grant were also at San Patricio, still trying to organize the Matamoros Expedition, and Fannin's order was disobeyed. The garrison at San Patricio was surrounded and compelled to surrender on February 27, and Urrea immediately had them all shot, Johnson and only two others escaping. Fannin still remained quietly at Goliad until March 10, when he sent Captain King with twenty-eight men to bring in some American families who had been left behind at Refugio.

King reached Refugio on March 12, to be attacked by Urrea and compelled to take refuge in the old stone church. He appealed to Fannin for help and Colonel Ward and one

hundred and twenty men were sent to his assistance. Ward had no difficulty in entering the church, which was immediately surrounded by Urrea and his main army of over a thousand men. King was sent out with thirteen men to reconnoiter and was attacked. Ward went to his assistance but was beaten back and King and his men were captured. By Urrea's orders the fourteen were tied to trees and shot in full view of the garrison. Ward and his men fought the Mexicans off and made their escape during the night, leaving three wounded behind, well supplied with food and water. These wounded men were shot next day when Urrea took possession of the church.

Ward and his men made their way to Victoria by a circuitous route, to find that town in the hands of the Mexicans, and being entirely out of food and ammunition, they surrendered on March 21.

Fannin waited six days for the return of Ward, receiving in the meantime news of the Fall of the Alamo and an urgent order from Houston to join him as quickly as possible on the Colorado River. On March 18 he learned definitely that Ward had retreated from Refugio to Victoria, and he lost no further time in trying to obey Houston's orders. The fort was dismantled, the heavy cannon were buried, and such food as they could not take with them was destroyed.

Before daylight on March 19 he set out for Victoria with three hundred and fifty men, ten small cannon, and a number of wagons drawn by oxen. The morning was extremely dark and foggy and it took until ten o'clock to cross the San Antonio River. Then they started across the open prairie for the Coleta Creek, ten miles from Goliad. But, when about three miles from the shelter of the timber along the creek, Fannin ordered a halt to graze the oxen where the grass was particularly green and luscious. Some of his officers remonstrated with him and urged that they go on to water and the shelter of the timber. Fannin laughed. The Mexicans had commandeered all the good oxen in the country; his were poor and needed the food and rest. Besides, he had sent scouts out in all directions.

The oxen grazed for over half an hour and the order had just been given to hitch up the teams and resume the march when a line of cavalry was seen coming from a motte of timber about two miles away. They advanced at a gallop

and took up a position between the Americans and the Coletto. Several companies of infantry followed close behind and spread out on both sides, and the Americans were trapped in the depression in which they had stopped, six or seven feet below the level of the surrounding prairie. The scouts sent out by Fannin to prevent just such a calamity had failed him.

In a hurried effort to reach higher ground an ammunition wagon broke down, and Fannin was compelled to make a stand where he was. He drew up his little army in the form of a hollow square, three ranks deep, with the wagons in the center and the cannon at the corners, and instructed his men to hold their fire until there was no possibility of missing their aim.

The Mexicans were first seen at two o'clock. By three they had entirely surrounded the Americans, and Urrea ordered a general charge. Three times they charged and three times they were stopped dead and hurled back, although Urrea led the last charge in person and his officers were pricking the men with their swords in an effort to force them forward. Urrea then gave up and resorted to sniping, which continued all through the night.

The Americans were in a desperate plight. The lack of water had caused their cannon to become overheated during the afternoon's fighting, and they were now useless. Seven of their number had been killed and sixty wounded, including Fannin, who was shot through the thigh. They suffered intensely from thirst, and through some tragic oversight the food had been left behind. To add to their misery a heavy cold fog came up again which, coupled with the fact that they had no lights, prevented the surgeons from properly attending the wounded.

Fannin's cheerfulness and confidence were inspiring. He urged a dash during the night to the shelter of the timber along the Coletto. He had no doubt of their ability to accomplish it, but feared it would be too late in the morning, as the enemy undoubtedly would be reinforced. To make the dash, however, meant to abandon the wounded and he would not order that. The men must decide for themselves. The men refused to consider anything that meant abandoning their wounded comrades, and spent the night throwing up breastworks around their position, which was further

strengthened by a rearrangement of the wagons and the bodies of the oxen slain during the day's fighting. It was a miserable night without rest, food or water, and before it was fairly light they were disheartened by the sight of three or four hundred reinforcements for the Mexicans, with two guns and a hundred mules laden with ammunition.

The Mexicans opened a harassing fire at daybreak. Since it was evident that the position of the Americans was untenable, a consultation of officers was held and the question of surrender discussed. Fannin opposed it. He and Bowie with ninety men had whipped four hundred Mexicans under somewhat similar conditions at Concepción, just before the capture of Bejar, and he was supremely contemptuous of Mexicans and their fighting ability.

"We whipped them yesterday," he declared, "and we can do it again."

Poor Fannin! There is no doubt of his personal courage, but he forgot to take into consideration the difference in the caliber of the Americans at Concepción and at Goliad. The ninety men at Concepción were seasoned veterans of many a brush with the Mexicans; the Men of Goliad, a group of untried boys.

The majority of the officers, however, were in favor of surrender if honorable terms could be obtained. The question was submitted to the men by the company commanders, and they, too, decided upon surrender. The white flag was raised.

Colonel Fannin, Major Wallace, and Captain Dusangue met Colonel Salas, Lieutenant Colonel Holzinger and Lieutenant Gonzales of the Mexican Army, and after a short parley they returned to their respective lines. Fannin announced the terms of surrender that had been agreed upon. They were:

The Texans were to be treated as prisoners of war, according to the usages of civilized nations.

Private property was to be respected and restored, but the officers were to give up their side arms.

The wounded were to be given proper care and medical attention.

These terms, written in both Spanish and English, were signed by the different officers with every formality. A further verbal agreement was said to have been made that the



men should be returned to New Orleans under parole, not to serve again during the war in Texas. This seems to have been confirmed by the remark of Lieutenant Colonel Holzinger, the Mexican officer appointed to receive the surrendered arms. As they were delivered to him he said: "Well, gentlemen, in ten days liberty and home!"

The prisoners were marched back to Goliad at once under a strong guard of cavalry and confined in the old church at La Bahía. The wounded were brought next day in carts and confined in the hospital, which was a part of the barracks.

The church was small and the prisoners uncomfortably crowded, and they were given but four ounces of fresh beef as rations, which they were obliged to cook themselves. This was all the food that was furnished. They had to buy everything else they ate. The American surgeons were compelled to leave the American wounded and attend the Mexican wounded, and their medicines and surgical instruments were appropriated by the Mexicans. Fannin addressed a note to General Urrea protesting the violation of the terms of surrender, but it was ignored.

Colonel Ward and his men, who surrendered at Victoria on the 21st, were also brought to Goliad and confined in the church, as were eighty-two volunteers from Nashville, under Major Miller, who had been captured as they landed at Copano. The church was worse crowded than ever and the conditions well nigh intolerable.

On the evening of March 26, Colonel Fannin and the Mexican Lieutenant Colonel Holzinger returned from Copano, where they had gone ostensibly to see if a vessel could be obtained to take the Americans to New Orleans. None was in port. Notwithstanding the hardships and indignities to which they were being subjected in violation of the terms of surrender, the prisoners were happy at the apparent intention of the Mexicans to send them home, and they spent this Saturday evening having a good time. One of the men had managed to retain possession of his flute, and several of them sang "Home Sweet Home" to his accompaniment. At that very time Colonel Portilla, the commandant of Goliad, had in his possession an order from Santa Anna that all prisoners should be shot, and preparations for carrying out the order were in progress.

Early next morning, Palm Sunday, March 27, 1836, the prisoners were awakened and formed in three divisions. One was led out on the road to San Antonio, one on the road to San Patricio, and the third on the road to Copano. One party was given as an excuse for the maneuver by the Mexican officers that they were being sent home, another that they were being sent out to kill some cattle, and the third that they were being sent to other quarters, as the church was needed for Santa Anna's troops, which were due to arrive. As they passed through the town the Mexican women crowded to the doors of their homes exclaiming, "*Pobrecitos!*" (poor fellows) but the trustful Americans paid no attention, if they understood, and the exclamations aroused no suspicion.

Each party marched between a double line of Mexican soldiers. When they were about half a mile from town they were halted, and the soldiers all lined up in front of them. Some of the doomed men just had time to shout, "My God, boys, they're going to kill us!" when the order was given to fire, and volley after volley poured in at such close range that it seemed impossible any should escape. The lines of prisoners fell in heaps. Some few, who miraculously were unwounded, struggled to their feet and started toward the timber, but cavalry had been posted to intercept them and they were shot as they ran, the soldiers stabbing the wounded to death with their bayonets. Twenty-seven finally reached the river alive and swam it, and after incredible hardships and suffering reached safety among the American settlements. Several were in the Texan Army at San Jacinto that a few weeks later defeated Santa Anna, and one may be sure they saw to it that their comrades were in a measure avenged.

Colonel Fannin and Colonel Ward were not killed with the others, but were shot separately soon afterwards. Fannin was unmoved by the news that he was to be executed. He probably had expected it from the first. He gave his watch to the officers in charge of his execution, with the request that it be sent to his family. He also asked that he not be shot in the head, and that he be given a decent burial. He was shot in the head, his body was burned with the rest, and his family never received the watch.

Colonel Ward was ordered to kneel, but refused to do so. He died standing boldly erect, facing the Mexicans and de-

nouncing them for the coldblooded murderers they were.

The wounded in the hospital at Goliad were dragged from their beds and shot.

Colonel Garay of the Mexican Army took it upon himself to save Major Miller and his company, who had been taken at Copano, and who had engaged in no actual fighting. They were subsequently paroled and sent back to New Orleans, a fact that Santa Anna later referred to as an evidence of his desire to be just and magnanimous, although when he heard they had not been executed with the others, he flew into a rage, and ordered that they be shot at once. His aide discreetly forgot to dispatch the order.

Colonel Garay also took it upon himself to save the surgeons and two other men who had been working for him. One can scarcely imagine the feelings of Dr. Shackelford, one of the surgeons who was also commander of the Red Rovers, when he heard the shots that sent his son, his two nephews, and the sons of his dearest friends and neighbors to an untimely and horrible end.

After his capture at San Jacinto, Santa Anna claimed Urrea informed him that Fannin had surrendered unconditionally, and accordingly he had ordered the execution of the men as pirates under the existing Mexican law. Urrea denied that terms had been given the prisoners at Goliad and offered his diary in proof. However, the sequence of events as set down in the diary differs from the facts as related by others. The terms were read by Fannin to his men, and such men as Dr. Barnard, Dr. Shackelford and others testify to having seen them in writing and signed by both the American and the Mexican officers. The fact that no copy of the terms of surrender has ever been found, upon which the Mexicans rely for further proof that none were given, means nothing. Santa Anna stands condemned before the whole world. He alone is responsible, as he was the Government of Mexico at the time. Most of his subordinates, however, proved willing and able accomplices.

Three hundred and twenty men were murdered at Goliad, twenty at Refugio, forty at San Patricio, and some twenty died during the fighting in this brief but tragic campaign. The only excuse ever offered by Santa Anna and those who seemed inclined to defend him, was that the men were filibusters, and a law recently passed by the Mexican Con-

gress classed filibusters with pirates and decreed their death when caught on Mexican soil. Even that, however, does not excuse the violation of a solemn agreement.

One can only speculate, but in the light of known achievement it is more than likely Fannin was right. Had they decided to fight it out they probably would have won, for odds of four or five to one never daunted Americans in those days. General Adrian Woll, an Austrian in the service of Mexico, made the statement after San Jacinto that had Fannin attacked Urrea, the Mexicans would have fled; but had they attacked and failed, they at any rate would have emulated their comrades of the Alamo and made Mexico pay dearly for the victory. As it was, Urrea lost nearly four hundred in killed and wounded in the fighting on the prairie that afternoon of March 19.



• The darkest day in all the history of Texas . . . a day that has no counterpart in the annals of civilized warfare . . . came to a close on March 6, 1836, just four days following the Declaration of Texas Independence . . . with Colonel William B. Travis and his small but brave band slaughtered and burned on the Altar of Texas Liberty . . . the immortal Alamo . . . church and fortress that fell before the overwhelming forces of Santa Anna and his large Mexican Army . . . . Needless to say, revenge for the Fall of the Alamo was the thought uppermost in the minds of Texans . . . and this desire for retaliation was of fundamental importance in bringing the struggle to a swift and decisive end.



• The massacre of Fannin and his men at Goliad was certainly more brutal and unnecessary than the Fall of the Alamo . . . . The Men of the Alamo died fighting; those of Goliad were murdered in cold blood . . . and although the disastrous slaughter spurred the colonists finally to victory, the occurrence was a tragic one, and could have been avoided . . . . Fannin had a splendid military background . . . but many unfavorable conditions united to make his revolutionary efforts a dismal failure . . . . Few managed to survive the carefully planned execution order . . . when on Palm Sunday, March 27, 1836, the captives were marched in three separate columns out of La Bahía . . . supposedly on innocent fatigue missions . . . and were, without warning, fired upon by accompanying Mexican guards . . . many of them going to their deaths unaware of the Mexican treachery.

## MEN OF SAN JACINTO



*"Remember the Alamo! Remember Goliad!"*

WHEN General Sam Houston reached Gonzales on March 11, 1836, after having been commissioned commander-in-chief of all the Texan forces and instructed to relieve the Alamo, he found three hundred volunteers there unorganized, leaderless, and badly demoralized. The news had been brought by a Mexican refugee that the Alamo had fallen on March 6 and every American defender killed. He denounced the Mexican as a liar and imprisoned him in an effort to counteract the effect of the news, which he knew to be true; but on the 13th the widow of Lieutenant Almaron Dickinson arrived with her baby, and nearly every home in Gonzales was plunged into mourning by her confirmation of the disaster, for thirty-two gallant sons of Green De Witt's colony perished. That night Houston burned the little settlement and began his retreat, first dispatching a swift courier to Fannin at Goliad, ordering him to hasten with all possible speed to join him (Houston) at a point on the Colorado.

When he reached Peach Creek next day twenty-five of the panicky volunteers deserted and spread the alarm ahead of the retreating army; but to offset the defection one hundred and twenty-five additional men joined the retreat, and at Burnham's Crossing on the Colorado (near the present town of La Grange), which he reached on the 17th, thirty-five more arrived. He waited for Fannin at this point with his little army, now numbering four hundred and seventy-five men; but hearing nothing from him, he crossed the Colorado and proceeded down the east bank to Beeson's Ford, near the present town of Columbus, where he remained until the 26th.

The exodus referred to in Texas History as the "Run-away Scrape" was in full swing by now. President David G. Burnet of the newly organized provisional government, and his cabinet, betook themselves to Harrisburg (now a part of Houston), where they established another temporary capitol. With the Government and the army in full retreat panic seized the colonists, who hurriedly moved their possessions eastward to the Sabine, and beyond, for safety.

When one studies this so-called "runaway," however, he is immediately struck by the fact that once their loved ones were in a place of comparative safety, the men came back and flocked to Houston's standard in such numbers that his army was soon swelled to between twelve hundred and fifteen hundred. True, they were merely volunteers, without discipline or training, but they were *men*. In contrast with the Men of the Alamo, who were largely seasoned soldiers of fortune, and with the Men of Goliad, who were mere boys lured by the prospect of adventure, the Men of San Jacinto were for the most part the actual settlers of the country. They were the nearest approach to real Texans of all who participated in the fight for independence. As a matter of fact, one company was composed entirely of native Texans of Spanish ancestry, and all had been aroused to the highest pitch of indignation by the unparalleled barbarity of the Mexicans.

Meanwhile, after the Fall of the Alamo, Santa Anna rested until he received word of Houston's arrival at Gonzales and his subsequent retreat, when he dispatched General Sesma in quick pursuit. At the same time he sent General Gaona to Bastrop, the farthest west of all the settlements along the Colorado, with instructions to work down the river to a

junction with Sesma. General Urrea was in the vicinity of Goliad, at grips with Fannin, and General Andrade remained with a moderate force to defend Bejar. The Mexican Army of about ten thousand was thus scattered over a territory larger than the state of New York. All officers had instructions to shoot every American found with arms.

Finding Gonzales in ruins, Sesma left a force to guard it and hurried to the Colorado after Houston. He appeared on the west bank of the river, two miles above Beeson's Ford, on March 19, but was under strict orders not to cross the river before being joined by General Gaona unless attacked, and he made no effort to do so.

It is not intended to describe the San Jacinto campaign, but rather to give a glimpse of the character of men who participated in it. However, in order to understand the characters of a drama, one must know the motives that actuate them and have a clear picture of the stage setting.

Critics have voiced the opinion that General Houston missed a glorious opportunity by his failure to attack Sesma on the Colorado. The latter had only seven hundred men, and while Houston claimed his army was no larger, competent authorities agree that he must have had fully twelve hundred when Sesma first appeared. The Americans were eager to fight, even if the odds should be two or three to one against them. They knew nothing of discipline and cared less for military tactics, two things the lack of which seemed to have influenced Houston in his determination not to fight. The blood of the victims of the Alamo was calling for vengeance, they were standing between the enemy and their homes, and they wanted to *fight*.

Houston was not ready to do so. He was sure that to defeat Sesma would cause Santa Anna to concentrate his forces, and he preferred them scattered. He temporized and endeavored to drill men who would not drill. He made the mistake of consulting no one, of giving no reason for his reluctance to engage the enemy, and lost the opportunity to restore confidence to a demoralized people. The result was that his disgusted army dwindled, through furloughs and desertions, to less than seven hundred sullen and discouraged men, whose morale was far below par.

On the 25th, Peter Kerr brought the news of Fannin's surrender after the battle of the Coleto, which blasted all

Houston's hope of help from that quarter. The news of this fresh calamity was withheld from the army and the next day the retreat toward the Brazos was resumed.

It was spring. It had been a season of unprecedented rains; all the creeks and draws were running bank-full and the rivers were swollen to unbelievable heights. The prairie, marked by indifferent roads and trails, was but a hog-wallow, and the difficulties of the march can scarcely be imagined. Animals and wagons were continually bogging down and had to be lifted out of the mire by main strength. The men had to subsist off the country and the cold rain that continued to fall sapped the vitality of even those hardy spirits, for they were without shelter of any kind, and for the most part poorly clad. They were able to make but five miles the first day, and although it is only about twenty-five miles across, they did not reach San Felipe on the Brazos until the evening of the 28th. . . . Instead of crossing the Brazos and continuing southeast, Houston ordered a retreat north.

He left Baker with one hundred and twenty men at San Felipe, and Martin with approximately the same number at Fort Bend. His own command was now reduced to five hundred and twenty men, with whom he retreated twenty miles North to Groce's Ferry, near the present town of Hempstead.

It is interesting to add that, due largely to lack of information regarding the enemy and the panicky condition of the men in consequence, on the 29th Captain Baker burned San Felipe under the impression that a herd of cattle was the advancing Mexican Army.

Houston stopped two weeks on the west side of the river, near Groce's Ferry. The army was encamped in the Brazos bottom, which was flooded. Rain fell steadily the whole time, the camp was a hummock of mud, surrounded by swirling waters, and the men had no tents and no food, except the cattle they were able to kill.

The news of the massacre of Fannin's men reached the Commander while they were encamped here, but he withheld it from his army, fearing its demoralizing effect. How he misjudged the spirit of the men under him was later demonstrated. The brutality of Santa Anna had the opposite effect from what was expected. Instead of inspiring fear and terror, it but served to crystallize the resistance of the Texans.



The dissatisfaction at General Houston's continued inactivity communicated itself to the Government and General Rusk, the Secretary of War, was sent with instructions to force him to do something, or take over the command himself. He reached Groce's Ferry on April 4 and discussed the situation with the Commander-in-Chief, who apparently won Rusk over to his way of thinking, for the inactivity continued. Houston later declared his plan was to fall upon the Mexicans when they reached the Brazos, but that continued rain and the condition of the terrain rendered this impossible. He, however, confided this plan to no one, unless it should have been Rusk.

Meanwhile General Sesma was joined by the force he had left at Gonzales, which brought his army up to fourteen hundred men, and on April 7 General Santa Anna arrived and took over the command. He immediately crossed the swollen Colorado on rafts and made a forced march to San Felipe. Captain Baker had moved his command to the east side of the river and disputed the crossing of the Brazos so effectively that Santa Anna gave up the attempt; and his scouts having been unable to locate Houston's main army, he concluded the Texans had fled to Nacogdoches and prepared to follow. He was so sure the Texans were on the run that, despite the remonstrances of his generals, he countermanded a previous order that Urrea should join him and did not wait for General Gaona, who had become lost in the attempt to follow the course of the Colorado and did not reach San Felipe until the 17th.

Upon his failure to effect a crossing at San Felipe, Santa Anna moved to Fort Bend, some thirty miles below, where Captain Martin had all the boats on the east side of the river. Colonel Almonte, who spoke excellent English, tricked a Negro boatman into crossing to the west side, where his boat was seized, and the Mexican Army crossed the Brazos on the 13th. Upon learning that the President and the Cabinet of the Provisional Republic of Texas were at Harrisburg, Santa Anna turned aside and made a dash with seven hundred men for that town, leaving Sesma and the rest of his army at San Felipe to await orders. He reached Harrisburg the night of the 17th to find that the Government had fled that morning to New Washington, on the shores of Galveston Bay. He burned Harrisburg and pushed rapidly on to New

Washington, where he missed capturing President Burnet and family by a few minutes. He burned New Washington and dispatched a fast courier to Sesma with orders to join him for the campaign in East Texas.

Inactivity continued in the Texan camp until the 11th, when two cannon, a gift from citizens of Cincinnati, arrived from Harrisburg. These were the "Twin Sisters," the only artillery Houston had, and as no ordnance had come with them, he set the men to work cutting horseshoes and pieces of iron and tying them in bags for cannister. On the 12th he crossed the Brazos; that night they camped at Donoghue's Plantation, where they were joined by Baker's and Martin's commands after their unsuccessful efforts to halt the Mexican advance at the Brazos.

The march southeast was resumed on the 14th through mud and water, and under almost impossible conditions generally. On the 18th they arrived on the banks of Buffalo Bayou, opposite the ruins of Harrisburg, having covered fifty-five miles in the last two and one-half days. So sure were the men that Houston intended retreating to the Sabine that upon coming to a fork in the road, the left branch of which led to Nacogdoches and the right to Harrisburg, betting was freely indulged in as to which road the Commander-in-Chief would take, with odds favoring the left. Not until they were definitely on the road to Harrisburg did the feeling begin to prevail that a fight was in prospect.

Deaf Smith swam the flooded Buffalo Bayou and captured a courier with dispatches for Santa Anna, which settled all doubt as to the Mexican President's whereabouts and established conclusively the fact that he was cut off from the help of Sesma and his other generals. Not until then did Houston say anything to his men. He called them together and is said to have told them, tersely: "The army will cross and we will meet the enemy. Some of us may be killed and must be killed. But, soldiers, remember the Alamo!"

General Rusk did not overlook the opportunity to begin a soul-stirring speech, but realizing that it was foolish to try to inspire men who had been praying for weeks for a chance to fight, stopped abruptly in the middle of a sentence.

Buffalo Bayou was running bank-full, but under the direction of Houston and Rusk, it was crossed before nightfall and the troops pushed on until they were utterly exhausted,

when they were given a couple of hours' rest. After this they resumed the march, to halt finally on ground of Houston's own choosing near Lynch's Ferry, opposite the mouth of the San Jacinto River. After his unsuccessful side trip to capture the Texan President and his Cabinet, Santa Anna must make use of this ferry to reach Nacogdoches and East Texas and complete the pacification of the rebellious province. The trap was set on April 20, and Santa Anna appeared that same afternoon.

The resultant Battle of San Jacinto was no battle at all. The armies lay facing each other until the afternoon of the 21st, Santa Anna having been reinforced by General Cos with five hundred and forty men, which brought his total force up to over thirteen hundred; Houston with seven hundred and eighty-three effectives. The Texan commander slept all the morning of the 21st, the first real sleep he had had in weeks. The men, fearful that they would lose the chance they had been praying for, murmured and complained at the delay, and the subordinate officers finally demanded a council of war, which was held about noon. There was considerable discussion and much difference of opinion, but Houston, as usual, took no part and kept his own counsel. Some accounts say he proposed a postponement of the impending battle, but that is not certain. The council broke up, having accomplished nothing definite, and the men were still without knowledge of the Commander's intentions.

It was not until 3:30 that he finally began disposing his little army in battle array. The Mexicans were confident the Texans would not dare to attack and were enjoying the siesta, policing the camp, watering the horses and performing other odd jobs in a desultory way when the Texans suddenly struck. A thin line swept forward silently, under cover of a feint artillery attack, the Commander at their head exhorting them to hold their fire, until they were right against the Mexican breastworks. A single volley and they were completely out of control. Having no bayonets, they clubbed their rifles and unsheathed their deadly bowie knives. Seven hundred and eighty-three avenging demons swarmed over the astonished Mexicans and in less than a quarter of an hour had them on the run. From then on it was merely a slaughter of frightened, helpless, blubbering creatures hardly worthy to be called men. All that afternoon and late into

the night they pursued the Mexicans relentlessly with cries of "Remember the Alamo!" and "Remember Goliad!"—ominous words to the terror-stricken creatures, who fell on their knees and piteously pleaded "Me no Alamo!" "Me no Goliad!" even as they died.

Six hundred and thirty Mexicans were killed, two hundred and eight wounded and seven hundred and thirty made prisoners, according to Houston's official report, and among the prisoners were Santa Anna himself and the despicable Cos. Six Texans were killed and twenty-three wounded. Incredible, but true!

After the hardships of the campaign, the strain and suspense of nearly six weeks, came the reaction. With the certainty that the invasion of Texas was stopped, they threw restraint to the winds and celebrated with complete abandon. Colonel Delgado, one of the Mexican prisoners, has left us a vivid picture of the events of the next few weeks.

After his capture he tells us:

At last we reached camp. We were seated on the ground by two's, as we had marched. A crowd gathered around us asking with persistent impertinence: "General Santa Anna?" "General Cos?" We knew not the fate of these gentlemen, but to rid ourselves of their repeated questions we answered, "Dead! Dead!" I still wore my embroidered shoulder straps on my jacket; they attracted their attention, and one after another would say, "You general?" "'Me no general' would I answer until one of the indefatigable questioners tore off my shoulder straps angrily. I was glad of it, as they ceased importuning me with questions.

After keeping us sitting there for about an hour they marched us into the woods, where we saw an immense fire, made up of piles of wood, even whole trees being used. I and several of my companions were silly enough to believe that we were about to be burned alive in retaliation for those who had been burnt at the Alamo. However, we felt relieved when they placed us around the fire to warm ourselves and dry our wet clothes.

Again he tells us:

Some Americans would come and tell us in broken Spanish what was going on among their leaders, stating that the officers and the people—that is, the soldiery—were

holding a meeting to consider the question whether we should be shot before notifying it to their government, or whether the execution should be postponed and ordered by the superior authority.

Such was the state of our affairs when the assembly roll, or something else, was beaten. Over a hundred men fell into line. They loaded their guns and then stood at ease. We felt nervous. I, for one, was as cold as ice, believing that those who were in favor of immediate execution had carried their point, and that the fatal moment had come. They were, however, merely changing the guard!

Later he says:

On the 23rd, 70 or 80 loads of ordnance stores had been brought in and deposited, together with piles of loaded muskets and cartridge boxes, in close proximity to our camp. We had noticed repeatedly that some of the Americans went about that combustible matter, and even handled it, with their pipes in their mouths. In one of these instances of carelessness some grains of powder scattered on the ground ignited. The fire reached the cartridge boxes and their contents and soon extended to the pans of the muskets, which exploded like an infernal machine. The prairie, too, was set on fire, and the covers of the ordnance boxes were already burning. Those nearest to the scene of danger took to flight. We and our sentinels followed, and, although we knew they would be dissatisfied with our race, and might possibly fire on us, we kept running. We had run a considerable distance when we turned and looked back, and discovered that the fire had been extinguished. We could not help applauding the resolution and bold determination with which some of these extraordinary men had rushed into the flames and smothered them with their feet and blankets and water from the bay. We had a narrow escape. I thought at one time that the conquerors of San Jacinto would all be blown into eternity; not, however, without some regret on my part to have to go the way they went, owing to their stupid carelessness.

As a climax Colonel Delgado further adds:

On the 26th our property was sold at auction. It was hard to see them breaking our trunks open and every one of them loaded with our shirts, trousers, coats, etc., while we remained with what we had on our bodies. I saw my boots

going, while my blistered feet were wrapped in pieces of rawhide. To make up for our cloaks, overcoats and blankets, which belonged to the highest bidder, they favored us with the greatcoats of our own soldiers, which were so lousy that we had the greatest trouble to rid ourselves of the vermin.

The saddles and pack mules belonging to our division were also distributed among the conquering officers and soldiers. It was quite amusing to see these gentlemen putting riding saddles on some fractious and wicked mules which knew nothing beyond the pack. They would adorn them with green and red cords which our grenadiers and voltigeurs wore on their caps, placing them on their ears, neck and back. One did put two pair of blinds on one mule — one on the headstall, as it should be, and the other on the noseband, stopping the poor animal's nostrils. They would also bedeck their mules with the epaulets of our officers, caring little if the one was white and the other yellow. They glittered — that was enough. They delighted to cover their animals with all sorts of trappings and colors, after the fashion of our bullfight clowns.

One of these young chevaliers attracted more especially my attention. He had saddled up and adorned his mule, without, however, noticing that the surcingle was loose. He mounted the long-eared steed, which was held fast by some of his friends while he steadied himself in the saddle. They let go and you should have seen the brute scampering over God's green fields and scattering about his trappings and ornaments. Lo! our poor Yankee flies on high with his saddle, and drops heavily to the ground, from which he could not rise, his ribs being somewhat damaged.

This was not the worst, but the mule once in the woods could not be caught again. Trials of horsemanship lasted the whole day, but most of the champions shared the fate of the first one. How strange these men are! Many of them act and feel like the wild Comanche!

How strange indeed were these men of San Jacinto!

The victory was stupendous in its consequences. With the President of Mexico their prisoner, the armistice that was soon concluded swept every armed Mexican back beyond the Rio Grande and paved the way for Mexico's acknowledgment of Texan independence — a thing that failed of accomplishment because of the folly of the victors. Not the real victors, however. Houston, who had been severely wounded, went to New Orleans for treatment, and now that the work

was over, the colonists, who had been the backbone of his army, turned again to their homes. Spring and the planting season demanded their attention and they left, their places in the army being filled with volunteers but recently arrived from the United States.

The controversy over the fate of the Mexican President and his fellow prisoners was due largely to the excess of zeal of those who had not fought. Lamar, the newcomer, less than a month in the country and participant in a single battle (in which, however, he acquitted himself with glory), and T. J. Green, who never saw Texas until after San Jacinto had been fought and won, were the leaders of the faction that demanded the death of Santa Anna, and their followers were for the most part the adventurers who always follow and reap the rewards properly due the fighters. Santa Anna alive was a powerful hostage, declared Houston; but Santa Anna dead would be just another Mexican. The Provisional President and his Cabinet were weak, vacillating and helpless. It required the strong, ruthless hand of Houston, who was elected first President of the Republic of Texas in September, 1836, to bring order out of confusion and see that the agreement to release Santa Anna was complied with.



• The most glorious and decisive event in the entire struggle for Texas independence is the battle of San Jacinto . . . one of the shortest and most important fights in the world's warfare . . . yet it marked the culmination of a long period of suffering . . . a final, enlightening day that brought succor after months of darkness and hardship . . . Not the least to suffer was Sam Houston . . . for his was the job to restrain the eager Texans in the face of bitter opposition and ridicule . . . until that advantageous moment presented itself when Texas should have its chance . . . Sam Houston decided that chance had come as he surveyed the quiet camp of the over-confident Mexicans strategically located on the bank of Buffalo Bayou . . . and in a few minutes' time . . . that afternoon of April 21, 1836 . . . the Texans made good the opportunity and left no doubt as to the future security of the Lone Star Republic.



# SAN JACINTO

## The Sixteenth Decisive Battle

By CLARENCE R. WHARTON

WHEN April days come again and Texas is splendid in the bud and bloom of spring, we should recall that it was on an April day now one hundred and eleven years ago that we won our independence at San Jacinto (April 21, 1836). Texas had declared its independence on March 2. The Alamo had fallen on March 6. Fannin's men had been captured and were massacred at Goliad on March 27. There was only one force left in Texas to resist the onward sweep of a victorious invading army, led by the dashing, impetuous despot Santa Anna, who marched out of Bexar with banners flying to complete the conquest which he had so well begun.

When he reached the Guadalupe he found the ashes of Gonzales and the footprints of Houston's fast retreating army. When he reached the Colorado on Easter Sunday, he found the deserted campfires of the Patriot Army, which had hurried away when the news of Fannin's fall had put new terror in its ranks. When he got to the Brazos, San Felipe was in ashes and Mosely Baker's small company on the east bank silently watched while the swollen river rolled between. Where were Houston and the Patriot Army? The conqueror heard that they had fled up the river into the deep woods. He so despised this ragged remnant of "filibusterers," as he called them, that he did not try to follow them. He turned down the Brazos to find a suitable crossing and took a few hundred of his men over at Fort Bend. Just here he heard that Burnet and the members of the Provisional Government were at Harrisburg, thirty miles away. He decided to ride hard and capture the fugitive government, for this, he said, would "disconcert the rebellion."

So on the balmy afternoon of April 14 his Excellency, with fifty horsemen and five hundred foot soldiers, was off to Harrisburg, riding hard through the plantations. After



sundown on the 15th he was in Harrisburg, but the "Government" was gone.

Where was Houston now? Santa Anna did not know nor care. Perhaps his army had disbanded, or perhaps fled on east across the Trinity. He sent his faithful Almonte, gallant son of Morelas, on down to the bay twenty miles away and followed the next morning. They passed Lynchburg Ferry and camped at Morgan's Point on the evening of the 19th. He was now at one of the boundaries of his vast empire, which reached from Yucatán to the Pacific, and up to Oregon. The Patriot Army had crossed the Brazos at Groce's Ferry above San Felipe the same day he had forded the river at Fort Bend and come down across the muddy prairie. When they reached the forks of the road where one way led to Robbins' Ferry on the Trinity and the other to Harrisburg, a Negro boy came riding from the south with the news that Santa Anna was below Harrisburg.

With a shout the Texans took the right hand road and were off after him. That night they camped in the pine woods near the modern suburb of Houston Heights, and the next afternoon crossed Buffalo Bayou at the site where the great wharves of Clinton now span a mile of Bayou front. On through the night they moved silently down the road over which Santa Anna and Almonte had so recently gone. They moved among the trees hung with Spanish moss, while the pale, pale moon filled the woodland with a weird light. Sunrise found them on a wooded hill just above the Lynchburg Ferry. They knew the Mexicans were near but had not yet sighted them. Just now a Negro boy named Turner, who was one of James Morgan's slaves, came riding from the south with the news that the Mexican Army was coming up from Morgan's Point. Then the Texans heard the martial strains of a Mexican military band borne on the spring breeze which then and to this day blows from Galveston Bay.

The hour had come. Destiny was moving these small armies of alien races who were fighting for the mastery of a vast and beautiful land. On a wooded hillcrest one mile from the Texas camp the enemy halted and planted their one cannon, which they had pulled all the way from Fort Bend. It boomed away at the Patriot camp and in reply now and then rounds were fired from the two little six-pounders of the artillery of the Army of the Republic. There

were about eight hundred men in Houston's army, most of whom were boys who had never seen a battle.

April the 21st dawned a cloudless day, and as the hours went by, the stillness was broken by the fire of the artillery, which boomed now and then in sullen defiance. At ten o'clock Martin Perfecto Cos joined Santa Anna with five hundred men. The Dictator was waiting for something and did not begin an attack. At 4 p. m. he lay down in the shade of a grove of mighty oaks, which yet, after one hundred years, marks the site of his camp, and was asleep. He felt as secure as if in his palace in Mexico. He knew the "filibusterers" would not dare attack him.

The Texas Army formed a battle line, a single line of eight hundred men a thousand yards long, and moved out across the open space, but there were no sentinels posted to protect the Mexican camp. Across the mile the young Texans trotted down the slope and up to the wooded hill, dragging their two little cannon. They were on the very hill-crest before their approach was discovered. Think of it! An army formed in battle array and marched upon an invading enemy across an open space of a mile, in the broad sunlight of an April day, without being seen. The surprise was as complete as if it had been executed on a moonless midnight.

The battle lasted fifteen minutes. Castrillon, who had led the assault at the Alamo, was slain. Almonte and five hundred were captured, hundreds were slain and when the sun went down, Texas was free. On a fast horse, Santa Anna led his fifty mounted men in a wild flight but was so pressed that he left his horse and took refuge in the deep woods. The next day he was a prisoner and was writing a dispatch to Filisola, his second in command, telling him to take the army, which was then camped on the Brazos, back to Bexar. When he had finished writing and was about to affix the date and name of the place from which it was being sent, which would precede his official signature, he turned to Sam Houston, who was lying wounded near by and asked, "What place is this?"

General Houston answered, "Lynchburg."

Colonel John A. Wharton, who was standing by, said, "No, San Jacinto."

And the Mexican President wrote "San Jacinto, April 22,

1836," and signed his name. The battle was named and will bear this revered name to the end of time.

The Battle of Waterloo is called the 15th decisive battle in the history of the world, and San Jacinto, fought twenty-one years later, is the 16th. It decided the fate of a million square miles of terrain.

And so, with the passing of the years and the centuries, we shall recall during each April, resplendent with its bud and bloom, the heroic story of this eventful day.



## The Texan: a Solid American

Preservation of things American in the Union of our fathers is today's challenge to Texas, above all other states of the American galaxy. Because, in our opinion, the Lone Star State possesses more of those things which have made America great, more of imagination, more of virility, more of native American genius than perhaps any other section of the country. Small wonder that the King of the English remarked in wonderment to an American soldier: "Are all you soldiers Texans?"

With its population recruited largely from those sections of America most resistant to foreign infiltration, Texas has stood resolutely against the various isms that find strength in the Eastern Seaboard areas, and has resisted the too-rapid acceptance of foreign philosophies that are more current in other sections of the country. In short, Texas is the embodiment of the American spirit of today.

The individual Texan of today is as solid an American as one can find. He believes in the things of the past, because they combined to make him what he is. Confident of the future, because he knows what he wants it to be, he believes in it passionately.

— *The Pathfinder* (1945)

# EIGHTEEN MINUTES

By LONA SHAWVER

**T**HERE are many reasons why the Battle of San Jacinto, fought April 21, 1836, is classed as one of the decisive battles of the world. It forever settled issues touching more than the nation involved. Some of these issues were not determined in physical action on the battlefield.

The Texans not only were victors in the battle but they also settled the question of separation from Mexico and their ability to maintain independence.

The Battle of San Jacinto lasted only eighteen minutes.

That eighteen minutes changed the map of the United States.

That eighteen minutes prevented a Mexican dictator from organizing an absolute monarchical form of government adjacent to the United States of America.

That eighteen minutes furnished the means of awakening Santa Anna to the fact that he was not a "second Napoleon of the West."

That eighteen minutes prevented a Latin people from governing an Anglo-American group on the American Continent.

That eighteen minutes brought to an end Spanish and Mexican influence in politics and economics in the life of Texas.

That eighteen minutes prevented a foreign nation from buying Texas from Mexico.

That eighteen minutes eventually furnished the issue that brought crushing defeat to the Whig political party in the United States.

That eighteen minutes freed Texas and later furnished the campaign issue in electing a president of the United States.

The immediate effect on Texas and Mexico and the far reaching results of the Battle of San Jacinto give it a unique position in the list of the decisive battles of the world.

Students of Texas history, viewing the heroic action of that small army of Texans, should feel a patriotic thrill comparable to the one Sam Houston must have felt when he wrote:

"It will be honor enough to say I was a soldier at San Jacinto."



## First Methodist Church

In 1835, the First Methodist Church was organized in Bastrop, Texas. Because the by-laws of said church required ten members, and there were only nine white people of this faith, they allowed a slave, one Celia Kraft, to come into the church, to make up the required quota. She was a consistent member of the organization until her death.



## Saw Mill in 1830

Despite the wild and uncivilized aspect of the Texas frontier during the days of the colonies and the Republic, occasional touches of a more pretentious life are evidenced in early reports. A saw mill was in operation in Texas as early as 1830, and substantial homes, patterned after the better types of structures in the United States, soon appeared in the large towns.



## Cheap Land

During the early days of the Republic of Texas land was unbelievably cheap. A good horse would buy five hundred acres of good farm land, and a few hundred dollars' cash would buy a completely stocked farm and farmhouse. Often, large landowners, desiring the company and mutual protection of close neighbors, would give large tracts of land to people who would settle in the vicinity.

# THE TEXAS NAVY

By JAMES T. DE SHIELDS

WHILE the glamor of romance encircles the deeds of the soldiers who fought the battles of Texas and hurled back the invading army of Santa Anna in defeat at San Jacinto, but little credit has been given the sturdy man-of-war's men who manned the navies of the Republic of Texas during her struggle for independence, keeping the long line of coast from the Sabine to the Rio Grande free from the enemy, and furnishing the Texans with munitions and supplies during the war.

It will doubtless surprise most people of today to learn that Texas once had a real navy; and it will be interesting to recall some of the exciting scenes enacted by the small but well-equipped craft which operated in the Gulf waters and kept a vigilant watch along the exposed Texas coastline. It is of further interest to note that after the close of actual hostilities, the navy was increased and was an important factor in some of the stirring events under the Republic. It did, besides, much valued service for Yucatán in her struggle for freedom from Mexico — a course, however, that called forth the wrath of President Sam Houston, and ultimately sealed the fate of the fighting little Texas fleet.

The first naval force of the Republic of Texas was secured by the Provisional Government early in 1836, and consisted of the armed schooner *Invincible*, eight guns; the *Independence*, eight guns; the *Brutus*, eight guns; the *Liberty*, four guns; and the *Flash*, four guns. There were also two privateers in service for a short period: the schooner *Tom Toby*, two guns; and the *Terrible*, two guns.

Prior to the Battle of San Jacinto the schooner *Independence*, Captain Hawkins, sailed from New Orleans and cruised along the Texas coast as far as the mouth of the Rio Grande, with a crew of only fifteen to man the guns and handle the vessel. Among the crew was Charles De Morse, afterwards for many years the editor of the *Clarksville Standard*, and he stated that when the vessel first sailed into the harbor of Galveston on March 21, 1836, the men found an

uninhabited island, and, riding at anchor a little distance from shore, the schooner *Dart*, with a cargo of young Africans owned by Monroe Edwards.

Early in April, 1836, the schooner *Flash*, commanded by Captain Luke A. Falree, was ordered to proceed from Galveston to the mouth of the Brazos, and to embark all of the women and children who were fleeing before the Mexican advance, proceeding thence to Morgan's Point at the head of Galveston Bay. At this time the *Flash* had on board the two small cannon which afterwards became famous as "The Twin Sisters," and which constituted the only artillery in the hands of the Texans at the Battle of San Jacinto. Upon the arrival of the *Flash* at "Clopper's Bar," near Morgan's Point, the two cannon were loaded on the sloop *Ohio*, commanded by Lieutenant Aaron Burns, who delivered them to the proper officer a few days before the battle.

Shortly after the arrival of the *Flash* at Morgan's Point, Captain Falree was directed to embark all the members of the Texan Cabinet, their wives and children, and proceed to Galveston Island to defend that point. Among the passengers thus embarked were Baillie Hardeman, Secretary of State, wife and two sons; Colonel Robert Porter, Secretary of the Navy; Mrs. Burnet, wife of the President, and her son William (afterwards killed during the Civil War as a colonel in the Confederate service, in the defense of Mobile); and Don Lorenzo de Zavala, Vice President, wife and three children. When the vessel had proceeded some miles down the bay, President Burnet came on board from a small boat. The vessel then proceeded to Galveston, landed its passengers, and it was there that the first news of the victory at San Jacinto was received by the President and his Cabinet.

During its brief existence this little navy captured a number of prizes on the Mexican coast, which were brought into Galveston and condemned by the admiralty court.

On April 17, 1837, the schooner *Independence*, then commanded by Captain Wheelwright, and with a crew of thirty-two, while returning to Texas from New Orleans, was overhauled in the Gulf, some eighteen miles from the mouth of the Brazos by the Mexican armed brigs, *Vencedor del Alamo* and *Libertador*, both greatly superior, not only in respect to armament but also in the number of men. After a

gallant fight in which her commander was severely wounded, the *Independence* was compelled to strike her colors, and was taken into Brazos Santiago as a prize. (One of the flags captured upon this occasion is still preserved as a trophy in the military museum in the City of Mexico.) Among the passengers captured on the *Independence* was William H. Wharton, who was on his return from the United States, whither he had been dispatched on an important mission for the Government.

On the 25th of August, 1837, the armed schooners *Brutus* and *Invincible*, while returning from a cruise off the Campeche banks, where they had captured a schooner which they were bringing into port, arrived off the Galveston bar, and during the afternoon the *Brutus* and its prize crossed the bar and entered the harbor. The *Invincible*, in consequence of her deep draft, was unable to cross, and remained outside. The following day she was attacked by two Mexican war brigs and, the *Brutus* not being able to reach her, had to contend with a superior force during the day. Late in the afternoon the *Invincible* endeavored to retreat into the harbor, but grounded on the "South breaker" shoal. The crew took to the small boats and succeeded in escaping, but the vessel "bilged" and became a total loss.

The career of the first Texan navy can be said to have closed with this engagement, for after the capture of the *Independence* and the wreck of the *Invincible*, there were but three vessels left — the *Brutus*, the *Flash* and the *Liberty* — and their fate is soon told. The *Brutus* was so badly damaged by a hurricane which swept over Galveston early in October, 1837, that she was no longer fit for service; the privateer, *Tom Toby*, was driven ashore at Virginia Point during the same gale, and became a total loss, and her two brass, or copper, guns were recovered from the bottom of the bay thirty-five years afterward. The schooner *Flash*, then commanded by Captain Marstella, was wrecked at the west end of Galveston Island in 1837, her commander having mistaken San Luis Pass for the entrance to Galveston Harbor; and the *Liberty* afterwards passed out of existence.

On the 18th of November, 1836, the Congress of the Republic passed an act providing for the increase of the navy, and from this date the history of what was the second



navy of the Republic begins. The act provided for the securing of one sloop-of-war, mounting twenty-four guns, "of such a draft as would enable it to enter the harbor of Galveston; also two armed steam vessels drawing, when loaded, not above six feet of water, built upon the most approved plan, and capable of transporting seven hundred and fifty men, and provisions, each; and two schooners mounting eleven guns each, carrying two topsails, and not to draw over eight and a half feet of water."

On the 15th of December, 1836, a lengthy act prescribing rules and regulations for the navy was passed, and approved by President Houston. Article 27 expressly stipulated that:

"No captain shall carry any woman to sea without an order from the Secretary of the Navy, or from the Commander-in-chief of the squadron to which he belongs."

Other legislation concerning the navy resulted in the securing in 1837-1839 of the following vessels: sloop-of-war *Austin*, twenty guns, flagship of the squadron; brig *Wharton*, eighteen guns; steamer *Zavala*, formerly the *Pulaski*, eight guns; schooner *San Jacinto*, five guns; schooner *San Bernard*, five guns; schooner *San Antonio*, five guns; and the receiving brig, *Potomac*. A navy yard had been established at Galveston, and that place, the only available one on the coast, was made the naval station.

Edwin Ward Moore was a native of Virginia, having been born at Alexandria in 1810. He resigned his rank as lieutenant in the United States Navy to link his fortunes with Texas and entered the new service as a lieutenant, but in 1839 was promoted to post captain with command of the entire naval forces. He was generally styled "Commodore" but did not hold that rank.

A pen picture of Commodore Moore is given by the versatile Mrs. Eliza Ripley in her *Social Life in Old New Orleans*, upon the occasion of a reception tendered that dignitary at New Orleans in 1840:

With his imposing uniform and a huge gilt star on his breast, a sword at his side, and a rather fierce mustache (mustaches were little worn then), he looked as if he were capable of doing mighty deeds of daring for the enterprising new republic on our border.

Early in 1840, General Mirabeau B. Lamar, then President, made an agreement with Yucatán, at that time in revolt against Mexico, for the use by that state of the entire naval force of Texas, upon payment of all expenses connected with its operation. On the 24th of June, 1840, the fleet sailed from Galveston, and remained in the service of Yucatán for nearly two years, if not longer, making the Mississippi River the base of operations, and fitting out the vessels at New Orleans.

In February, 1842, while the schooner *San Antonio* was at anchor in the Mississippi opposite New Orleans, several members of the crew, who had secured liquor, mutinied, killed Lieutenant Fuller, wounded Midshipmen Allen and Odell, and taking one of the small boats, escaped ashore. They were arrested by the New Orleans police and returned to the vessel. They were kept in confinement until 1843, when at a court martial held on the sloop-of-war *Austin*, they were tried and four of the number sentenced to death. These men were afterwards executed by being hanged to the yardarm of the sloop-of-war *Austin* at "English Turns," on the Mississippi, a short distance below New Orleans.

During the operations of the Texas fleet on the coast of Yucatán, a Mexican schooner was captured, the value of the prize being seven thousand dollars. Commodore Moore also landed a force, occupied the Mexican town of Tabasco, and levied a contribution of twenty-five thousand dollars on the inhabitants, which was used in securing supplies, principally at New Orleans.

In 1842 Commodore Moore was dispatched to New Orleans and Mobile for the purpose of putting a portion of the navy in condition to enforce President Houston's blockade proclamation against Mexico. While he was thus engaged, the Mexican Government, which had succeeded in securing two armed steamers at New York, took possession of the coast of Yucatán.

In the interim the Government of Texas issued orders, upon different occasions, directing Commodore Moore to bring his vessels to Galveston, and to report in person to the President (General Houston). To these orders Commodore Moore paid not the slightest attention, and the vessels remained in the Mississippi River. The President then directed him to surrender his command and his ships to three naval commissioners who had been appointed.

The last order was given in pursuance of what was known as the "Secret Act," passed by the Congress of Texas January 16, 1843, directing all of the naval vessels to be sold. In violation of these orders, but with the consent of the commissioners to whom he surrendered his authority, Commodore Moore immediately sailed for the relief of Yucatán with all his available force, which consisted of the sloop-of-war *Austin* and the brig *Wharton*.

Upon arriving on the coast of Yucatán, he found the Mexican blockading force to consist of the steamers *Montezuma* and *Guadalupe*, which had been received in the United States. On the 3rd of April, 1843, as shown by Commodore Moore's report, printed in the *Civilian* and *Galveston City Gazette* of June 16, these two steamers were engaged off the town of Campeche. The action, while sharp, was indecisive, and the Mexican vessels, although badly damaged, succeeded in evading capture. The Texans lost Frederick Shepherd, George Baylor and William West, killed, and twenty-one wounded, all on the *Austin*. Among the latter was Midshipman A. J. Bryant, afterwards lost at sea on a voyage from Galveston to New York. This was the last naval engagement recorded in the annals of the Texas Navy.

Previously (late in 1842), the schooner *San Antonio* had sailed from the mouth of the Mississippi, under command of Captain Brannan, for Yucatán, under secret orders from Commodore Moore, presumably to collect a portion of the monies due for naval aid. The vessel was never seen or heard of after passing out of the Mississippi into the Gulf of Mexico, and her fate is still one of the many unsolved mysteries of the sea.

During Commodore Moore's last expedition to Yucatán, as noted above, President Houston issued a proclamation dated March 23, 1843, suspending him from all command in the Texas Navy, denouncing him as an "outlaw and a pirate," and requesting all friendly governments to seize him wherever found on the high seas and deliver him at the port of Galveston, in order that he might be "arraigned and punished by the sentence of a legal tribunal."

After his naval battle off Campeche, Commodore Moore shaped the course of his ships for Galveston, where he was

heartily welcomed by the population. He then, for the first time, heard of the President's proclamation asking for his arrest, and reported himself to the sheriff. That officer declined to take him into custody, and the naval officer was the lion of the hour. A mass meeting was held at Shaw's Hotel in Galveston, at which congratulatory resolutions were adopted and the action of the President in calling for Moore's arrest was denounced.

On the 19th of June, 1843, President Houston issued an order through the War and Marine Department "dishonorably discharging" the Commodore from the service of the Republic. The Yucatán Expedition having frustrated the purpose of the Secret Act, the act was repealed on the 5th of February following its enactment, and the naval vessels were laid up in ordinary at Galveston. There they were kept until the annexation of Texas to the United States in 1845, when such of them as were still in existence were turned over to the United States. The steamer *Zavala* was permitted to go to decay, and was sunk on the edge of the channel in Galveston Harbor, where, until a comparatively recent period, the remains of her boilers were visible.

The controversy between President Houston and Commodore Moore proceeded with much acrimony on both sides. It culminated in the latter's submitting his grievances to Congress and asking for a special court martial to investigate the conduct of the President and to inquire into his "unlawful and arbitrary assumption of executive power," and also to inquire into the charges preferred by the President in his order of suspension and discharge. The Congress, by a joint resolution, declared adversely to the authority exercised by the President, and against sustaining the charges alleged by him for the removal of Moore. It also directed the Secretary of the War and Marine Department to organize the court martial asked for and to furnish the complainant with a copy of the charges and specifications.

The court martial convened the following May, and proceeded to trial upon the six charges: "Willful neglect of duty; embezzlement of public monies; disobedience of orders; defiance of the law and authority of the country; treason and murder." The specifications of the first four charges consisted of offenses of both omission and commission while

under orders at New Orleans; the charge of treason was based upon alleged negotiations with Yucatán without the sanction or approval of his Government; and the charge of murder, upon his participation, while suspended from his functions, in the execution of the mutineers of the schooner of war *San Antonio*, noted above, who had been convicted and sentenced by a court martial order by the Government.

These several counts were all formally dismissed, except that of disobedience to orders, four specifications of which were sustained. The decree of the court, although an acquittal on the more serious charges, nevertheless operated as a removal from office in consequence of the "disobedience" part of the verdict. The findings of the court were disapproved by President Houston with the brief but emphatic objection that he knew the defendant was guilty.

This objection relegated the matter to its original state and gave rise to further contentions, the President holding that the result of the first trial was such as to seem as if no hearing had been had, and restored to his first orders their original force and effect. Commodore Moore contended that, as the court had found him guilty of disobedience of orders and the President had annulled the findings, it was a virtual reversal and relieved him from further consequences.

This was the attitude of the parties when Congress, by a joint resolution, absolved Commodore Moore from all the disabilities he might have incurred and reinstated him in his command. Anson Jones, the last president of Texas, was now in office, and he vetoed the resolution.

In regard to the charge of embezzlement, an investigation by a committee in a later Congress resulted not only in the exoneration of Commodore Moore, but also in reporting a credit of \$11,398.36 in his favor, and recommending its payment. No action was taken, and the debt (if such it was) has never been paid.

At the conclusion of these investigations, Texas became a state in the Federal Union, and the few remaining war vessels became the property of the United States and were removed from Galveston and dismantled. None of the officers was permitted to accompany his vessel into the new service. This refusal to incorporate into the United States Navy the active corps of the Texas establishment was resented as

an infraction of the terms of the Act of Annexation, and the sufferers sought relief.

An effort was made to procure the passage by the United States Congress of a bill securing the admission into the Naval service of the late Texas officers. The bill failed, although General Sam Houston, then a Senator from the new state of Texas, made a strong speech in its behalf. Later in the debate, and in reply to some strictures made by Houston in regard to Commodore Moore, Senator Jones of Tennessee replied in a brilliant speech, in which he reviewed the life and services of Commodore Moore, and quoted from *Service Afloat*, by Lieutenant (afterwards Admiral) Semmes, the remark that, "next to General Houston, the hero of San Jacinto, Texas owes more to Commodore Moore than any other man who figured in the drama of her revolution."

During the agitation of this question, William C. Bra-shear, who had been a lieutenant commander in the Texas Navy, applied to the United States Circuit Court for a mandamus requiring the Secretary of the United States Navy to admit him to the service with the privileges of his late rank. The writ was denied, and upon appeal, the Supreme Court held that the Act of Annexation of itself did not, without further legislation, bring in the officers of the Texas Navy. Finally, in 1855, a compromise act was passed by Congress, by which the United States paid the late members of the Texas service the pay of United States Naval officers on leave, pay to run from the period of annexation to the date the compromise act was approved. Under this act, Commodore Moore received seventeen thousand dollars.

After his retirement from the Texas Navy and the creation of the new state, Commodore Moore removed elsewhere and spent the later years of his life in Washington City and New York. He married, after removing from Texas, the widow of Lieutenant John Wentworth Cox of the United States Navy. In 1857-1858, when the construction of the first Government building in Texas (the old postoffice and customhouse) was begun in Galveston, Commodore Moore was appointed to represent the United States in the erection of the building. The structure was completed early in 1861, and this was the last time Commodore Moore was in Texas. He took no part in the Civil War, and died in New York City October 5, 1865, aged fifty-five years. He had no children,

and his wife, who survived him, was a resident of Charlottesville, Virginia, as late as 1889.

Edwin Ward Moore came of an old and distinguished Virginia family. His grandfather, Cleon Moore, was an officer during the Revolutionary War. Two of his brothers were early settlers of Texas: Judge James W. Moore, long deceased, who resided at Galveston, and who was the Commodore's naval secretary, and Judge Albert Moore of Seguin, also deceased.

In this connection it may be stated that upon the occasion of the first and only visit to the coast of Texas by a fleet of foreign men-of-war, it was welcomed by the Texas Navy, and the incident may not be without historical interest.

In 1838 Admiral Charles Baudin des Audennes commanded the French fleet dispatched to operate against Mexico, a fleet of twenty-three ships. On the 27th of November of that year he bombarded the Castle of San Juan de Ulloa, which he captured. On December 5 he attacked Vera Cruz and was repulsed, but during the engagement Santa Anna had one of his legs shot off. The French were compelled to retire from Mexico, and on the homeward voyage touched at Galveston, anchoring in the outer roadstead early in 1839. The Admiral, with his staff, came ashore, was feted at the Tremont House, and returned to his flagship on the Texan war steamer *Zavala*, accompanied by a number of prominent citizens. The visitors were treated with great cordiality. After taking in water and fresh provisions, the fleet proceeded. The commander of the steamer *Zavala* at the time was Captain Hinton, who had resigned from the United States service to aid the struggling Texans.

Early in April, 1836, the schooner *Invincible*, while on a cruise down the coast, fell in with the Mexican armed brig *Montezuma*, Captain Thompson, near Brazos Santiago, and after an action which continued two hours, forced the Mexican captain to run his vessel ashore, where she was left in a disabled condition. The *Invincible* sustained a slight damage to her rigging and after this had been repaired, stood out to sea and captured the brig *Pocket*, bound from New Orleans to Matamoros. From letters found on board, it was learned that Santa Anna desired to capture the Texas sea-ports, and intended, if successful in his land campaign, to

garrison Galveston Island with a thousand men. His disastrous defeat at San Jacinto shortly afterward prevented the carrying out of the plan.

The different heads of the Texas Navy Department during its brief existence were: Robert M. Potter of North Carolina, who first issued the officers their commissions March 2, 1836, the date on which the independence of Texas was declared; S. Rhoads Fisher and William M. Shepherd, who served during President Houston's first term; Memucan Hunt and Louis P. Cooke, during the administration of President Lamar (1838-1841); Geo. W. Hockley and Geo. W. Hill, during Houston's second administration (1841-1843), when the office was consolidated with the War Department; and Geo. W. Hill and William G. Cooke, during the administration of Anson Jones, the last President of the Republic.

The private schooner *Tom Toby* (previously the Baltimore clipper *Swift*) was purchased by H. G. Heartt, then a member of the New Orleans firm of James Reed & Company, and was pierced for guns and otherwise fitted out at Algiers, in 1836. Her armament consisted of two brass or copper cannon, which had been brought to New Orleans long before, and which were received from James W. Breedlove, collector of that port. The guns were made in Santa Fé de Bogotá in 1789, bore the monogram Carlos III, and were named respectively *El Fuerte* and *El Cruel*. The vessel sailed from New Orleans under the command of Captain Nathaniel Hurt, who had been first lieutenant on the Texan war schooner *Brutus*. Her first cruise was made along the coasts of Yucatán and Mexico, where she captured several prizes. She then returned to the Texas coast, was sold to Shreeve & Grayson, and was wrecked at Virginia Point, on Galveston Bay, in a hurricane early in October, 1837. In 1873 these historic guns were recovered from the mud where they had lain for nearly forty years, and were purchased by the Galveston Artillery Company. In 1898 that organization disposed of them to a junk dealer who, in turn, shipped them north, where they were melted down and thus disappeared forever.

The schooner *Independence* of the first Texas navy was armed and fitted out at New Orleans by J. W. Zacharie, and was afterwards purchased by the Republic.

After the hurricane of October, 1837, the dismantled hull



of the schooner *Brutus* was left to rot in Galveston Bay, opposite the old Navy Yard at the foot of 27th Street in the city of Galveston. In 1880, while excavating there for wharf improvements, a dredge boat unearthed a portion of the vessel's hull, and brought one of the guns (an iron eighteen-pounder) out of the bay. The cannon was secured by Mr. John S. Brown and planted in the yard of his Broadway residence as a relic of the Republic and the navy.

A partial list of the officers of the two navies of Texas is here given. There were many changes by resignation or suspension, and in the absence of full official records the compilation is necessarily incomplete. The officers of the first naval force, who were commissioned March 2, 1836, and immediately thereafter, were:

*Captains:* Charles E. Hawkins, Luke A. Falrel, Jeremiah Brown, William Hurd, William Brown, Thomas F. McKinney, and—Marstella.

*Commanders:* George W. Wheelwright, Henry L. Thompson, and J. D. Boylan.

*Lieutenants:* James G. Hurd, —Cassin, G. W. Estes, —Dearing, —Gallagher, Lent M. Hitchcock, Aaron Burns, Nathaniel Hoyt, —Mellins, Parry W. Humphries, —Johnson, —Lee, Joseph L. Seavey, —Newcomb, James Perry, —Randolph, J. R. P. Lothrop, Joseph W. Taylor, T. M. Taylor, Alexander Thompson, T. M. Thompson, and F. B. Wright.

*Surgeons:* Oliver P. Kelton, John B. Gardiner, —Chrisman, —Dunn, —Anderson, A. M. Knight, A. M. Levy, —Leech, and J. M. Woodruff.

*Pursers:* Norman Hurd, T. T. Wells, Henry Fisher, and —Learing.

*Sailing Master:* Daniel Lloyd.

*Midshipmen:* W. Tennison, I. Pollock, D. H. Crisp, —Crosby, —Harrison, A. A. Wait, and —Cummings.

*Navy Agent:* John G. Tod.

*Marine Corps:* Fenton M. Gibson and Arthur Ward, Captains; F. Ward, First Lieutenant; —Brooks and William Francis, Second Lieutenants.

A partial list of the officers of the second Texas navy is as below:

Edwin Ward Moore, Post Captain, generally styled

Commodore. The sloop-of-war *Austin* was the flagship, and Moore's brother, James W. Moore, was his secretary. Captain Hinton was the first commander of the steamer *Zavala*, but retired during the administration of President Lamar.

On the 24th of June, 1840, the Texas Navy sailed from Galveston under sealed orders. At that time the *Civilian and Galveston Gazette* printed a list of the officers of the fleet, which is still in the writer's possession. It is as follows:

Sloop-of-war *Austin*, twenty guns, Commodore Edwin Ward Moore commanding.

E. H. Kennedy, First Lieutenant; D. H. Crisp, Second Lieutenant; J. H. Baker, Third Lieutenant; Wm. Seeger, Fourth Lieutenant; C. Cummings, Acting Master; J. B. Gardiner, Surgeon; Norman Hurd, Purser; T. U. Sweet, Lieutenant of Marines.

Steamship *Zavala*, eight guns, J. K. P. Lothrop, Commander.

G. Henderson, First Lieutenant; W. C. Brashear, Second Lieutenant; Daniel Lloyd, Master; T. P. Anderson, Surgeon; W. T. Maury, Purser; J. W. C. Parker, Captain of Marines; G. Beatty, Chief Engineer; Richard Bache, Captain's Clerk.

Schooner *San Jacinto*, five guns, Lieutenant W. R. Postell, Commander.

J. O. Shaughnessey, First Lieutenant; A. J. Gray, Second Lieutenant; Wm. Oliver, Acting Master; Fletcher Dorey, Surgeon; Robert Oliver, Purser; J. J. Tucker, Captain's Clerk.

Schooner *San Bernard*, five guns, W. S. Williamson, Lieutenant, Commanding.

Geo. W. Estes, First Lieutenant; G. C. Brunner, Second Lieutenant; W. A. Tennison, Acting Master; R. M. Clarke, Surgeon; A. F. Stephens, Purser; W. H. Brewster, Captain's Clerk.

Schooner *San Antonio*, five guns, Alex Moore, Lieutenant, Commanding.

Thomas Wood, First Lieutenant; A. J. Lewis, Lieutenant; Jas. W. Moore, Purser; W. A. Goldsborough, Captain's Clerk.

In July, 1840, quite a sensation was created in naval circles by the republication in the Galveston papers of a letter written by an ex-lieutenant in the New York *Commercial Advertiser*, in which he charged a number of officers with having attempted to run off the sloop-of-war *Austin* from the harbor of Galveston on a night in the latter part of March of that year. The accused officers printed long and emphatic denials and alleged that the writer had been dismissed from the service for declining to vindicate himself from charges preferred against him. These publications were extensively circulated and at the time created elsewhere a highly unfavorable opinion of the condition of naval affairs in Texas.



## Famous Texas Utterances

"Be sure you're right; then go ahead!"

— David Crockett

-----  
"Don't surrender, boys!"

—Wm. B. Travis

-----  
"Boys, I am not able to cross the line, but I wish some of you would be so kind as to remove my cot over there."

—James Bowie

-----  
"Who will go with old Ben Milam into San Antonio?"

—Benjamin R. Milam

-----  
"Remember the Alamo! Remember Goliad!"

— Texan battle cry at San Jacinto

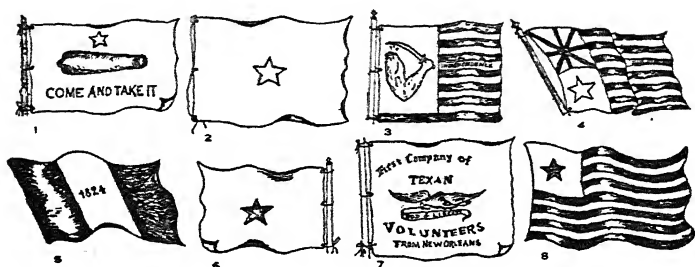
-----  
"Their fate shall be my fate, their fortune my fortune, their destiny my destiny. As of old, I am with my country."

—Sam Houston

-----  
"Thermopylae had her Messenger of Defeat, but the Alamo had none!"

— Credited to General Burleson

# TEXAS BATTLE FLAGS



PERHAPS no more graphic picture of the events of the Texas Revolution is presented than that which is given by a description of the battle flags used in various fights during the struggle. Most of the flags have been lost, but accurate descriptions have been handed down by contemporaries which make it possible to reconstruct these noble banners.

The first flag was the one used at Gonzales in the first battle of the Revolution and later carried on the march to San Antonio. Illustrating the point of contention between the Mexicans and the colonists, the flag was a sheet of white cloth on which was painted a cannon, together with the words "Come and Take It."

The second flag of which we have record is the first banner to carry the Lone Star. It was made at Harrisburg in the latter part of 1835 and was presented to the company of Captain Andrew Robinson. A five-pointed white star was set in a field of red.

At the declaration of independence made by Ira Ingram and others at Goliad on December 20, 1835, an appropriate flag was raised that left no doubt as to the intention of its originators; a severed arm, bleeding profusely and holding a formidable sword, and the word "Independence," made a warning that Texas was to consider herself apart from Mexico.

Captain Mosely Baker, the Alabamian, had his own flag,

which he first unfurled in the early part of 1836. The upper left-hand corner was a field of blue crossed by red bars. A white star was set in a green field below, and to the right were thirteen alternating red and white stripes.

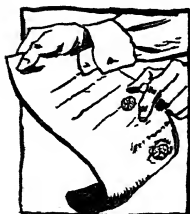
The defenders of the Alamo flew the Mexican flag, with the numerals 1824 (referring to the Constitution of that year, which had given the Texans their colonial rights) substituted for the Mexican Eagle.

The Georgia battalion, commanded by Colonel Ward at Goliad, carried a banner of white on which was placed an azure star. Another Goliad company, the New Orleans Grays, had its own flag, consisting of an eagle and the words "First Company of Texan Volunteers from New Orleans."

President Burnet adopted a naval flag in 1836, which has been described as follows: "Union blue, star central and thirteen stripes, alternate red and white." The first Congress adopted some modifications of this as a national flag, but, in 1839, the present Lone Star flag was officially adopted.



## A Cuff-Button Seal



A cuff button became a seal of state for Texas when for want of an official seal to affix to President Houston's first message to the Texas Congress, the resourceful Houston ripped his cuff link from his sleeve and made with it an imprint in hot wax on the bottom of the document.

He explained it as "Signed and affixed with my private seal, there being no great seal of office yet provided."

The occasion was the inauguration of Sam Houston as President of the Republic of Texas.

Just as he was preparing to sign his message, someone whispered to him that no arrangements had been made for an official seal.

A general has to think fast. There was no hesitation as he tore off his cuff link.

And a temporary seal of state was created.



# THE UNITED STATES RECOGNIZES THE INDEPENDENCE OF TEXAS

By JOSEPH WILLIAM SCHMITZ, S.M.

**T**HE TEXANS, who met in convention in March, 1836, and declared their independence from Mexico, remained in session for nearly three weeks, laboring to solve the many problems that faced them. Matters that were pressing had to be disposed of at once. Certainly nothing was more important than reorganizing the army. Santa Anna's march into the country had to be checked. By unanimous consent Sam Houston was made commander-in-chief, with authority over all the regular, volunteer, and militia troops in the field; enlistments were encouraged by offering generous shares of land to all who would join the armed forces. Other matters were disposed of and only then did the delegates turn their attention to organizing the government.

On March 16, 1836, a Constitution was adopted. It was modeled on that of the United States, and provided for a President, Vice President, Senate, House of Representatives, and a Supreme Court. This instrument was ratified on March 17, and, since it was obviously impossible to launch the new government by holding popular elections at such disturbed times, it was decided to establish a provisional government consisting of a President, a Vice President, and various assistants. It was further decided that when peace would be established elections should be held for the constitutional officers, and the Constitution itself was then to be submitted to the people. All this was to be under the direction of the provisional officers, who were duly instructed to that effect. With this understanding David G. Burnet became President and Lorenzo de Zavala Vice President *ad interim*. The delegates then adjourned.

The Convention had instructed the provisional officers to appoint a group of three to get in touch with the Texas representatives who were already in the United States. This committee was to inform the representatives that independence had been declared and to encourage them to use "their utmost exertions to bring about as soon as possible the recognition of the independence of Texas by the Congress . . . now in session."<sup>1</sup>

Consisting of Stephen F. Austin, Branch T. Archer, and William H. Wharton, and appointed by the Consultation on November 12, 1835, to secure financial help to carry on the war, this committee had had a troubled existence. Nevertheless, there was something to show for its labors of half a year. It had secured three loans which yielded the Government about \$75,000 and a few small donations; it had sent volunteers to Texas to give military assistance, and it had aroused an enthusiasm in the United States which manifested itself in various memorials and petitions to Congress for the recognition of Texas.

But President Burnet thought it advisable to send new commissioners directly to Washington, and acting on the authority given him "to appoint commissioners to any power," he designated George Childress and Robert Hamilton as agents to the United States, with instructions to work for the recognition of the independence of Texas and to carry on "such relations between the two Governments, as may comport with the mutual interest, the common origin, and kindred ties of their constituents."<sup>2</sup> Samuel Carson, Secretary of State, was instructed to join the commission later on.

The new commission found it impossible to accomplish much because its credentials were not judged to be in proper order by the Washington officials and because it lacked official information concerning the true state of affairs in Texas. Even for such important happenings as the capture of Santa Anna and the victory of San Jacinto it had to depend on the newspaper accounts that could be found anywhere in the United States at that time. Other than to say

---

<sup>1</sup> Gammel, *Laws of Texas*, I, p. 848.

<sup>2</sup> Garrison, *Diplomatic Correspondence of the Republic of Texas*, I, pp. 73-74.

that the officials in Texas did not understand the importance of sending these documents it is hard to explain their negligence. It was Austin's opinion that the time for recognition was ripe and that official communications from the Texas authorities would do much toward furthering the cause. But as the necessary documents were not sent, Childress and Hamilton, unwilling to let slip the opportune time to press recognition, finally, on June 10, asked the United States Secretary of State Forsyth to recognize Texas as a *de facto* government.<sup>3</sup> Forsyth, however, refused.

The commissions were suddenly revoked, and two other commissioners, Peter W. Grayson and James Collinsworth were appointed. In explaining this substitution President Burnet said that it was the opinion of the Cabinet that eyewitnesses of the recent important events, the victory of San Jacinto and the subsequent Treaty of Velasco, could understand the significance of these events more clearly and interpret them more keenly and effectively than could the previous commissioners, who had only a newspaper acquaintance with the battle and treaty.

In their instructions Collinsworth and Grayson were told to: first, solicit the friendly mediation of the United States to end the war between Texas and Mexico on honorable terms; second, get the United States to recognize the independence of Texas; third, to agitate the question of annexation to the United States. Should annexation come up for serious consideration, the delegates were to incorporate into the treaty the six specific points in the instructions given them. These points concerned such matters as the legal status of all acts of the preceding Texas governments, previous legislation on slavery, titles to public lands and the like. Evidently the Texans were not willing to surrender more than absolutely necessary.

As the new commissioners were delayed by foul weather, they did not arrive in Washington until the eighth of July. By that time Congress had adjourned and Jackson was preparing to go to the Hermitage; so it was thought advisable to call on the President at once for an informal interview. Jackson displayed an interest in all the civil and political affairs

---

<sup>3</sup> Childress and Hamilton to Burnet, June 10, 1836, *Tex. Dip. Cor.*, I, pp. 99-100.



of Texas. He could say nothing of recognition and annexation, however, until he got the report of a secret agent whom he had sent to investigate conditions.<sup>4</sup>

Collinsworth and Grayson also had two informal interviews with Forsyth, interviews which proved to be very unsatisfactory. Forsyth would not commit himself and gave no assurances. In a very businesslike way he said that all Texas information was being forwarded to Jackson. Also, in a very businesslike way he examined the credentials of the Texas agents and found out that they lacked the proper seals; nothing could be done, he informed them, until these were affixed. Blocked at every turn, the delegates were not discouraged but wrote to Burnet urging him to forward new credentials.<sup>5</sup>

For the next three months Collinsworth and Grayson waited for their new commissions, but none arrived. From what they learned in the course of these months, however, they were led to believe that Jackson personally was in favor of annexation and that it "would take place at the earliest moment that circumstances would at all justify it in the eyes of the world."<sup>6</sup> What Jackson awaited, it seemed, was a proof that Texas could maintain a civil government.

The labors of this commission were ended suddenly; on September 12, Burnet wrote to both Grayson and Collinsworth, giving an account of the recent elections for permanent officers of the Republic. Since the *ad interim* government would soon cease, he felt it unwise to carry on the negotiations for annexation and to issue new instructions; that would be the work of the new administration.

President Burnet had set the first Monday of September as the date for the election of permanent officers of the Republic and for the submission of the Constitution to the people. This had been in accordance with instructions given him by the Convention. Now, believing that the annexation question should also be submitted to the people, Burnet put

---

<sup>4</sup> Collinsworth and Grayson to Burnet, July 15, *Tex. Dip. Cor.*, I, pp. 110-111. See also, Carson to Burnet, July 3, p. 103.

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.* See also Collinsworth to the President of the Republic of Texas, Nov. 13, 1836, *Tex. Dip. Cor.*, I, pp. 125-126.

<sup>6</sup> Grayson to Burnet, Nov. 3, 1836, *Tex. Dip. Cor.*, I, p. 124; Collinsworth to President, Nov. 13, 1836, I, p. 126.

the matter before them at the regular election. The results on all three questions were decisive: Sam Houston was elected President; the constitution, as drawn up months previously, was adopted; and the sentiments of the people were overwhelmingly in favor of annexation.

Since the electorate had decided, Congress passed, without much trouble, a joint resolution to carry on negotiations for annexation to the United States. Houston, personally in favor of the step, signed it.

Whereas, the good people of Texas in accordance with a proclamation of his excellency David G. Burnet, president *ad-interim* of the republic, did, on the first Monday of September last past, at the election held for president, vice-president, senators and representatives of congress, vote to be annexed to the United States of America with an unanimity unparalleled in annals of the elective franchise only ninety-three of the whole population voting against it: Be it therefore *Resolved by the senate and house of representatives of the republic of Texas, in congress assembled*, That the president be, and he is hereby authorized and requested to dispatch forthwith to the government of the United States of America, a minister, vested with ample and plenary powers to enter into negotiations and treaties with the United States government for the recognition of the independence of Texas, and for an immediate annexation to the United States; a measure required by the almost unanimous voice of the People of Texas and fully concurred in by the present congress.<sup>7</sup>

Congress appointed William H. Wharton, who had served on the first commission, as Minister to the United States Government and gave him the "plenary powers" outlined in their joint resolution. To the new Secretary of State, Stephen F. Austin, also experienced as a commissioner to the United States, fell the task of drawing up the official instructions. In a long document he told Wharton in detail how to work for independence and annexation. In these official instructions, and in the exhaustive private instructions accompanying them, Austin demonstrated his thorough knowledge of the questions involved, telling Wharton exactly what to do and what not to do to accomplish his ends with the most

---

<sup>7</sup> Gammel, *Laws of Texas*, I, pp. 189-190.

finesse and dispatch. Having himself experienced the embarrassments resulting from faulty credentials, he was most careful that Wharton's were made out in proper form.

Wharton started at once for Washington, sending news back to Austin from the various cities in which he was delayed. There would be no dearth of correspondence this time. Even before he arrived at his destination, Fairfax Catlett was appointed to hurry to his assistance as *chargé d'affaires*, and in the case of the death or removal of Wharton, to act in his stead as commissioner. And on December 31, Memucan Hunt was appointed Minister Extraordinary of Texas to assist Wharton. Hunt carried with him credentials to act as Minister, but should the United States refuse to recognize him (this was possible, as Texas was not yet recognized as an independent nation), he was to produce his second set of credentials certifying his position as *agent*, and carry on the negotiations in that capacity. Hunt also brought with him documents creating Wharton *agent*, should it be necessary for him to act in that capacity.<sup>8</sup>

Upon his arrival in Washington December 19, 1836, Wharton at once interviewed Forsyth but learned only that Jackson was preparing a special message on the Texas situation to deliver to Congress in a few days.

Jackson delivered his message, the contents of which, writes Wharton, surprised everybody. The message was based largely on information that the secret agent, Morfit, had supplied. He advised delay in recognizing the independence of Texas, assigning as his reasons: first, doubt of the Texans' ability to maintain their independence, particularly in view of the threatened invasion of the Mexican General, Bravo; second, the imprudence of premature action which would give the impression that the United States favored Texas against Mexico; and third, the desire to avoid the suspicion of other nations.<sup>9</sup>

Having learned that Jackson would favor recognition if Congress would recommend it, Wharton bent his energies to have Congress consider the matter. He met the Committee

---

<sup>8</sup> Henderson to Hunt, Dec. 31, 1836, *Tex. Dip. Cor.*, I, p. 161. Henderson to Wharton, *Ibid.*

<sup>9</sup> Richardson, *Messages and Papers of the Presidents*, III, pp. 265-269. Morfit's report, on which this message is based, consists of ten letters written from August 13 to September 14, 1836.

on Foreign Relations, where he answered a "thousand interrogatories" to strengthen his claim for immediate recognition. In addition to this he wrote many essays, and a pamphlet, using the pen name "Jefferson," to counteract the influence of the abolitionists, who were now actively working against annexation.<sup>10</sup>

Being perplexed, the Committee on Foreign Affairs refused to report; on the face of it there was still some fear of a foreign invasion. But Wharton thought that the truth of the matter went deeper. He felt that the Van Buren faction in Congress was not only responsible for the delay, but was evidently also trying to push the entire matter off until the next Congress. He explained that the group had reasoned thus: should recognition succeed, the question of annexation would be pressed immediately, splitting the country into North and South because the slavery forces were much interested. This would force Van Buren, who was expected to be a candidate for the Presidency, into taking sides on the issue, and he would lose the support of either the North or South, accordingly as he favored or opposed annexation. For this reason he urged delay so that he could "manage his cards and consolidate his strength."

Van Buren's strength evidently was not great enough to prevent favorable action on the question of recognition should it be brought up, but it was strong enough to keep the whole matter out of Congress unless Jackson gave it a "new message or other impulse."<sup>11</sup>

Realizing this fact, the Texas representatives, on January 8, addressed a most courteous petition to the President, telling him that "the eyes, the hearts and the hopes of our whole country are directed to you more than to all the people of the United States put together," and asking him to address Congress again on the matter.<sup>12</sup> But Jackson, although he desired immediate annexation, felt that "he could not appropriately send in another message to Congress on the subject"

10 Wharton to Austin, Jan. 15, 1837. *Tex. Dip. Cor.*, I, p. 176. When Wharton wrote this letter he did not know that Austin had died December 27, 1836. In Austin's death Texas lost her most influential citizen. He was succeeded by J. Pinckney Henderson as Secretary of State.

11 *Ibid.* See also, Wharton to Houston, Feb. 5, 1837, *Tex. Dip. Cor.*, I, p. 182.

12 Wharton to Hunt and Rusk, Feb. 20, 1837, *Tex. Dip. Cor.*, pp. 196-197.

and so left the matter entirely in the hands of Congress to be disposed of as that body saw fit.

In reporting all this to his Government, Wharton summed up by saying that "we still remain in *status quo*," and he humorously added, "I might say *ante-bellum*." As he viewed the situation in the middle of February, 1837, there were "three chances of reaching the consideration . . . 1st, A report from the Committee on Foreign Affairs, which is very slow and rather doubtful if it ever will come. 2dly, resolutions to recognize which have been introduced by our friends in both Houses . . . 3d. Our friends will endeavor to discuss the merits of our question, when the appropriation bill comes up, by inserting an appropriation to defray the expenses of a diplomatic intercourse with Texas."<sup>13</sup> He also placed some confidence in the plan of interested citizens to send a memorial to Congress, thus forcing a consideration of the question.

Agitation from many sides finally resulted in action. On February 18, 1837, the House Committee on Foreign Affairs reported this resolution:

*"Resolved by the House of Representatives of the United States That the independence of Texas ought to be recognized. Resolved, That the Committee on Ways and Means be directed to provide, in the bill for the civil and diplomatic expenses of the government, a salary and outfit for such public agent as the president may determine to send to Texas."*<sup>14</sup>

This report was not in accordance with the wishes of Forsyth, and Wharton took special care to point him out as unfriendly.

The resolution was acted on favorably by the House on February 28, and on March 1, the Senate approved. Two days later Wharton and Hunt appealed to the President for "some executive act," which would admit Texas into the family of nations. Jackson obliged; "at near 12 o'clock" on the night of March 3, he appointed Mr. LaBranche of Louisiana *chargé d'affaires* for the Republic of Texas. It was one of his last

---

<sup>13</sup> Wharton to Rusk, Feb. 12, 1837, *Tex. Dip. Cor.*, I, p. 185.

<sup>14</sup> Debates in Cong. 24 Cong. 2 Sess., 1880. Cited by Rather, *op. cit.*, *Quarterly*, XIII, p. 252.

official acts as President of the United States. After it he sent for Hunt and Wharton and requested the pleasure of a glass of wine.<sup>15</sup>

---

<sup>15</sup> Wharton and Hunt to Henderson, March 5, 1837, *Tex. Dip. Cor.*, I, p. 201.



## The "Pig Incident"

Until 1841, Texas and France were on friendly terms. Then an Austin hotel keeper let his pig enter one day into the stable of Monsieur de Saligny, the Minister of France. The pig ate part of the corn stored there, and was killed for this indulgence by the hostler of M. de Saligny, who in turn, was horsewhipped by the hotel keeper. M. de Saligny, angry at the treatment of his servant, arranged to have the landlord appear in court. Later, while Saligny was in the hotel, he was ordered out by the landlord. The Minister would not accept such an insult, and left the country when his feelings were not salved by our Government, and through him, Texas was not allowed to obtain a large loan from France. The President made things run smoothly again, finally, by satisfying Saligny's demands.



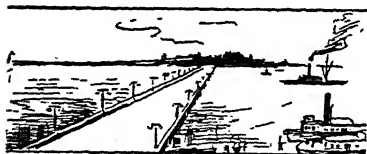
## Early School Days

During the days of the Republic, schoolteachers were often forced to accept surplus farm products in lieu of pay. Board was usually contributed by someone in the neighborhood, and the teacher was obliged to market corn, cotton, and other products, often at some distant market, in order to realize some return for his work. The scarcity of school books in the Republic was another serious problem to the teachers. Pupils brought whatever books were available, and it was the perplexing problem of the instructor to conduct a class with no two books alike.

# MAY IN TEXAS



1, 1718, General Alarcón's Expedition founded the mission of San Antonio de Valero. On May 5, 1718, Alarcón founded the Villa de Bejar which later became known as San Antonio.



1, 1912, a new causeway connecting Galveston with the mainland was opened. It was built of earth, steel and concrete.

3, 1689, after finding two of the Frenchmen with the Tejas Indians, the De León Expedition reorganized and set out for the return to Mexico City. The two Frenchmen were taken with them.

8, 1786, General James Hamilton, after whom Hamilton County was named, was born in Charleston, South Carolina. He served as governor of that state and then, in 1838, sacrificed his private fortune in promoting treaties of commerce between Texas and European nations.

12 and 13, Battle of Palmito Ranch when the final shot of the Civil War was fired, more than a month after Lee's surrender.

MAY 8, 1744, is the date the cornerstone of the present Alamo was laid with the usual ceremonies of that day.

17, 1835, settlers from the northern part of Lavaca County met with the people of Gonzales, discussed the political situation of the colonies and organized a Committee of Safety and Correspondence.

19, 1845, Mexico actually accepted the proposal of the French and British representatives that it would recognize the independence of Texas as a republic if Texas refused to be annexed to the United States. But the Texas Congress, on June 16, 1845, voted by an all but unanimous voice to accept the offer from the Union for annexation.

22, 1690, another expedition from Mexico, again headed by Captain De León, reached the headquarters of the Tejas Indians, where they were welcomed with delight by the chief of the tribe at a site where Weches, Houston County, is now located.



23, 1675, a Spanish expedition from Mexico, with Fernando del Bosque as leader, in company with Padre Larios and Padre San Buenaventura, crossed the Rio Grande and erected several wooden crosses to indicate title to the country.

# IMMORTAL TEXANS

## INTRODUCTION by

JACK C. BUTTERFIELD



*T*HE CREATION of the Republic of Texas was one of the most astounding achievements of all history, a feat that in audacity of conception and brilliance of consummation is without parallel in the annals of the human race. It was not an accident, nor yet the outgrowth of a deliberate, coordinated plan, even though the Texas Revolution began when the first American crossed the Sabine River. Each one of those doughty filibusters who flitted across the scene during the early eighteen-hundreds was as much a Maker of Texas as were those who participated in the finale of 1835-36. The final result was due to the sudden crystallization of public opinion into the realization that no other answer could be given to repeated attacks on that human right that is the most jealously guarded of all by those who have enjoyed it, personal liberty.

The Makers of Texas were of a mixed type. Geography decreed that most of them should have come from the Southern States, yet the greatest of them all — Stephen F. Austin —



was the Virginia-born son of a Connecticut Yankee, and every one of the then existing states was represented, as well as several of the European countries, and Canada. Some of them had been in Texas for a long time, as time was counted in those days — a matter of some twenty-odd years in the case of one or two. Others had been within its borders less than that many days when they leaped to the forefront of events and began to make history. There were savants and scholars among them, wise men and fools. Some had served on the Supreme Bench, and others as governors of states. There were members of the United States Congress, men who had been members of the conventions that gave their constitutions to several states, many former members of state legislatures, and the man who was president of the convention that gave the great liberal Constitution of 1824 to Mexico. Some were polished gentlemen, others merely rough-hewn types of backwoods individuals. Adventurers, soldiers, statesmen, politicians, colonists, storekeepers, farmers, and at least one professional revolutionist.

Yet all were animated by the same desire: to preserve the most characteristically American of all governmental boons, the right of a people to govern themselves. And each one, regardless of nationality, creed, training, inclination or personal ambition, fitted inevitably into his particular role as neatly and completely as if he had been born for no other purpose. For events proved masters of men and all else was forgotten but the will to win.

After grotesque and pitiful blundering and floundering, those delegates in session at Washington-on-the-Brazos proved themselves statesmen of a caliber to bring forth a Declaration of Independence that stands, in loftiness of sentiment and purity of diction, as a peer to the immortal document of the great Thomas Jefferson — and to create and maintain a government to back that declaration.

It is not surprising that, meanwhile, the Texan Army should give to the world the one hundred and eighty-three Immortals of the Alamo, who for two weeks held the four thousand of Santa Anna at bay, and finally died to a man that Texas might be free; and the three hundred and fifty martyrs of Goliad, butchered on the altar of Liberty; and the seven hundred and eighty-three heroes of San Jacinto who, in eighteen minutes, vanquished double their number of Mexi-

cans, and captured the President of the Mexican Republic.

The miracle of Texas lies in the fact that it is the work of a handful of men. In not a single fight during the entire period from 1800 to 1845 did they muster as many as one thousand fighting men. Overwhelming odds never discouraged them and defeat but spurred them to ultimate victory.

Truly, the Makers of Texas were MEN!



## WILLIAM BARRETT TRAVIS

ONE OF A LARGE FAMILY of children, William Barrett Travis spent his early childhood in Alabama. After receiving more than the ordinary education of those days, Travis taught school and pursued the study of law. After practicing a while in the state, he moved to Texas and continued his practice at Anahuac.

Here he became involved in a number of difficulties with Mexican officials, which led to one of the first armed conflicts between the colonists and Mexico. When the Revolution started, Travis was amongst the first to join. Taking part with marked valor in the early stages of the campaign, he was ordered to the command of the garrison at San Antonio.

In the historic Alamo, Travis and his small band of one hundred eighty-two men withstood the siege of a large Mexican force under Santa Anna for eleven days. After exacting a terrific toll of the enemy, the brave defenders were slaughtered to the man, consecrating with their blood the most sacred shrine in Texas. Travis, only twenty-eight years old at his death, did as much as any Texan in bringing on the Revolution, nor did any Texan exceed him in fighting spirit and bravery. His name has been commemorated throughout his adopted state.



## STEPHEN FULLER AUSTIN

DECEMBER, 1820, MARKS the beginning of modern Texas, for in that month Moses Austin, a Missouri lead miner, arrived in San Antonio to obtain official sanction for his projected Anglo-Texan colonies. After many delays Austin secured the necessary grants, but he did not live to carry them out. To his son, Stephen, fell the task of fulfilling the empresario contracts.

Young Austin was fully as capable and ambitious as his father. Leaving New Orleans in November, 1821, Austin established the first colony in the same year at San Felipe de Austin on the Brazos River. Changes in the government necessitated that Austin should go to Mexico City and secure new authorization. This he did, and on returning, started on a large program of development.

Austin was strongly opposed to radicalism. However, after journeying to Mexico as an official delegate to protest against certain measures, he was imprisoned for fifteen months. Returning, he warned the colonists to arm, for, as he believed, the conflict was inevitable. Chosen first commander-in-chief, he quit the post to attend to the more pressing business of securing aid from the States. His sudden death on December 27, 1836, was a severe blow to the Republic. The state capital takes its name from this man, or rather from the Austins, father and son, in small tribute to their great services to the state. The capitol was located on a portion of the ground pointed out as the place he desired for his home.



## DAVID CROCKETT



*"Be sure you are right; then go ahead!"*

THE SUCCESSION of events which comprised the life and experiences of David Crockett has few counterparts in history which can equal the sheer anomaly and amazing incongruity characterizing this heroic figure of the American frontier.

Although similar in many respects to his contemporaries in the rough and simple pioneer existence, he was the peer of many who have shone as heroes of a higher civilization. It is impossible to classify such a man. Endowed with natural ability to an eminent degree, yet wholly untutored, and devoid of culture; appearing to the masses as a great original genius; looked upon as the hero of many a physical and mental conflict by thousands, who, in their admiration of such characteristics entirely lost sight of defects — he yet constantly placed himself in attitudes, by word and act, that were calculated to bring upon himself ridicule and condemnation from the more refined classes.

Nevertheless, all will admit his bravery and patriotism, particularly those who hold close to their hearts the record of the Alamo struggle and the sacrifices which made possible our state today. Crockett rose from the humblest position in society to a seat in Congress in Washington entirely by his

own indomitable pluck, perseverance, and industry. His genial good humor, eccentric though it seemed, and his undisputed ability won for him a great interest on the part of everyone, his reputation being such that thousands flocked to see him wherever he went.

While David Crockett is a familiar figure to everyone acquainted with Texas history, few people have a complete picture of his life. Crockett was a visitor in Texas but a few days preceding his death in the Alamo, so that in a matter of time very little of his life was spent in this state.

Crockett was born August 17, 1786, on the banks of the Nolichucky River, in what is now the state of Tennessee. His father, John Crockett, was a native of Ireland and a man of great courage. He gained a reputation for heroism in the Revolutionary War. After the war, he moved to Tennessee, where he married a woman of rustic manners, but fine sentiments. Here the family lived in humble style, tilling the soil of this wild region most of the time, until little David was about seven years old. They then moved near Greeneville, where John Crockett kept a tavern on the road between Greeneville and Knoxville. It was here that David learned many of the tricks, listened to the recital of thrilling anecdotes, and had his brain filled with the strange, weird stories which afterwards supplied the immense fund of humor running through his veins.

Here the future scout and Congressman lived until he was twelve years of age. Being what is generally termed a "wild" boy, he did not take very kindly to the thought of attending school. One Benjamin Kitchen had opened a private school in the neighborhood, to which David and his brothers now repaired. As has been said, our young hero had acquired some reputation as a story-teller, a pugilist, and a leader in mischief. Consequently, when, a few days after school started, one of the older boys attempted to tyrannize over the youth of twelve summers, young Crockett aired his resentment by giving his antagonist a sound thrashing after school. Fearing the consequences of this bold deed, David refrained for several days from approaching the schoolhouse, lest Master Kitchen and his rod prove too heavy for his frail back.

His father, upon being informed by the schoolmaster of his son's absence, sternly commanded the youth to return to

school. When the boy hesitated to return, his father grew wrathful, and gathering a young hickory, started to enforce the law. But the victim of the law fled — fled with all the speed he could acquire, followed closely by the irate parent.

This was the end of his early education. Hiring himself out to a neighbor about to leave with a drove of cattle for Virginia, he started out on his first adventure. The hardships of six hundred miles of travel at that time would surely frighten a modern youth of twelve summers, but David was hardy, bravely taking his place among the rest.

After selling the cattle, and preparing to return home, one of the party, his partner in travel, sneaked out and left him to continue alone. Young Crockett soon found another partner, a wagoneer going in the opposite direction. Relinquishing the idea of returning home, he went to Gerards-town with the new-found friend. Having reached Gerards-town, he hired out to a farmer and worked for several months. Wandering down to Baltimore, he was soon attracted by the ships, and, resolving to be a sailor, he applied to the captain of one of the vessels. Struck by the youth's precocity, the captain suggested going to sea, a proposal which Crockett at once accepted. However, on returning to his employer to get his wages and clothes, he was dissuaded from a life as a sailor.

Then followed all manner of experiences, including one relatively long period of eighteen months' employment with a hatter. He was finally able to save enough, after three years, to return home. Turning towards the hills of Tennessee, he, a full-grown lad of fifteen, at last reached the old tavern. His family was slow in recognizing him, but great was its joy at discovering this stranger to be the long-lost son. Home was truly a magic word to the adventurer. How it nerves the strong, inspires the weak, and rests a sacred benediction upon the head of everyone!

After assisting his father to pay off several debts, David decided to settle down. One of the debtors had a visiting niece from North Carolina, with whom David immediately fell in love. The fire burned, and would not be quenched. Finally, he was able to overcome his bashfulness enough to propose. After quietly listening to his stammering, the maiden informed him she was engaged.

But it is an ill wind that blows no good. David concluded

he was meeting with such ill-fortune on account of his ignorance. Therefore, he went to school, working two days out of six to pay for his board and schooling. This six months, he says in his autobiography, "was all the schooling I ever had in my life."

Following this backwoods college course, he again attempted to try his luck, and this time the object of his attentions received him kindly, accepting his proposal to marry, only to back out a few days before the ceremony and marry another. It was a terrible blow to an already wounded heart. Crockett became a hermit, not showing himself to society for several months.

David came out of his retirement and soon thereafter married a girl of Irish descent. With two cows and a calf donated by his parents-in-law, and fifteen dollars in cash, he rented some land and set to work. After a few years, they decided to move. Together with David's father-in-law, they removed to the Duck and Elk River country in Lincoln and Franklin counties. Here they passed many pleasant years, spending almost their entire married life in this vicinity.

Soon after moving to Franklin County, Tennessee, Crockett first distinguished himself as a fighter and scout. The Creek Indians were beginning depredations, which culminated in the War of 1812. Crockett was soon recognized as a leader. He made forced marches, waded through swamps, climbed mountains, visited friendly Indians, and was of much assistance to the Army. Throughout the long period of war and starvation David Crockett had been among the most active and the most beloved of all. He was the best shot, the most skillful hunter, the wittiest in camp, and the bravest when it came to a hand-to-hand combat with savages.

When the country was once more at peace, Crockett returned to his modest home in Franklin County, Tennessee, where he again took up the simple life of the farm. However, the pleasant fireside did not remain long undisturbed. Death knocked at the door of the cabin one night and demanded the wife and mother. The father and husband, crushed with sorrow, could give the helpless children no consolation. There were three of them, and of course Crockett could not care for the children and attend to the active labors of frontier life. He persuaded his younger brother and his wife to keep house for him. This they did for a while, until

the widower married a widow of the neighborhood and re-established the home.

The following fall Crockett, in company with three others, determined to go on an exploring expedition. Soon after starting out, he took sick with a fever, and it was only due to the kindness of a family named Jones, who had a farm near where Tuscaloosa now stands, that he was able to recover. Returning home, where he had been given up for dead, he again started out, this time taking the family with him.

They traveled about eighty miles, to Shoals Creek, in the new Indian purchase, where there was neither law nor order, and here David drove his stakes for future greatness. The neighbors met, organized themselves into a corporation, and asked no assistance from anyone. Crockett was chosen magistrate. The first rung in the ladder had been reached.

Soon after, Crockett was elected colonel of a regiment which had been formed. This was his first victory by popular vote. It gave him an excellent impetus toward something higher. He was soon solicited to become a candidate for the legislature. Although scarcely realizing what the office meant, he consented, and in February, 1821, his name was announced, and soon afterward the canvass was begun.

To a modern politician the story of a candidate for the legislature who had never read a page of law or a newspaper in his life seems almost incredible; but such was literally true of Colonel David Crockett. He did not push himself before the people — he was well aware of his ignorance — but the people endorsed him with all his illiteracy, and he did the best that was possible. Honesty took the place of learning; common sense of vague theorizing, and native talent was admired where bombast would have been ignored. After a campaign which depended chiefly on his ability to amuse the crowds with a good story, he was selected to represent the people in the State Legislature of Tennessee. He made good use of his opportunities. When the first session of the legislature was over, he knew more concerning politics than did many another who had read the papers all his life. He did nothing to distinguish himself at the session except to maintain his reputation of honesty, perseverance, and good humor.

On returning home, he found that all his earthly posses-



sions had been swept away by flood. He set up a new home on the Albion River in the fall of 1822. During the winter he ran out of powder. It became necessary to make a trip to his brother's to replenish his ammunition. The distance was six miles, and the river had overflowed its banks until the hollow between the two houses was filled with water. Although it was Christmastime, and ice was on the water, he resolved to wade across. He was forced to walk at times up to his neck, chopping the surface ice with a tomahawk as he went along. Finally, the herculean task was accomplished, a forceful demonstration of the fierce determination of David Crockett to finish whatever he undertook; of his bravery, ingenuity, and disposition to obey the call of duty.

In the spring of 1823, while visiting the nearest trading post, Jackson, someone suggested that he run for the legislature. A week later, he was informed that his name was already before the people. At first, he considered it a joke, but seeing a paper announcing him as a candidate, he resolved to make it more than a joke. He was returned to the legislature, this time representing a different part of the state.

In 1824, the people insisted that Crockett run for Congress against a Colonel Alexander, who had made himself very unpopular by his vote on the tariff question. After great persuasion, Crockett decided to run, and was beaten. Then followed a period of political retirement lasting for two years, during which time he kept himself busy hunting and trapping. An attempt at reaching New Orleans by flatboat ended with the boat's sinking in the treacherous Mississippi. He followed this adventure with a season of bear hunting, killing seventeen bears in one week, and one hundred and five in about two months' shooting.

When the next Congressional election came around, Crockett again entered. His opponents, considering him no opposition at all, devoted all their time to assailing each other. Crockett won with a twenty-seven hundred majority.

In Congress Crockett made his presence known. Although he favored the administration during the first years, he later turned against Jackson, particularly in regard to the President's Indian policy. As a result of his opposition to Jackson, expressed so differently in his original speeches on the floor

of Congress, this modest backwoods representative soon had a reputation that was national.

While taking a short respite from the labor of Congress, on a tour of the northern sections of the country, he was delighted and surprised to find his name famous at all corners. At Philadelphia he was greeted by large throngs, and a great sea of faces welcomed him at the docks of Manhattan Island. He was royally feted in Boston, where he had expected a cool reception because of his rustic manners. He visited various other places, and all too soon had to turn back to Washington.

Following the adjournment of Congress, he returned to the beloved hills of his humble home. The father and husband had returned loaded with honors, bearing many manifestations of the deep regard of his countrymen; he had returned to cheer the fireside in the woods by his genial smiles, funny anecdotes, varied experiences, and numerous presents. But the joy of his countenance was soon to turn to grief.

Andrew Jackson was not to be bitterly opposed without resentment setting in. Crockett was defeated, fulfilling the edict from Andrew Jackson, that was never revoked until all opposers to his administration were buried in their political graves. It was a cruel blow to Crockett. His fair hopes for fame and glory perished.

It was in 1835 that Colonel David Crockett took leave of his family and started for the Far West. With a sad heart he bade them all farewell. He felt no shame of stain against his character; no crime dogged his footsteps. Only the heavy hand of failure had fallen upon him at the very hour when the sun of his glory seemed to be in the meridian. It was a blow, but a little spark gleamed in the distance. He might visit the scene of conflict between Texas and Mexico, and there either win back lost laurels or bravely die in defense of freedom.

There is no true account of his wanderings. Suffice it to say he made his way to the Mississippi, and soon found himself in Little Rock, Arkansas. After a few days, he started on horseback with friends to the Red River, where, after staying a few days, he boarded a steamer. He went as far as he could by water, and then, buying a horse, he set out with a passen-

ger on the packet for the fortress of the Alamo, where he was to give his life in the terrible struggle for liberty.

Many hardships were encountered before he and his companions reached their destination, but with his ever abundant supply of good humor, the journey was soon accomplished. He was joyfully received by Colonel Travis, who, with a handful of men, was daily expecting the army of Santa Anna. The Scouts came in with a report that the Mexican general was within three days' march of the fort. There were brave hearts in that fort, but even to them this intelligence came like a death knell, for they well knew the fate that was in store for those who fell into the hands of the merciless "Napoleon of the West."

Santa Anna arrived as scheduled, for in three days he was before the fort. He did not attack at once. Skirmishes were frequently indulged in, during which the Mexicans were always defeated. On the 6th day of March, 1836, the fortress was attacked by the entire Mexican command. Then took place one of the bloodiest hand-to-hand conflicts that history records. The brave Americans fell, one by one, until none was left. Among the gallant dead was Colonel David Crockett, the bear hunter, the statesman, the soldier-patriot.

He died as he had always desired to die—fighting for freedom and conscience. He died, admired for his manly character and respected for his unchanging adherence to right. He was loved by all for his high expression of patriotism. He will always live in the hearts of the American people, and particularly the people of Texas, as a wonderful example of perseverance, courage, and nobility of nature. As long as a man lives, the maxim of David Crockett, "Be sure you are right; then go ahead," will stand for the high type of honest American that is the foundation of our Government and social order.

His life will be an inspiration to others confronted with adversity, and who are battling against untold obstacles. May the nation that he honored and the state he helped to free never forget the brilliant character and colorful career of David Crockett.



## SAM HOUSTON



*"It will be honor enough to say  
I was a soldier at San Jacinto."*

THE EARLY LIFE of General Sam Houston is one of many sides. We are all fairly familiar with his activities and service in behalf of the Republic of Texas; but Houston, like most of his contemporaries, was not a native-born Texan. He was one of those freedom-loving, adventurous Americans who forsook the comforts and safety of life in the United States for the action and danger of the Southwestern frontier. He had attained adult life, had encountered experiences enough for several lifetimes, and had won wide public acclaim and honor before he ever set foot on the soil of this state.

Sam Houston was one of those products of a remarkable generation which gave birth not to literary men nor commercial kings, but to great soldiers and statesmen. The fire of patriotism which had been kindled by the Revolutionary War was still strong in the hearts of Americans, and those roughhewn frontiersmen who were advancing the cause of personal liberty were held in high esteem by the people. Sam Houston possessed the advantages of refinement and education not shared by most of his associates. He was born in Rockbridge County, Virginia, in 1793, on the same day of the month that later marked the declaration of Texas Independence — March 2.

His father was a soldier of unusual ability, having won the commendation of Washington and his staff. However, his father died quite early, and the family moved to the then wild country of Tennessee. While he did not have many opportunities to attend school, he was a precocious youth and a brilliant student, and he availed himself of every chance to learn that came his way. By the time he was eighteen he had experienced living with wild Indians in their native haunts and had taught school, besides engaging in other activities of a frontier existence.

At this early age his military genius was already recognized. He had enlisted in the Indian Wars, and such was his proficiency in drill that he was assigned the task of drilling a new regiment. He distinguished himself in the famous Horseshoe Bend Indian fight but received a wound that almost caused his death. After his recovery, he held a position for a while as an officer in the regular Army.

At the age of twenty-five, Houston decided upon a law career. He began his study in the office of a prominent lawyer of Nashville, who, recognizing his unusual mental capacity, predicted that he could learn enough to pass the bar examinations in a year and a half. Houston, having no time to waste, set to work with characteristic energy and mastered all of his teacher's books in six months! He then passed a brilliant examination, winning prominence for his feat that served him in good stead.

After practicing a short time in Lebanon, Tennessee, where he held public office, he was appointed a major general in recognition of his services and his value in contacting the Indians. He was urged to consent to his name's being placed for Congress. When he finally acquiesced, he was elected to represent Tennessee by an overwhelming majority. After two successful terms, the people of his state placed him in the gubernatorial chair by an almost unanimous vote.

At this time befell one of the darkest incidents in his life. He married one of Tennessee's fairest and richest daughters, but scarcely had the honeymoon ended when the wife left the Governor's Mansion, never to return to her husband. The blow fell hard on Houston, and though the cause of the trouble has never been told, the situation was used to advantage by political enemies. Seeking peace in forget-

fulness, Houston resigned his public office and sought tranquillity and rest among the Indian nations of Arkansas.

He spent three years in exile among his Indian friends; then he was called to Washington to testify concerning corruptions existing at the Indian trading posts. His denunciation of the cheating Indian agents was so vigorous and bitter that he won many enemies. Then followed a stormy period during which he was bitterly criticized by the opponents of Jackson for his strong loyalty to the President. Many false charges were brought against his name, but he stood up against them all, and came away entirely vindicated.

At the request of Jackson, Houston started for Texas with the object of promoting friendly relationships with the Comanche Indians around San Antonio, whose hostile attitude had been a menace to the safety of the American frontiers. After dispatching his duties, he announced the intention of settling in Texas, a decision that overjoyed the citizens of Nacogdoches. Mexican tyranny had become intolerable, and the people of Texas were looking for leaders to carry them through the impending struggle. Houston was immediately drafted to assist in the framing of a declaration of independence. His excellent judgment, convincing logic, and irresistible eloquence soon gave him a prominence second only to Austin himself. However, nothing was accomplished until two years later, at which time Houston found the people of Texas looking to him for protection against an invading Mexican army.

Houston's part in the struggle for independence is familiar to all. Despite the wrangling and indecision of those elected to govern the newly declared Republic, Houston was able finally to organize the scattered, poorly equipped Texan forces and deal a death blow to Mexican authority in Texas at San Jacinto. Houston received much unkind criticism and poor cooperation, but, as had been the case in his conduct toward his political enemies in the U. S., he maintained a quiet dignity and continued his course of action, to be finally vindicated and acclaimed by all.

Naturally, upon winning freedom for the new Republic, Houston was selected to guide the nation as first President. Texas encountered such a perilous period following the expiration of his term that he was called again to take the helm of government, which he did not relinquish until he

saw negotiations well under way for annexation to the United States.

Following its entrance into the Union, Texas selected Houston to represent the new state in Congress.



## MIRABEAU B. LAMAR

MIRABEAU B. LAMAR offered a marked contrast to most of his contemporaries, who were products of the rough and ready backwoods school. A Georgian by birth, Lamar came to Texas in time to participate in the Revolution. He was immediately recognized for his all-around ability and was chosen Secretary of War during the government *ad interim*. He was first Vice President of the Republic and succeeded Houston to become Texas' second President.

During the trouble between the United States and Mexico following the annexation of Texas, Lamar commanded a contingent of Texas soldiers on the border. He was later United States Minister to Argentina.

To Lamar goes the credit of initiating the free school system. His administration also fostered the first real international commerce and trade in Texas. The Republic experienced serious financial troubles at this time but, as a whole, the period was one of progress. Lamar waged a vigorous campaign against the Indians in direct opposition to Houston's program. Although he did a number of things that aroused the ire of fellow Texans, he never failed to elicit admiration for his courtly manners, distinguished bearing and education. He died in 1859.



## HENRY SMITH

**T**HE HONOR of being the first governor of Texas under Mexican rule belongs to Henry Smith. However, Smith took office as governor of a Mexican state, for, following the convention of delegates at San Felipe on November 3, 1835, the colonists decided to declare for the Constitution of 1824, and ask that Texas be administered as a separate state of the Mexican Union.

Smith was born in Kentucky in 1788. He came to Texas with some of the earlier colonists in 1821. From the first he advocated the complete independence of Texas. This attitude led to considerable difficulties with the council which elected him, for they were merely seeking rights, not independence, from the government they recognized.

An attempt was made to depose him because of his stand for complete separation, but he refused to retire from his position until the founding of the government *ad interim* later gave a different turn to affairs. Henry Smith served from November, 1835, to March, 1836. He died in 1851.



## ANSON JONES



**T**HE PRESIDENTS of the Republic of Texas were all men who had taken active parts in the struggle for



independence, and Anson Jones was no exception to this. A native of Massachusetts, Jones came to Texas in 1833 and from the first was a champion of independence.

After the Republic was established, Jones served in various capacities. He was a member of the Texas Congress, minister to the United States, and was Secretary of State. In 1844, he succeeded Sam Houston, becoming the fourth President of the Republic.

During his administration there developed much favorable sentiment for annexation to the United States. Jones called a special session of the Texan Congress to decide the issue, and the favorable decision of this body was ratified by the people in a vote on October 13, 1845. The United States formally annexed Texas on December 29, 1845, and on February 16, 1846, Jones relinquished office in favor of J. Pinckney Henderson.

Jones then retired from public life, living on his plantation until his death in 1858.



**DAVID G. BURNET**

*A*FTER the Texas Revolution got under way, it became apparent to the colonists that complete independence was the only hope for Texas. While Travis was standing siege at the Alamo, the delegates at Washington-on-the-Brazos were assembled in the most important gathering ever held on Texas soil. Here independence was declared, and David G. Burnet was chosen to head the new Republic.

Burnet came to Texas in 1826, and during the period of unrest preceding the Revolution, strongly advocated self-government. Following the successful battle of San Jacinto, Burnet continued in office as President *ad interim* until the for-

mal administration began in September, 1836, when Houston took office as first President of the Republic.

During Lamar's term of office, Burnet served as Vice President, and in 1846 he was Secretary of State. In 1866, he was chosen United States Senator. He died December 5, 1870.



## J. PINCKNEY HENDERSON

*A*LTHOUGH Henry Smith served a short term as governor of Texas, J. Pinckney Henderson was the first governor of Texas as an American state. During Smith's administration, the colonists still considered themselves subjects of Mexico and Texas a Mexican state.

Henderson came to Texas during 1836, at the head of a company of volunteers from Mississippi. His remarkable ability as an orator was responsible for sending many volunteers from the States to aid in the Texan cause. During Houston's first administration he was Attorney General, and later he was special minister to France and England and then minister to the United States.

After the annexation of Texas he was elected governor, which office he held for a short term until the end of 1847. He refused to stand for re-election. The immediate result of annexation was trouble between the United States and Mexico, and Henderson left his executive duties personally to lead the Texas soldiers under General Zachary Taylor.

Henderson served as United States Senator before his death in 1858.



## RICHARD COKE

**T**HE Reconstruction Era actually ended in Texas with the election of Richard Coke, in 1874. Governor Davis, a Republican, who headed the administration following Texas' re-entry into the Union in 1870, had proved very unpopular, and the state experienced one of its most disquieting periods during his regime.

Coke was born in Virginia, March 13, 1829. In 1850 he moved to Texas, locating near Waco, where he served in the Confederate Army, with the rank of captain. He was an associate justice of the Supreme Court of Texas in 1866 but was removed by the radical leaders in power after the war.

As sixteenth governor of the state, he did much to restore normal business and industry. After serving one term, he was chosen United States Senator, an office he held for eighteen years. In 1895, he refused another election and retired to private life. He died at his Waco home in 1896.



## BEN MILAM

**"W**HO'LL GO with old Ben Milam into San Antonio?" has re-echoed down the years since the question was first asked by Benjamin R. Milam before the battle of San Antonio where Milam was to find victory and death.

Milam was one of the twenty-six empresarios to take out grants of land in the period of early Texas colonization.

Later, then Colonel Milam, he was to escape from a Monterrey prison, where he had been cast in helping a friend, Viesca, the last governor of Coahuila and Texas, flee from being captured by Santa Anna.

On his perilous journey back to Texas, Milam met a small group of planters, led by George M. Collinsworth, who were marching to capture Goliad. Milam asked to join the ranks as a private soldier. Encouraged by such an addition, the Texans surprised the Mexican garrison, capturing it. Later Milam led the attack on San Antonio.

Milam was one of the two Texans killed in the force of three hundred men that took San Antonio away from about sixteen hundred Mexicans.



## Who Captured Santa Anna?

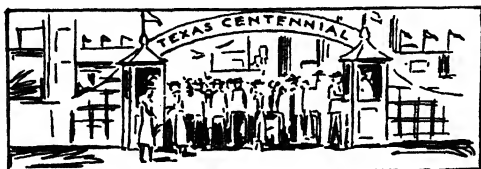
Although several other claims have been advanced, Joel Walter Robinson, a member of James A. Sylvester's scouting party, is most generally given credit for actually capturing the leader of the Mexican forces at San Jacinto. However, there is much testimony to substantiate Sylvester's claim to the honor, and witnesses have attested to the fact that Lieutenant A. H. Miles, also a member of the scouting party, was the actual captor. This question will probably never be definitely settled.



## El Camino Real

"El Camino Real" is said to be the oldest highway on the American continent. In Texas it passed near the present towns of Eagle Pass, Uvalde, Sabinal, San Antonio, Lockhart, Bastrop, Bryan, Crockett and Nacogdoches. It extended from the Spanish possessions in Florida to those in New Mexico. El Camino Real was said to have been used a hundred years before the landing of the Pilgrims.

# JUNE IN TEXAS



JUNE 6, 1936, the Texas Centennial Exposition opened at Dallas.



2, 1836, "The Horse Marines" of the Texas Revolution went into action! On that day, Major Isaac W. Burton of the Texas Army was patrolling the Gulf Coast to prevent Mexican vessels from landing supplies for the Mexican Army which was still on Texas soil, although being withdrawn. A Mexican vessel was sighted by Major Burton, who signaled the craft to send out a boat. When the boat, with five Mexicans in it, reached shore, Major Burton seized them, put sixteen Texans in their place, returned to the vessel and captured it. Major Burton's cavalry patrol unit was known henceforward as "The Horse Marines."

3, 1836, is the date the prisoner Santa Anna was scheduled to depart for his home in Mexico, as he had been allowed two days before to go aboard the *Invincible*, which was in the bay at Velasco. But a great cry of indignation on the part of the people and grumbings of the soldiers caused President Burnet to bring the prisoner back to land. From then on, at least the rest of that year, the Mexican dictator led a hard life, being sent from place to place, now in irons, now without

sufficient food, and subjected to humiliations. It was February, 1837, when he finally reached home.

3, 1836, General Thomas J. Rusk collected and buried the bones of the remains of Fannin's men, picking them up from the prairie east of Goliad, where they had lain and bleached since the men were slaughtered the previous March.

8, 1861, Edward Clark, sworn in as governor when Sam Houston refused to retire as governor, issued a proclamation declaring that war actually existed with the United States.

10, 1821, Moses Austin, father of Stephen F. Austin, died in Missouri a few days after receiving word that his petition for authority to establish 300 families in Texas had been granted.



11, 1838, the first "road show" ever to come to Texas brought "The Hunchback" to a new theater opening in Houston, built and managed by John Carlos.



# THE FIRST TEXAS RANGER

By JACOB F. WOLTERS

*J*OHNN COFFEE HAYS, carried on the Roll of Fame as "Jack" Hays, was born in Tennessee, January 28, 1817.

At fifteen, he moved to Mississippi, where he learned to survey lands. He removed to Texas just after the Battle of San Jacinto. He enlisted in the Army of the Republic of Texas, and was attached to Headquarters as a scout. He was trained under Captain "Deaf" Smith and Captain Karnes, of San Jacinto fame.

His life from 1836 to 1846, as a surveyor, as an Indian fighter and as a Ranger, reflects a chapter of wonderful accomplishments.

In 1840 the Republic of Texas created its first Ranger company. Hays, age twenty-three, became its first captain. He was in truth the first Texas Ranger.

The purpose here is to deal with the part Hays and his Texas Rangers played in the war of the United States with Mexico.

War an actual fact, Hays was authorized to organize and command, with a commission as colonel in the United States Army, the "First Texas Mounted Volunteers." The strength of the organization was twelve hundred enlisted, with the necessary complement of officers. Every officer and every enlisted man belonged to the Texas frontier, and the great majority of them had seen service with the Texas Rangers.

Colonel Hays, with his regiment, reported to General Taylor's headquarters at Corpus Christi. Immediately the First Texas Mounted Volunteer Regiment became known as the "Rangers." The regiment was assigned to Army Headquarters. It constituted the "Army troops" of Taylor's com-

mand. The Rangers gathered information far and wide and reported it to General Headquarters.

Beginning at Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma and ending at Buena Vista, they participated in every battle in which Taylor's army engaged.

General Taylor has been criticized for the long period of time he remained in Camargo. The truth is that the War Department had practically no information regarding the topography or the situation as to the Army of Mexico. The Rangers gathered this information, and when General Taylor did advance on Monterrey, he was thoroughly informed as to the situation at his front.

The Army advanced on Monterrey with the Rangers far to the front. Approaching Monterrey, the Mexican cavalry and the Texas Rangers clashed. McCulloch's troop advanced. Hays dismounted the remainder of the regiment in a corn field. The Mexican cavalry promptly launched an attack on McCulloch, who withdrew, first to the right and then the rear of the dismounted units. The Mexican cavalry fell into the trap. At less than twenty feet the Rangers fired and more than two hundred gallant Mexican cavalrymen left their saddles never to ride again. The Mexican cavalry was put out of action. Immediately General Worth and his Division deployed. The battle of Monterrey was on. The details and results need not be repeated now.

Individual acts of heroism by individual Rangers and units of the regiments are too numerous to detail here.

The War Department records disclose that the Texas Rangers were highly commended for their actions at the battle of Monterrey, and particularly in the capture of the Bishop's Palace by Division commanders. They were referred to as the "best light troops in the world."

Always popular with his command, the major battle of Monterrey made Jack Hays the idol of his men.

A war correspondent for the New Orleans *Delta* said: "Modesty is the most remarkable trait of Hays, and it is no uncommon thing to hear other modest men characterized as being almost as bashful as Jack Hays. Indeed, I question whether there is a man in Taylor's army who has so poor an opinion of the merits and services of Hays as he himself. He thinks much and speaks little, and that little always to the purpose. There never lived a commander more idolized

by his men, for his word is their law, and as they are regular frontiersmen, and of course notoriously restless under any restraint, his perfect control of them attracted much curiosity and many inquiries in Texas before its annexation. Their experience with him as a soldier has given them their confidence; but his rigid and exact justice to them, his habits of living and faring as roughly as any private in his regiment when on duty, and of treating each comrade in arms as in all respects his equal when not on duty, are probably the reasons why the men, one and all, are so willing, without a murmur, to live on parched corn, ride seventy or eighty miles without dismounting, except for five minutes at a time, or to fight the enemy with pick-axes, when Hays deems either necessary."

In the continued movement of the Army, the Texas Rangers went far afield to gather information, and when the battle of Buena Vista began, the American commander had before him complete information as to the situation.

Buena Vista ended General Taylor's active fighting campaigns.

In the meantime General Winfield Scott landed with his army at Vera Cruz.

General Taylor was a rough and ready soldier. General Winfield Scott was the finished product of the Academy, the peerless recognized pre-eminent officer of the old Regular Army. In his command were many of the brilliant young officers of the Army of that day and time, many of whom were later to achieve enduring fame in the War Between the States. The expedition he planned and eventually carried to success was daring in its conception and difficult of accomplishment. The mission was to invade Mexico City from Vera Cruz.

No higher tribute could have been paid the Texas Rangers than the fact that they were detached from the now inactive army of Taylor and assigned to the army of General Scott. Here again the regiment became Army troops, and during the entire march from Vera Cruz and until Chapultepec Castle was wrested from the hands of the brave and gallant cadets, the Rangers were always active. Again Army headquarters was always in full possession of information. Always sketches, as well as maps and accurate topographical



information, location and strength of the enemy, were furnished.

Came September 13, 1847, and with it the march of General Winfield Scott's army along the wide boulevard in the City of Mexico and the taking possession of the old city. Quotes the *Frontier Times* from a newspaper report of the event written in December, 1847:

There arrived here recently the greatest American curiosities that have as yet entered the City of the Aztecs. They were the observed of all observers, and excited as much lively interest as if President Polk and the American Congress had suddenly set themselves down in front of the Palace to organize a government and laws for the people of this benighted land. Crowds of men flocked to see them (however, always keeping at a respectful distance), and women, affrighted, rushed from the balconies into the houses. Perhaps you would like to know who these terrific beings are. Well, they are nothing more or less than Jack Hays and his Texas Rangers, with their old fashioned maple stock rifles lying across their saddles, the butts of two large pistols sticking out of the holsters, and a pair of Colt's six-shooters belted around their waists, making only fifteen shots to the man.

Farther on the story proceeds:

The Mexicans believe them to be a sort of semi-civilized, half man, half devil, with a slight mixture of lion and the snapping turtle, and have a more holy horror of them than they have of the holy saint himself. It is really surprising that men with such a reputation should be among the very best disciplined troops in our army, and not disposed to commit outrages or create disturbances in any way.

Not in uniform, but wearing the clothes of frontiersmen, the heads of some covered with the broad-brimmed Texas hats, others with caps made of skins of animals, they rode neither as Regulars nor volunteer soldiers, but as "Texas Rangers."

Another writer said:

I have described the entrance of Hays' regiment into this town, and will tell you a little of what took place on their arrival in the City of Mexico. Hays' men entered the city of the Aztecs and approached the Halls of the Montezumas,

the objects of universal curiosity. The sides of the streets were lined with spectators of every hue and creed, from the Major General of the North American Army to the Mexican beggar. Quietly they moved along. Not a word was spoken. They seemed unconscious that they were the observed of the observers. The trees in their own native forests would have attracted as much attention as they seemed to bestow upon anything around them. They seemed to say, 'We have seen men, and been in cities before.' . . . It is said that a real gentleman is as much at home in one place as in another, the bear dance and the hoe-down, as well as in the King's Palace. In each they acted their part well. . . . After entering the city they had proceeded some distance without being molested; but the temptation at length became too great for a Mexican to withstand, and one standing on the sidewalk threw a stone at the head of one of the Rangers. It was the last stone he ever threw, for quicker than thought, a flash was seen, a report was heard, and the offender fell dead. A flash of lightning from the eternal throne could not have called him more speedily to account. The Ranger quickly replaced the pistol in his belt and rode on. Ere long another stone was thrown and another Mexican launched into eternity. During all this time no noise was heard, no disturbance was perceivable, the column never halted, and the ranks were unbroken.

The Rangers remained in the City of Mexico until peace was declared and the Army withdrew. They were in active service all the time, mainly operating against the guerillas, who were troubling the General very much. The guerillas had been the terror of Mexico for many, many years. They robbed the poor; they murdered ruthlessly. However, before the American forces evacuated Mexico and returned to the United States, these marauders hunted the canyons of the far mountains and left the highways and byways of civilization, for Texas Rangers were ever on their trail.

After the war Hays returned to San Antonio, and at the instance of that city surveyed and cleared a highway to connect San Antonio with Chihuahua and El Paso. He accomplished his mission after great hardships and many encounters with the Indians. The road he established is now practically the Old Spanish Trail from San Antonio to Del Rio, through Marfa, into El Paso.

Then California called. He arrived in San Francisco just

after California had been admitted to statehood. The people of San Francisco were in the throes of a political campaign to elect a county government. The center of the campaign was the sheriff's race. The Democrats had a nominee whose only right to recognition was that he was very wealthy. The Whigs had a candidate, not very acceptable. When it became known that Jack Hays, famous commander of the Texas Rangers, had become a citizen, the people of San Francisco almost en masse demanded that he become their candidate. The campaign proved interesting. There was much ballyhoo. Hays refused to permit his managers to engage in such, but at last he was prevailed upon at least to ride through the public streets on a horse. The occasion was made one of great demonstration. He was elected.

The Vigilantes had governed San Francisco effectively. California was now a state. The Vigilantes met and tried two men charged with murder and other crimes, assessed the death penalty, and were preparing to execute it when Sheriff Jack Hays, accompanied by one deputy, walked into their midst. Quietly he said, "Gentlemen, the necessity for the Vigilantes has ceased. As Sheriff, I represent the law-enforcement department of our state government." He and his deputy quietly walked away with their prisoners while hundreds of awed Vigilantes looked on. Thus "Finis" was written to the career of the Vigilantes. For four years he remained sheriff and then President Franklin Pierce appointed him Surveyor General of California.

Across the bay from San Francisco was a ranch. The owners were having much trouble with squatters, both American and Mexican. Financed by friends, Hays bought the ranch and laid out blocks and lots, naming the new addition to San Francisco, "Oakland." The addition proved a success from the beginning, and from its promotion and development Hays became a wealthy man. It is interesting to note that he also owned a ranch at what is now known as Redwood City, and that part of this land he sold to Leland Stanford, and that the Stanford University now occupies it.

An old history of Oakland says:

His residence near Piedmont, and where he died, is one of the most beautiful of the State. It is located at the base of

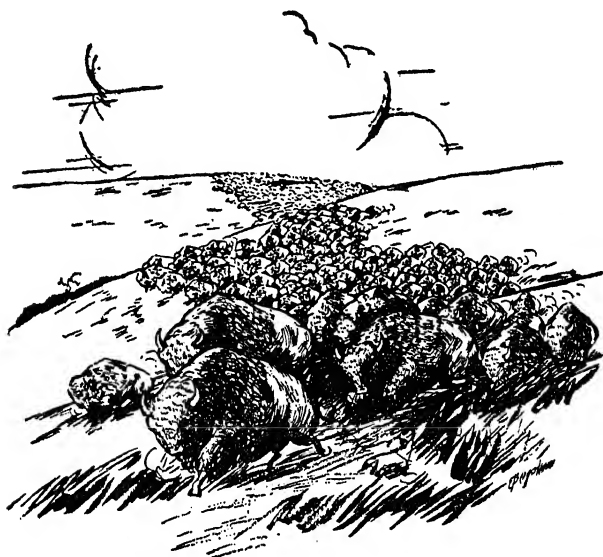
the verdure-clad hills of the coast range, in a quiet nook, secluded from the bustle and turmoil of that busy world in which this hero so long maintained a gallant and successful career. Lordly oaks surround a handsome building and exquisite art has been made an assistant in adorning the natural beauties of the scene.

In the home he had occupied for more than a quarter of a century, with his loved ones about him, the first Texas Ranger, on April 28, 1883, passed away, peacefully and calmly.

In Texas, Hays County is the one monument to his memory.



## Buffalo in Texas



The American bison, the famous buffalo of pioneer days, roamed in great numbers over the plains of Texas. Old-timers still remember herds in Texas as late as the eighties.

# JULY IN TEXAS



1, 1843, Saturday, at night, ten of the Texans, prisoners at Perote Castle, escaped by means of a hole through the thick wall. Their escape was not learned by the guards until Monday morning when the roll was called for the prisoners to go to work. Most of the ten were recaptured and brought back, and chained together at night for many months. The prisoners finally learned how to unlock the chains so they could sleep easier, but when a bed fell down one night this trick was discovered, bringing about closer watchfulness for many nights thereafter.

7, 1716, Father Epinosa, with two companions was given possession of a site on the bank of the Angelina River in Nacogdoches County, where the Mission Concepción was to be constructed. In 1731, the Mission, without change of name was moved to San Antonio.

9, 1733, old records reveal, about thirty so-called tribes or nations of Indians were represented at Concepción Mission, at San Antonio. The same records reveal that up to the year 1740 some 250 adults and children had been baptized.

JULY 4, 1845, a Texas convention, called for the purpose, accepted the United States' offer of annexation, refusing the same day to accept an offer of peace with Mexico and recognition of independence.

10, 1813, Isaac Van Zandt, after whom Van Zandt County was named, was born in Franklin County, Tennessee. He came to Texas in 1839. He became a member of Congress and still later became known as the "Father of the Homestead Law" of Texas.

23, 1803, is the date that Samuel Augustus Maverick, Texas pioneer and one of the first mayors of San Antonio, was born at Pendleton, South Carolina.

24, 1684, LaSalle left the old country with four ships bound for the mouth of the Mississippi River but landed instead at Matagorda Bay, on the Texas coast.

25, 1536, Cabeza de Vaca and his three companions were received by the Marqués del Valle in Mexico City. They gave him a report of their travels through Texas.

25, 1721, Marqués de Aguayo met the recognized head of the Asinai nations, who was accompanied by eight chiefs and four women, one of whom was the converted Angelina. Aguayo presented the ruler with a silver-headed cane and named him captain and governor of the Texas Indians.

26, 1863, General Sam Houston died at his home in Huntsville. Death hushed all bitter differences of opinion and the whole state united to mourn his loss.

# THE MIER EXPEDITION



THE REPUBLIC OF TEXAS encountered very little difficulty with Mexico immediately following the decisive victory of San Jacinto, but during the fall and winter of 1841 many rumors came to Texas concerning Mexican plans to re-invade Texas. The Santa Fé Expedition ended unsuccessfully with the capture of all the men at San Miguel, whence they were marched overland under a barbarous guard to Mexico City.

The first invasion of Texas during 1842 ended with the capture of San Antonio on March 5. Two days later the Mexicans departed, after looting the town. A second invasion of San Antonio in September by the Mexicans under General Woll resulted in the capture of a number of Texans. Then followed a very regrettable series of events in which the Texans attempted to retaliate by pursuing the Mexicans to the border.

The result of this campaign was the capture of two hundred and twenty-six Texans on Christmas day, at Mier, on the Rio Grande. These prisoners were marched overland to the interior. At Salado, an unsuccessful attempt was made to escape. Five were killed, some escaped, and the survivors, now numbering one hundred and seventy, were brought back to Salado in irons.

An order was received from Mexico City to have every tenth man shot. Then occurred the famous black bean draw-

ing, in which seventeen of the prisoners picked black beans from among the white and so condemned themselves to immediate death. The remaining prisoners were marched to Mexico City, and thence to Castle Perote, near Vera Cruz, where they were imprisoned. A number of the prisoners managed to escape from the castle and made their way back to Texas.

The prisoners were released from Perote Prison in 1844, following an appeal on the part of the American Minister to Mexico. It has also been said that the release was due in part to a deathbed request by Santa Anna's wife for the release of the Texans. Finally, on Sunday, March 24, the prisoners were told to prepare to march. They were conducted to Vera Cruz after giving their oath never to take up arms against Mexico. They returned to Texas via New Orleans.



### III Luck

A strange story is told about one of the victims of the infamous black bean incident. James L. Shepherd of Bastrop, one of the Mier prisoners, was condemned with sixteen others by the decimation orders of Santa Anna. He fell with the others, but they found his body missing the next morning. Some weeks later he was captured near the Rio Grande, having suffered only a scalp wound, but his fortune ended, for he was promptly shot.



### Santa Anna after San Jacinto

Although Mexico never finally admitted the independence of Texas until the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo in 1848, a treaty was signed following the battle of San Jacinto in which the Mexicans agreed to withdraw to the Rio Grande. Santa Anna, who had been captured by the Texans, was promised his freedom to present the Texan cause to his Government. Because of the intense feeling against the Mexican general, it was necessary to hold him prisoner for six months before attempting to return him to Mexico.



# THE JOURNEY OF DEATH

## (Santa Fe Expedition)

By JAMES T. DeSHIELDS

ONE OF THE SADDEST episodes in the turbulent history of the Lone Star Republic was what is known as the Santa Fé Expedition; and the fact that failure of the enterprise was brought about mainly through the treachery of one of its own members makes it all the more pathetic.

I will not attempt to relate the whole story of this unfortunate affair, but merely tell of the reason for its collapse. The noted George W. Kendall, then editor of the New Orleans *Picayune*, afterwards a valuable citizen of Texas, and for whom one of our counties was named, accompanied the expedition and wrote a full history of the great adventure, forming, as it does, one of the most colorful and thrilling narratives in all frontier history.

One of the moving spirits in the organization of the scheme was W. P. Lewis, an adventurer whose name has become the synonym of perfidy and whose memory has become the heritage of everlasting infamy. And he found a ready listener in the somewhat visionary President Mirabeau Lamar, as well as others. Little is known beyond Lewis' own statements, and no historians will even attempt to rescue his name from obscurity.

A year or so before, Lewis had made his appearance in Texas, coming from Santa Fé, where he had lived a number of years, engaged, as he stated, in the mercantile business. He was of splendid appearance, spoke Spanish with the fluency of a native, and claimed an extensive and favorable acquaintance with the leading men of that region, as well as knowledge of the moral, social and political conditions that prevailed in that wonderful country.

He spoke eloquently of the latent and actual wealth of the Rio Grande Valley in New Mexico, the influence of the Mexican Dons, the great fortunes amassed by McGoffin and



other St. Louis-Santa Fé traders and the political discontent of the New Mexican people who, he said, had heard of the success of the Texan arms and the claims Texas had laid to the territory of New Mexico. He declared that with five hundred men he could invade the country, occupy Albuquerque and Santa Fé without the firing of a gun, and that people would gladly rally to the Lone Star standard and joyfully swear allegiance to the young Republic. He would have merchants and traders accompany the expedition in large numbers, with wagons laden with their wares, all of which would be sold at unheard of profits. He held forth that the route to be taken was entirely feasible, since the country from the headwaters of the Colorado to Santa Fé was a vast plain, with water, grass and game plentiful and no intervening mountains to bar the easy progress of the traveler.

The people's minds became largely influenced by Lewis' descriptions and alluring pictures. Statesmen saw the advantages, both commercial and political, to be gained by a civil conquest of that vast region which up to this time was almost *terra incognita* to Texans. There was no dearth of traders and adventurers who were led away by the allurements conjured up in that distance which always lends enchantment to the view. This expedition had been discussed in all its phases for several years. Even cautious old Sam Houston favored the scheme, but said the time for its execution had not arrived; that the finances of the Republic would not justify the undertaking; and when the expedition started out he characterized it as a "wild goose chase." "Three Legged Willie" said it was a foolish and dangerous venture, and in a speech at San Antonio in 1840 said Texas had already more territory than she could defend and that he opposed any expedition gotten up at public expense for the benefit of a few old state peddlers and "glory seekers."

Thus the agitation continued, and finally, in the spring of 1841, the enterprise took form and the nucleus of the proposed expedition began to gather and to rendezvous at a point on Brushy Creek near Austin.

The proposed expedition caused much excitement over the country and among the promoters and leaders of the enterprise were such staunch and gallant men as "Old Paint" Caldwell, Major George T. Howard and other prominent Texans whom the people confided in, and so many made

ready to join without questioning the possibility of trouble or failure. The gallant and dashing Major Howard, at the solicitation of President Lamar, had visited New Orleans for the purpose of purchasing supplies and had advertised the enterprise extensively, and it was through his influence that Editor Kendall was induced to join the expedition for a sightseeing and pleasure jaunt. As men continued to gather at the appointed rendezvous it was indeed a gay and chivalrous crowd, all with high hopes and happy prospects. But among the entire gathering there was not a man who had any actual knowledge of the wild, trackless and uncharted region to be traversed, nor was there a map of the country in existence.

Of brave leaders and fearless frontier fighters there was no dearth. Besides Old Paint Caldwell and Major Howard, there were such true and tried soldiers as Captain Cooke, Lieutenant Hornsby, José Navarro, Dr. Brenham, and many others of like courage and success. Many had fought with these leaders at Gonzales, Concepción, Bexar, San Jacinto, and on the Salado. Little did they dream of the terrible fate that soon awaited them.

The expedition was finally organized and equipped, and, on June 18, 1841, after a glowing speech of cheer by President Lamar, and amid the boom of cannon, and to the strains of inspiring music, it set forth on its journey. Colonel Hugh McLeod, a brother-in-law of President Lamar, was in supreme command of the expedition, which was composed of four hundred or more men, including traders, troopers, teamsters, and excursionists in quest of excitement and adventure, and with twenty-four large "prairie schooners," loaded with great quantities of merchandise and mostly drawn by oxen. It was indeed a gay cavalcade that thus set forth on that long, perilous journey — "the journey of death."

The expedition, as predicted by some of the doubting ones, soon ended in disaster, partly through the unwise leadership of those in command in allowing the party to scatter and divide, but mainly through the treachery of the villainous Lewis, who not only betrayed his comrades and confiding countrymen but also came in for a large share of the valuable merchandise, and even the watches, arms and personal effects of the unfortunate and helpless men. Despite the fact that the scheme was ill-advised, untimely, and launched in the face of many obstacles, the enterprise might have succeeded

but for the perfidy of Lewis. Kendall, the historian of the expedition, in apologetic, pathetic manner, thus sums up the causes — other than betrayal — that led to the collapse and sad termination of the ill-starred expedition:\*

And what mistakes have brought this sorrowful issue to our enterprise? In as few words as possible, I will answer the question. In the first place, the expedition began its march too late in the season by at least six weeks. Had it left Austin on the first of May, the grass would have been much better, and we would have had little difficulty in finding good water, both for ourselves and our cattle. In the second place, we were disappointed in obtaining a party of Lipan Indians for guides, and were consequently obliged to take a route some 300 miles out of our way, and in many places extremely difficult of travel. Thirdly, the Government of Texas did not furnish wagons and oxen enough to transport the goods of the merchants, and this, as a matter of course, caused tedious delays. Fourthly, cattle enough on the hoof were not provided, even with the second supply sent by the commissioners from Little River. Again, the distance was vastly greater than we had anticipated in our widest and wildest calculations; owing to which circumstances, and on improvident waste of provisions while in the buffalo range, we found ourselves upon scant allowance in the middle of our long journey — a privation which weakened, dispirited and rendered the men unfit for duty. The Indians also annoyed us much, by their harassing and continued attempts to cut off small parties and steal our horses. Finally, the character of the Governor of New Mexico was far from being understood, and his power was underrated by all. The General's estimate of the views and feelings of the people of Santa Fé and the vicinity was perfectly correct; not a doubt can exist that they all were and are anxious to throw off the yoke of Armijo, and come under the liberal institutions of Texas. But the Governor found us divided into small parties, broken down by long marches and want of food; he discovered a traitor (the man Lewis) among us, too, and taking advantage of these circumstances, his course was plain and his conquest easy. Far different would have been the result had the expedition reached the confines of New Mexico a month earlier, and in a body. Then, with fresh horses, and a sufficiency of provisions for the men, the feelings of the inhabitants would

---

\* George Wilkins Kendall, *Narrative of the Texan Santa Fé Expedition*.

have been different. The proclamation of General Lamar would have been distributed among them; the people would have had an opportunity to come over to Texas without fear, and the feeble opposition Armijo could have made, and I doubt whether he would have made any against the Texans in a body, could have been put down with ease. Had it been evident that a majority of the inhabitants were satisfied under their present government, and unfriendly to a union with Texas, then the goods would have been sold and the force withdrawn; at least, such was the tenor of the proclamation. No attack would have been made upon the inhabitants — that was expressly understood. But had Armijo seen fit to commence hostilities, his power in New Mexico would have been at an end. Fate decreed otherwise, and by a series of unforeseen and unfortunate circumstances, the expedition was thrown into his hands.

And then came the sad sequel. The half-starved, unfortunate fellows were disarmed and their monies and goods taken from them; then, herded together like so many cattle, shackled, chained together in pairs, thinly clad, most of them hatless and barefooted, in the dead of a fierce winter, they were marched on foot across the bleak prairies and through the rough mountains, on the long journey through Mexico. They were prodded with lances and bayonet points by cruel, inhuman Mexican guards; if they halted or fell exhausted along the weary way — some to be slaughtered if they failed to rise quickly and proceed — their ears were cut off and kept as evidence that “no prisoner escaped.” Thus the poor men trudged on and on, through valleys, wading or swimming streams, over tablelands, on the terrible journey to the far Mexican coast, there to be thrown into damp and filthy, vermin-infested and disease-breeding prison dungeons, to languish for days and months — many to perish.

The story is a long, a piteous, heart-rending one that if told in full would extend to many pages. It required the earnest efforts of two powerful nations, the United States and Great Britain, finally to secure the release of the survivors of this most unfortunate venture. All were eventually released about the middle of June, 1843.

Thus collapsed President Lamar’s visionary scheme of territorial expansion — of a greater Texas; and with its failure came much censure for the President of the Lone Star Re-

public. Had the enterprise succeeded, the chivalrous, dashing and daring Mirabeau Buonaparte Lamar — the name carries military flare — would have gained much added fame.



## Airing Troubles



Americans settling in Texas in the early days of the Republic made use of novel and somewhat entertaining methods of airing their disputes and personal differences, some going so far as to have printed handbills setting forth the varied degrees of rascality of an opponent and detailing in vivid language just how many different varieties of so-and-so he considered his enemy. In the archives of the University of Texas are preserved many of these documents, among which the following is a fair sample:

"To THE PUBLIC: The most damnable conspiracy, the foulest and filthiest plot that has ever been brought to light in the history of Texas is now being consummated by John Marshal, the Yankee Abolition editor of the *Austin State Gazette*, and one D. M. Short, of Shelby County, whose low, base, vulgar character renders him the most suitable of all living creatures to be the tool of John Marshal, to do the dirty work of this arch villain. The infamous plot to which I allude was planned and partly put in operation toward the close of the session of the last legislature by these gentry; and they have faithfully pursued it to the present time.

"But I think I can now make such an exposé of their villainy as will at least put honest men on their guard. . . ."



One-fifth of the present area of the United States was acquired with the annexation of Texas.



# THE DAILY LIFE OF THE EARLY TEXAS PIONEERS

By JOSEPH WILLIAM SCHMITZ, S. M.

THE EARLY Texas pioneers were a hardy people. The great majority realized that only by hard work would they reap the good fortune they so ardently desired. Accordingly they began work immediately upon arrival, labored long and hard, and muttered not.

Usually their first care was the erection of a house. There were few good houses built in the first years; building material was scarce and high priced, and the houses constructed, usually by the immigrant with the help of friendly neighbors, were mere shelters, hardly deserving of the name. The majority of the houses, excluding those in the towns, were simply constructed, built of logs, clapboards, and rough sawed planks.

Conditions in the backwoods were especially poor. Inhabitants had a roof over their heads and little else. "Many of the houses were made by setting poles in the ground . . . and boarding them up with split pine boards."<sup>1</sup> The entire affair, made of logs, was small: "one room harbored the whole family and comers and goers"<sup>2</sup> and sometimes it did not even have a window. When air and light were wanted, a board was knocked off. These houses had floors made of rough boards laid on the ground, sometimes not extending under the bed. At times they lacked even this rough surface and the ground had to serve as a base of all domestic operations. Mrs. Isaac Van Zandt gives us a good idea of what these early homes were like.

<sup>1</sup> Allen's *Reminiscences of Texas 1838-42*, William S. Red (ed), *Quarterly*, XVIII, p. 294.

<sup>2</sup> Lucy A. Erath, *Memoirs*, *Quarterly*, XXVI, p. 233.

Our first houses [she came to Texas in 1839] were . . . pole cabins with the cracks chinked with split out lumber, daubed with clay, mortar and sometimes boards pinned on with wooden pins. . . .Clap board doors hung on wooden hinges. . . .The chimneys were of sticks and dirt. . . . The houses had split out puncheon floors when there were any kind at all.<sup>3</sup>

Most of the pioneers, however, could boast of dwellings somewhat better than the backwoods type. But at best their homes were crudely built; totally lacking comforts or conveniences and still strictly primitive structures, they at least had windows and plank floors and rock chimneys and fireplaces. Nor were the furnishings of these early dwellings superior to their surroundings. Most of the articles were of the roughest construction. Tables were made of green lumber from trees; chairs were built out of round sticks and cross-pieces, and seated with deer skin or rawhide. The beds, as tight as the face of a drum, were made of skins which were used without covering of any kind. Where mattresses were used, they were of Spanish moss, corn husks, prairie grass, etc. Doctor Lockhart tells us of his early surroundings as he remembers them:

The table, chairs, and bedsteads were usually homemade. If the head of the house possessed any mechanical genius the good lady could move her furniture occasionally; if not, the bedsteads were made by boring an auger hole in the side of the house, a pole was driven into it, extending out the width of the bed, a forked stick was driven in the ground for the end to rest on. This operation was repeated at the other end and a pole laid on, thus making a scaffold for bedding, and the job was completed.<sup>4</sup>

Houses of this type evidently lacked even the elementary comforts of life and did little to shelter the inmates from the weather. The howling Texas winds of the winter months had an annoying way of whistling through the many cracks in the poorly constructed walls, "thus placing the small room still more at the mercy of the icy norther."<sup>5</sup> Conditions were

---

<sup>3</sup> MS., *Isaac Van Zandt Letters*.

<sup>4</sup> Wallis, *Sixty Years on the Brazos*, p. 91.

<sup>5</sup> Erath, *Memoirs, Quarterly*, XXVI, p. 22.

not much better in summer, as few homes had screens to protect the dwellers against the vicious sting of the mosquito.<sup>6</sup>

Some of the most important men in the Republic had lived in these rude houses. Captain Mosley Baker, called one of Houston's "first citizens," lived in a "small house built of clapboards." Even President Houston lived for years in "a small log house consisting of two rooms and a passage through, after the Southern fashion."<sup>7</sup>

It must be remembered that these dwellings were built by the immigrant immediately upon arrival, when circumstances forced him to be grateful for any kind of shelter. The progressive pioneer was not, however, content to live the rest of his days midst such primitive conditions; accordingly, at odd moments, and whenever an opportunity presented itself, he improved the building. "The hewn logs were covered with weather boards, the interior walls ceiled and papered, a second story was added, and it was protected on three sides with wide galleries on both stories."<sup>8</sup> Gradually, therefore, the log houses took on a more presentable appearance and the dwellings became habitable.

It would be false, however, to create the impression that most of the homes went through the log stage. In the towns and cities where material and labor were available, some very worthwhile houses were constructed from the very start. A saw mill was introduced into Texas as early as 1830 and with machine-cut lumber it was possible to make homes quite attractive. It is evidently to homes of this kind that Mrs. Holley refers when she writes from Galveston in 1840 that there were "some very pretty houses . . . of Grecian architecture, one story, with columns [in] front & windows to the floor like glass doors, all painted white & having a neat white paling around them."<sup>9</sup> When houses of this type were set in towns that were planned with wide streets and alleys, and where provisions were made for public squares and everything arranged in good taste, the effect was not unlike that of a present-day city. There was a decided difference between

---

6 Bollaert, *Manuscript*, II, p. 94.

7 Lubbock, *Six Decades in Texas*, pp. 53, 58.

8 Adele B. Looscan, *Harris County, 1822-1845, Quarterly*, XXXII, p. 369.

9 Mary A. Holley to Mrs. Wm. Brand, Nov. 12, 1840, *Mary Austin Holley Letters, 1808-1846*, Photostat, University of Texas, Austin, Texas.



living in such surroundings and in the untracked wastelands of the backwoods.

Those who came to Texas in the early years soon found out that life was many-sided and complicated, that the needs of a pioneering community were many, and that to succeed meant hard work from morning to night. That there was no place for the laggard and loafer was soon evident. Life was essentially a struggle for existence, a struggle that by no means ended with the construction of a dwelling — in fact, the striving began only then. The problems that presented themselves were as numerous as they were varied — they dealt with every phase of existence that might be encountered from the time of infancy to the grave; they usually had to be solved at once, since to shirk them was only to delay them; but to solve them required versatility. Some idea of the nature of the problems and how the Texans solved them may be got from the reminiscences of Mrs. Lipscomb:

When our need for things was pressing, we usually found a way for making them. One time Mr. Van Zandt needed a saddle and he made it, having only a drawing knife with which to fashion the saddle-tree from a dead sassafras which he cut down for the purpose. His shoes were gone and he could get no others. He bought some red leather, made a last, and manufactured some very respectable shoes, which he wore to Memphis. One night Matthew Cartwright came to spend the night with us. We had no candles for the supper-table, so my husband scraped up some tallow, made a wick, squeezed the tallow around it, then rolled it over and over until it was straight, and we had a very good candle. After we went to Harrison County, there was a new baby, and no cradle for him. The saw and drawing-knife were called on, and a complete bed was made.<sup>10</sup>

A glance at the illuminating journal of Daniel Hartzo, a farmer, further shows to what extent life was self-sustaining. On November 22, 1841, he wrote in his diary that he had begun making a wheel. On November 29, 1841, he made a coffin, December 1, 1841, he "maide a reel," while on January 8, 1842, he recounts that he "hude punchions." On February 3, 1842, Hartzo "grained deer skins," and on April 7, 1842,

---

<sup>10</sup> MS., *Isaac Van Zandt Letters*.

he "maid a chern." His task for May 16, 1842, was to construct a cradle. On June 11, 1842, he tells about making a bucket. On September 27, 1842, he "maid a Pump Auger," and on October 27, 1842, he "maid an ox yoke." On July 25, 1843, the versatile Hartzo "maid a pair of Shoes." On February 5, 1844, he "maid a Cart tongue," and the next day he "maid a Cart body."<sup>11</sup>

It is evident that the pioneer had to be a jack-of-all-trades to survive the many demands. The men who succeeded shaped the history of the Republic; those who failed fell by the wayside, returned home, or stayed in the country only to follow the line of least resistance. It is in the former that we are interested. Besides these domestic and agricultural demands that presented themselves at frequent intervals, the immigrant was often perplexed by the ever present necessity of providing food and clothing for himself and his family.

Supplying food for the family was largely a domestic task. Most of it was procured at home; the variety of the meals depended on the skill of the head of the family, either as a hunter or as a gardener. Corn was the staple food of most of the people; in one form or another it was the main dependence in Texas. The wealth and advantages of certain sections of the vast lands of the country were often calculated by the corn that was already growing there or that it was possible to raise. Because of the thousands of fat beeves that roamed the prairies, meat found a conspicuous place in the diet. Along with cattle naturally went plenty of good dairy products — "milk, curds, clabber, and butter."<sup>12</sup> The difficulty of preserving the meat was solved by a process known as "jerking beef." The beef would be cut into long thin strips and sun-dried. School children often took some of this in their lunch boxes, and it was the favorite food of the men when leaving home for a journey of several days.<sup>13</sup> But not only was the meat "jerked" to prepare for long marches, but sometimes kitchen doors were supplied with iron hooks upon which newly purchased steaks were hung and dried in

<sup>11</sup> MS., *Diary of Daniel Hartzo, Feb. 1, 1841-Dec. 31, 1846*, University of Texas, Austin, Texas.

<sup>12</sup> Lubbock, *Six Decades in Texas*, p. 123.

<sup>13</sup> MS., *Memoirs of Mary A. Maverick*, p. 46. The author is indebted for the use of these *Memoirs*, as well as for the use of the *Diary of Mary A. Maverick*, to Mrs. Norval J. Welsh, San Antonio, Texas.

the hot sun. There was a little more variety for those people who lived around the gulf; fish, turtle, and oysters were easily obtainable and frequently found a place in the menu.

Naturally housekeeping under such a system was not a complicated matter, but it must be remembered that it was a sort of hand-to-mouth existence; though the chances of starvation were slim, yet there was often an actual shortage of food and supplies, due to varying conditions, such as particular seasons or unusual demands. This is indicated by an announcement in a Houston newspaper:

Important to Emigrants. — The crowd of travellers on the road between Nacogdoches and Washington has lately been so great that provisions have become quite scarce along the whole route. The emigrating families, therefore, who are journeying westward will do well to provide themselves near Nacogdoches or San Augustine, with a sufficiency of provisions to supply them their wants until they can reach the Brazos.<sup>14</sup>

People living in cities and depending in part on the local merchants for their supplies found the prices of all commodities and foodstuffs very high, and quite often these were hard to get at any price. As early as December 18, 1836, Clopper writes: "Provision is very scarce and hard to get. Flour is now selling at Lynch's at \$18. per bbl., and I am told it is 20 on the Brazos. Sugar 20 cts per lb."<sup>15</sup> Lubbock, a merchant in Houston in 1837, made a good profit by selling flour at \$30 a barrel and coffee at 25 cents a pound. An examination of the price lists of commodities in Houston and Galveston in 1838 and 1839 reveals: Flour \$30 bbl.; coffee 25c lb.; bacon 25c lb.; cheese 50c lb.; eggs \$2 doz.; butter \$1 lb.; rice 25c lb.; whiskey \$2 gallon.<sup>16</sup> These prices continued high throughout the time of the Republic; as late as December, 1845, James Addison writes that "goods, groceries and in fact everything except coffee is very high. Flour is selling at \$12 per Barrel

---

<sup>14</sup> A. M. Clopper to Nicholas Clopper, Dec. 18, 1834, *Clopper Correspondence 1834-1838, Quarterly*, XIII, p. 137.

<sup>15</sup> A. M. Clopper to Nicholas Clopper, Dec. 18, 1834, *Clopper Correspondence 1834 to 1838, Quarterly*, XIII, p. 137.

<sup>16</sup> James E. Winston, *Notes on Commercial Relations Between New Orleans and Texan Ports, 1838-1839, Quarterly*, XXXIV, p. 105.

and coffee at 12c per pound [and] everything according[ly]."<sup>17</sup>

The people living in the less settled districts, especially in the West, far removed from the ports of entry and from the transportation routes, such as they were, were particularly pressed for supplies; in most cases supplies could not be procured at all. The Houston paper comments on this in 1838, and offers it as an explanation as to why the Congressmen "have a singular aversion to visit the western districts."<sup>18</sup> Conditions evidently did not improve a great deal when the capital was moved to Austin, for as late as 1845 Dr. Moses Johnson wrote to his wife and asked her to send some quinine as he was out and there was none to be had at the capital.

With existing conditions anything might have been expected, and so it is not surprising to notice that Jesse Hord records in his diary: "We traveled all day through an uninhabited pine country, arriving at a tavern on the river Neches. A tavern? Yes; one without meat, coffee or vegetables — milk out of the question." Hord adds, however, that more travelers arrived at the inn, and that the proprietor had a hog killed and prepared for the guests, so that it was possible for them to eat a fried pork supper at ten o'clock.

Naturally the blame for the scarcity of supplies was placed on the storekeepers; really the cause lay deeper. The businessman, with an eye to profits, was always ready to equip his place of business with all the necessities, but it must be remembered that this was the frontier, and therefore, all his efforts were often in vain. Moses Evans, a Washington merchant, wrote to General Hunt at Galveston on May 21, 1845:

I have not received any word from you since you left this place in relation to the Groceries that you were to purchase for me, if you have purchased them you will please send them by the first opportunity as I stand in great need of them at this time. Congress will soon meet and I wish to have them at this place during the session.<sup>19</sup>

---

<sup>17</sup> J. H. Addison to O. M. Addison, Dec. 8, 1845, MS., *Addison Papers*.

<sup>18</sup> *Telegraph and Texas Register*, July 7, 1838.

<sup>19</sup> Moses Evans to M. Hunt, May 21, 1845. MS., *Hunt Papers*, 1838-1848, Texas State Library, Austin, Texas.

Evans asked Hunt to use his land certificates and exchange them for the groceries, but evidently no groceries were available, for Evans wrote again the following week:

I Would be Glad If that you Would Send me Some Groceries as I am in particular Need. . . . I wish you to Send Me Brandy Whiskey Wines & Cigars of the best quality all and every thing that you think would Come under my line of business, Brown & Loaf sugar &c . . . .<sup>20</sup>

This shortage can best be explained by the irregular shipping and also by an irregular demand, one which could not be gauged accurately since there was no way of estimating the number of immigrants or the other variable factors that to this day present problems in well-established communities. Even commodities that the retail merchant got from the farmers and plantation owners were obtained quite irregularly. An examination of the records of a slave plantation reveals that eggs (by the keg), butter, pecans, tallow, soap, chickens, turkeys and various other domesticated fowls and meats, were sold to the stores. But the sales were never in large quantities nor were they made at regular intervals.

Whenever a merchant was fortunate enough to procure supplies he usually inserted an advertisement to that effect in the newspaper; the notice frequently listed the entire stock offered for sale. Anthony Blandon's Brazoria store is typical:

Super fine and fancy clothing, saddlery, sugar, coffee, flour, corn, Havana cigars, rice, tea, candles, rope, bagging, cheese, biscuits, crackers, pilot bread, tongues, hams, bacon, oil, codfish, madeira, port, claret, and, other superior wines, brandy, fruits, syrup, pickles, cordials, rum, gin, whiskey, shoes, hats, bridles and stirrups.<sup>21</sup>

Again it must be pointed out that there were some people in the Republic who, on account of their position in society, and because they were financially independent, could live a life of comparative ease and comfort; these people were not inconvenienced by the general dearth of supplies and pro-

---

<sup>20</sup> Evans to Hunt, May, 25, 1845, MS., *Hunt Papers*.

<sup>21</sup> *Telegraph and Texas Register*, March 28, 1837.

visions. It is from the pen of one of these that we get a picture of life as it was led in the McKinney home at Quintana:

We passed a day or two with Mrs. McKenney at Quintana [Mrs. Holley wrote to her daughter]. Mr. Toby was there from New Orleans — & Mr. Williams, just from the States — It is very pleasant there — was delightful riding on the beach — where 5 miles of our road lay. . . . They live remarkably well there — having everything they want from New Orleans — a brig and schooner came while we were there & [they] are constantly coming.<sup>22</sup>

In providing clothes for himself and family, the pioneer faced a problem greatly similar to that of obtaining food. The people were forced to practice all sorts of economies; there was not a great deal of money available, and these were frontier conditions, so that a great many of the colonists made their own clothes at home. The loom and spinning wheel were ordinary household objects, and the style and perfection of the individual garments depended on the ability of the womenfolk. Sometimes the outer garments were made of buckskin, and it was not an unusual sight to see men attired in this fashion. The women also dressed very plainly; they wore calico if it was obtainable; if not they had to be content with homespun. "Store clothes" in the shape of manufactured garments were rare indeed. An examination of a list of merchandise offered to the public by the A. G. Compton Store of Houston, one of the best-stocked stores of the Republic, reveals that the retailer offered a great variety of goods that the individual would have had difficulty in making at home, such as "dancing pumps, ladies' and misses' dancing pumps and walking shoes," or "ladies' black, white, and colored kid, silk, cotton and woolen gloves"; stockings were likewise offered in all varieties. The only manufactured garment, or ready-to-wear article of common use, that Compton had for sale was "merino shirts" — and this was an exceptionally well-supplied store. However, every variety of cloth was offered: "brown and white domestic cotton, colored American cambrics, black and colored merinos, calicoes, gingham, crepes, silks."<sup>23</sup>

<sup>22</sup> Holley to Brand, Feb. 8, 1838, MS., *Holley Letters*.

<sup>23</sup> *Telegraph and Texas Register*, Dec. 22, 1838.

The wardrobe of the early Texan was not confined entirely to homemade clothes. Balls, parties, weddings, and other gala celebrations were always graced by the Texan attired in his best. At these gatherings "the styles were somewhat varied according to the period at which the wearer migrated,"<sup>24</sup> but the clothes were of good material. Elaborate velvet suits, with highly ornamented boots, fluffed waistcoats, flowing ties and scarfs of purple silk or checked cotton were in evidence. Lubbock describes the costumes of some of the people who attended a ball given in Houston in 1837:

He was of course the hero of the day [speaking of President Houston] and his dress on this occasion was unique and somewhat striking. His ruffled shirt, scarlet cassimere waistcoat and suit of black silk velvet, corded with gold, was admirably adapted to set off his fine, tall figure; his boots, with short red tops, were laced and folded down in such a way as to reach but little above the ankles, and were finished at the heels with silver spurs. The spurs were, of course, quite a useless adornment, but they were in those days so commonly worn as to seem almost a part of the boots. . . . Mrs. Baker's dress of white satin, with black lace overdress, corresponded in elegance with that of her escort, [Houston] and the dresses of most of the other ladies were likewise rich and tasteful. Some wore white mull, with satin trimmings; others were dressed in white and colored satins, but naturally in so large an assembly, gathered from many different places, there was great variety in the quality of costumes.

The shortcomings of frontier food and clothes were often considerable, but even in their most acute form they could be endured with a light heart by the settlers who were ready for hardships. The same cannot be said of sickness. The most common form of sickness was fever, congestive and bilious. The people living in the bottom lands along the rivers, particularly the Guadalupe, Colorado, Brazos, and Trinity, and the inhabitants of seacoast cities like Galveston and Houston, were particularly subject to these fevers. They came at intervals, and naturally their severity could not be foretold. That they were severe cannot be doubted. In October, 1839, Wilkens wrote:

---

<sup>24</sup> Noah Smithwick, *Evolution of a State* (Austin, 1900), p. 153.

Houston at present is very sickly . . . there is scarcely a day passes that we have not six or eight funerals . . . the doctors have come to the conclusion that we have yellow fever here — also at Galveston.<sup>25</sup>

A less severe siege of fevers had been experienced by the Houston citizens two years previously:

Persons recently from Houston state that the city presents rather a gloomy appearance and worse in prospect. At the time our informant left there was much sickness, principally fevers — of which there had been cases of yellow congestive and bilious.<sup>26</sup>

In general the western section, being at a higher elevation and farther removed from the marshy lands, escaped these fevers. This was one of the advantages considered in 1838 by the commissioners appointed to find a site for the permanent seat of government, and it was not the least of the factors influencing their choice in favor of the western city of Austin.

The struggle against sickness was rendered all the more difficult because of the dearth of good physicians. The medical profession was not on the same high plane that it is today, and so it frequently happened that the doctor, in addition to his regular profession was "at the same time a small Planter & Farmer."<sup>27</sup> Nor could competent service be expected when the infirm, for one reason or another, could not personally consult a doctor. It is impossible to judge to what extent people were forced to obtain their medical advice through correspondence, but evidently there were very many cases. In the correspondence of Dr. Ashbel Smith many private professional letters of this type are filed. Newspaper advertisements also contain references to the practice: "Persons living in the country may by sending a statement of their complaints have remedies forwarded to any part of the country by making a remittance."<sup>28</sup>

<sup>25</sup> R. R. Wilkens to Lamar, Oct. 15, 1839, *Lamar Papers*, III, p. 134.

<sup>26</sup> Ernest Winkler, *Seat of Government Quarterly*, X, p. 187, cites *The Matagorda Bulletin* for Oct. 25, 1837.

<sup>27</sup> Bollaert, *Manuscript*, II, p. 183.

<sup>28</sup> *Telegraph and Texas Register*, April 4, 1837.



This haphazard practice of medicine presented such evident dangers that the legislature of the Republic considered ways of improving it. A real step forward was taken when, on December 14, 1837, the Government of the Republic passed a law regulating the medical profession. A board of "Medical Censors" was created and empowered to examine all applicants and grant licenses to such as satisfactorily gave evidence of their qualifications.

This law undoubtedly improved the personnel of the profession but it did not immediately act in favor of the colonists. The service offered was more competent probably, but the rates were still too high. Some idea of prices may be gathered by examining the rates set down by the Medical and Surgical Society of Houston:

When first called to a patient, the charge for one visit shall be five dollars. After nine o'clock, P.M., the charges for professional visits shall be doubled in all cases. For visits out of the limits of the city, an extra charge of one dollar a mile during the day, and two dollars a mile at night.<sup>29</sup>

Individuals coming to Texas from the more settled and better established communities were often adversely impressed. An Englishman wrote from Galveston in 1844: "Medical attendance is very expensive, and Nurses for the sick are difficult to be procured. For about twelve days' Medical attendance, Medicine, etc., during my illness . . . I had to pay about Sixty-five pounds Sterling."<sup>30</sup> The story is not entirely one-sided, however; the physician had his worries also. In a country that was not on a sound financial basis, and where there was an actual shortage of a circulating medium, anything might be expected in lieu of cash, and so it often happened that the doctor had to be content to take "cows & calves, horses, pigs, cotton, etc., etc.," in exchange for his services."<sup>31</sup>

The profession was not without its noble souls. Occasionally a man was found who gave his services generously and gratuitously. Such a man was Doctor Weidemann of San An-

<sup>29</sup> Kennedy, *Texas*, II, p. 415.

<sup>30</sup> British Correspondence Concerning Texas, *Quarterly*, XIX, p. 98.

<sup>31</sup> Bollaert, *Manuscript*, II, p. 183.

tonio. A Russian by descent, a world traveler, and a linguist of note, Doctor Weidemann settled in San Antonio in the forties and soon established an enviable reputation for devotedness and skillful attention to the sick and wounded.

It has been pointed out that the large majority of the people in Texas had to struggle for their existence, that great efforts were put forth in the very beginning with the erection of a house, and that the striving did not end, but in a sense really began only then. It has also been pointed out that there were some well-to-do people who led a life of ease — a rare set indeed in the early history of the Texas people — but interesting to us if for no other reason than to insist, by contrast, on the ordinary every-day struggle of the majority. Bollaert, who had experience in dealing with people of leisure in England, gives a good first-hand account of the life of the leisure class in Galveston. Here is what he has to say:

About sunrise prudent and judicious people will rise, prepare their toilette, clad themselves lightly, walk or work in the gardens, then ride or bathe on the seashore — at half past 7 A.M. bells may be heard ringing from the different Hotels; but in the tones of the "Tremont" I can almost fancy the accompaniment to the words "Come to breakfast come!" The bells ring for about five minutes — stop short — the sluggards hold counsel of war with themselves, as to the propriety of "turning out." Now then, under the Tremont Verandah the boarders and others meet — words of recognition take place — some of the individuals may indulge in the "weed" *per humo* and *per masticato*.

A small bell is now rung when all take their places at the breakfast table — the ladies at the top. We all appear to suffer a little langor, the air is sultry — the sea breeze has not set in — we get this meal — which is a most excellent *dejeuner[sic] a la fourchette* — retire, light the gentle Havana, discuss the politics of the day — a small quantity of whittling going on — but the quantity of wood thus destroyed will depend upon the excited state of the times &c. Then those who have business attend to it — idlers may return to their rooms, read — and these idlers and visitors read a great deal — Bulwer's last novel of Zanoni is here, this is a great favorite — then before dinner, billiards or ninepins may be played. At the bar of the Tremont lunch is laid — but to partake would be sinful, considering the

excellent dinner that Capt. Seymore has in preparation, which is enhanced by the promptitude of his domestics. "Come, come, to dinner come" the bell announces this most important of meals. We congregate again under the Verandah — impart to each other news etc. — probably take an iced mint-julip — the ice comes from U. States — a glass of Madera and bitters etc., etc. Then the little bell's inviting strain says "Dinner's on the table." In a moment the crowd of carnivore march for the dining room, where a dinner will be found prepared and arranged so as to meet our taste and wishes. Moreover one may enjoy a bottle of wine as the duties are low. Generally speaking they do not sit long at table — but sometimes a few of the jovial ones huddle together, and oftentimes a few songs are heard. Not many of my Texas friends sing, but they appear very fond of singing and music.

Towards 4 or 5 o'clock pairties [*sic*] are made to go fishing on the beach with the seine — or a gallop on the prairie till dark — when "come, come, to supper come" is the signal to prepare for this meal — it is generally a tea supper — a quiet smoke in the Verandah — Long chats — and then each one off to some evening party or other — where if there be no dancing there is music and singing — pretty good hours are kept — but it does not require much persuation [*sic*] to sit for an hour or two in the cool of the evening, sup a mint-julip — touch a guitar and sing the song most loved.<sup>32</sup>

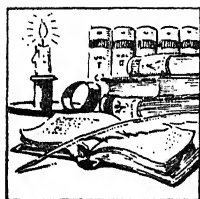
<sup>32</sup> Bollaert, *Manuscript*, I, p. 30.



## The First Railroad in Texas



A company began building in 1850, and five years later, thirty-two miles of track, from the Brazos River, opposite Richmond, to Harrisburg (now a part of the Southern Pacific Lines) were finished. Railroad companies were then offered more than 10,000 acres of land for every mile of track laid, and were lent money from the school fund of the State, in order to encourage construction.



# LAW COURTS IN EARLY TEXAS

By JOSEPH WILLIAM SCHMITZ, S. M.

A HUNDRED and ten years ago the opinion was widely circulated and generally accepted that the Republic of Texas was a country filled with outlaws and banditti of every description. Much has been written about the early Texans and their utter disregard for law and order; some of it is true, much half-true, and a great deal of it is utterly false.

When reading about the influence of law and the legal system on the average Texan during the time of the Republic, one is confronted with a great many conflicting reports. Some would have us believe that Texas was "a country filled with habitual liars, drunkards, blasphemers, slanderers, sanguinary gamesters and cold-blooded assassins."<sup>1</sup> Or they thoroughly agree with the opinion Francis Sheridan expressed when he wrote to a friend in England: "Murder and every other crime is of great frequency in Texas and the perpetrators escape with the greatest impunity . . . It is considered unsafe to walk through the streets of the principal towns without being armed . . . The Bowie Knife is the weapon most in vogue."<sup>2</sup>

Others insist that "there are few countries, either old or new, where good order is so well appreciated, and the laws so generally respected and maintained by a force of public opinion," and they point out that "Texas has been much maligned by the unfriendly representations of the people of the northern states."<sup>3</sup> Before Mrs. Houstoun visited Texas in the early forties, she had heard many adverse reports concern-

<sup>1</sup> N. Doran Maillard, *Texas* (London, 1842), p. 206.

<sup>2</sup> Sheridan to Garraway, July 12, 1840, *British Correspondence, Quarterly* XV, p. 221.

<sup>3</sup> Arthur Ikin, *Texas* (London, 1841), p. 74.

ing the people; after she left the country she thus recorded her impressions: "If we are to believe many of the writers of today, murders are to be met at every town, life is not safe . . . private property is never respected . . . These accusations are almost entirely false . . . by a glance at the general character of the people, one must feel that they are undeserved."<sup>4</sup>

It is highly probable that all the writers of these reports were right — each wrote from his own point of view. Those who expected to find the people exhibit the virtues of convent life were certainly disappointed, and they did not hesitate to state their opinions, usually with a bitterness in proportion to their disappointment. The others, expecting to find a hard-drinking, jovial band of pioneers, men and women to whom the worst had already happened, were likewise forced to change their opinion; they concluded that the Texans were quite a law-abiding set of people.

An examination of the files of the newspapers of the Republic throws some light on the Texans' attitude toward law. The *Telegraph and Texas Register* carried, on June 24, 1837, this item:

The lives of our citizens are frequently endangered by the careless use of fire-arms which are hourly discharged in the precincts of the city.

A few months later the same paper gave an account of the murder of Mr. Kelcy by a man named Hubbard. The writer of the article said that this was the first case in Houston in which someone had "fallen a victim to the disgraceful custom of wearing deadly weapons."<sup>5</sup> And about a half year later we find the following:

Duelling. We rejoice to state that although no less than a dozen challenges have been presented and accepted by various individuals in this city [Houston] within the last three months, not a single duel has taken place.<sup>6</sup>

---

<sup>4</sup> Mrs. Mathilda Houstoun, *Texas and the Gulf of Mexico* (Philadelphia, 1845), p. 187.

<sup>5</sup> *Telegraph and Texas Register*, Sept. 23, 1837.

<sup>6</sup> *Ibid.*, Feb. 24, 1838.

This good record evidently was kept up for some months, and the editor devoted an editorial to congratulating his fellow-citizens on this record:

It must be a matter of sincere pleasure to every philanthropist that not a single duel has occurred in this portion of Texas for many months.<sup>7</sup>

Not only was progress made in lessening the number of duels, but it seems that conduct in general was on the upgrade, for we read in the same paper under a still later date: "We are glad to find that our citizens are gradually relinquishing the practice of wearing weapons."<sup>8</sup>

Some time after this the editor suddenly became indignant at the conduct of the citizens and complained of the large number of murders perpetrated or attempted.

Almost every mail that has reached us for the last few weeks, has brought accounts of some petty re-encounter or bloody brawl, that has resulted in the death or wounding of some individual . . . . We shall rejoice when our unhappy Republic shall cease to be the arena of private feuds and disgraceful brawls, that tend alike to degrade those who engage in them, and to fasten opprobrium upon the national character.<sup>9</sup>

Those inclined to lawlessness were certainly not entirely deterred by the possibility of having their offense brought before a court composed of a personnel capable of thoroughly analyzing the case. Courts of this type were extremely rare, if they existed at all. A fair idea of the lack of dignity and decorum that was usually found in a courtroom may be gathered from this description given to us by William E. Bollaert, an English visitor:

There was a very gentlemanly man as Judge — Morriss. The District Attorney as prosecution for the Republic [was] opposed by a half a dozen lawyers — ready of speech and loads of references — from Magna Charter upwards. The Court was over a crockery store used on Sunday for a

---

<sup>7</sup> *Ibid.*, April 21, 1838.

<sup>8</sup> *Ibid.*, May 5, 1838.

<sup>9</sup> *Ibid.*, Jan. 19, 1842.

Methodist Chapel — the Judge [was] chewing his quid — thrown back in his chair — his legs thrown up on his desk — the District Attorney [was] chewing and smoking. The Counsel for the Prisoner Do Do & [there was] a small quantity of whittling . . . I saw the weed in the mouth of some of the lookers on. Order was kept in the Court — but ever and anon [there was] a squirt of Tobacco juice on the floor.<sup>10</sup>

However, even courts of this kind are capable of dispensing speedy justice — and of doing so without much formality. This point is well illustrated by reading several entries in the diary of J. H. Herndon, a Kentucky citizen who made a trip through Texas in 1837-1838. Herndon was particularly interested in a case that was before the Houston Bar, and wrote the highlights of it in his diary. A faithful reproduction of the diary tells the story:

*March 22/1838.* Fine day — criminals whip[pe]d at the post — Jones convicted of murder. A plainer case than which has seldom been submitted to a jury.

*March 23/1838.* Quick convicted of Murder — a case similar to Jones's. Killed Mandord Wood, a Bro. of Ferdinando and Benj. Wood, N. Y. — Quick a savage blood thirsty, malicious looking devil. Grand Jury disch[ar]g[e]d after having presented 270 Indict[ment]s 4 for Murder 4 treason 8 arson 40 Larceny — The Bar gave a supper to the Grand Jury — high meeting, some gloriously drunk.

*March 24/38.* Judge Robertson sentenced John Quick and James Jones to be hung on Wednesday next between the hours of 10 & 2 P.M. — An excellent sentence.

*March 25/38.* All peaceable — a decided reform in the morals of Houston.

*25th.* Jones The Convict attempted to kill himself by shooting but shot over his head. *28th.* A delightful day, worthy of other deeds — 140 men order'd out to guard the Criminals to the gallows — a concourse of from 2000 to 3000 persons on the ground and among the whole not a single sympathetic tear was dropped — Quick addressed the crowd in a stern composed & hardened manner entirely unmoved up to the moment of swinging off the cart — Jones seemed frightened altho' as hardened in crime as Quick — They swung off at 2 o'clock P.M. and were cut down in 35 minutes not having made the slightest struggle.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>10</sup> William E. Bollaert, *Manuscript*, p. 191 (Newberry Library, Chicago, Ill.).

<sup>11</sup> H. Herndon, *Diary*, University of Texas.

This probably was a most unusual occurrence since it was given great prominence in the *Houston Telegraph*. The editor of that paper made a three-column story out of the affair, but did not really add anything to Herndon's account.<sup>12</sup>

Sensational happenings of this character evidently did much to instill fear into the people and prompt them to conduct themselves in such a way as to avoid anything that might bring them in contact with the courts. Still, to repeat, it was not the judicial system that influenced the citizens and made them law-abiding. There was a much more powerful influence on right conduct than all that: it was the justice that was meted out by groups of citizens who were interested in preserving order, and who were not remiss about using their own methods and devices for ridding the neighborhood of all undesirables.<sup>13</sup> But that is another story.

---

<sup>12</sup> *Telegraph and Texas Register*, March 31, 1838.

<sup>13</sup> *Houstoun, Texas*, p. 187.



## Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo

One of the most important treaties ever signed by the United States was the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, February 2, 1848, wherein Mexico acknowledged the loss of Texas, and ceded to the United States a vast territory comprising most of the present Rocky Mountain and Pacific Coast states. Mexico received in return \$15,000,000. This treaty ended also the Mexican War which had arisen over the Southwest Texas boundary dispute.



## "Staked Plains"

The "Staked Plains" in West Texas were so designated by the early Spanish hunters because stakes were driven to indicate routes across this great level expanse of country — a treeless plain.



# AUGUST IN TEXAS



6, 1840, a wild band of Indians raided, sacked and robbed every house in the village of Linnville, on the bay, then burned the houses in the town before leaving. Most of the settlers had fled to boats near by but some of them were captured, the men being killed and the women and children taken captive.

7, 1807, General Memucan Hunt, after whom Hunt County was named, was born in North Carolina. He served as minister from Texas to the United States during Sam Houston's first term as President of the Lone Star Republic.

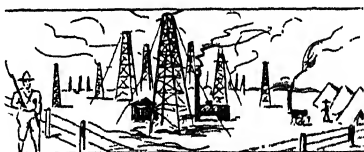
9, 1537, Cabeza de Vaca reached Lisbon, where he wrote an account of his journey through Texas. He was honored and made governor of Paraguay in 1540 but was recalled to Spain on trumped-up charges and thrown into prison. He died in obscurity.



12, is Texas Pioneers' Day, a day for special observance in Texas.

17, 1786, David Crockett, after whom Crockett County was named, was born in Tennessee.

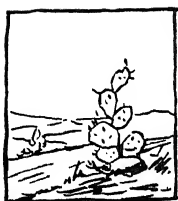
AUGUST 22, 1798, Daniel Montague after whom Montague County was named, was born at South Hadley, Mass. He came to Texas in the fall of 1836 and became one of the earliest land surveyors of the state.



17, 1931, will long be remembered in the East Texas oil field as the date Governor Ross S. Sterling ordered National Guard troops into the big field which was placed under martial law. The drastic order was issued after the Railroad Commission had been stopped by injunction in enforcing proration which had brought chaotic conditions to the area.

18, 1813, is a memorable date. It was then that 850 Americans, fighting for the republicans of Mexico, were trapped and massacred (93 escaped) near San Antonio by the Spaniards under Arredondo.

22, 1809, George Wilkins Kendall, after whom Kendall County is named, was born at Mount Vernon, New Hampshire. He established the New Orleans *Picayune*, and later moved to a large ranch in what is now known as Kendall County, where he lived the last ten years of his life.



# ALONG TRAILS OF EARLY TEXAS

By ETTIE M. DOUGHTY

WHEN TEXAS was still a frontier territory, the greater part of it unknown and undeveloped, the adventurous early American settlers eagerly made their way through its boundaries with the lure of a future of wealth or of power. A restlessness born of the urge for adventure, and of necessity, led them onward through the unexplored regions as they pushed farther into the interior. Day by day the paths they made became more distinct and surer of destination, and it was but a few years until footpaths became well-marked trails which linked with other trails made by neighboring colonists, and the business of commerce began.

To us, more than a century later, those early trails have the glamour of romance, for they must have been beautiful in their primeval glory of wide-spreading trees, tangled vines and undergrowths, sparkling streams, and acres of wild flowers in riotous masses of color. Then, too, the probability of Indians lurking on the trail or the print of bear or other wild animal tracks freshly made added a spice of danger to stir the blood.

In time, as civilization advanced in Texas, these trails became much more valuable and were given names according to their origins. Among the most important of these trails were the early cattle trails that were the highways along which much of the growing wealth of the people was transported as their needs increased and their social life expanded.

In every newly settled section of a country there must develop some industry that brings in currency which the settlers may use as a medium of exchange to satisfy their physical needs — as well as develop their environment — a “money crop” as it is commonly called. This money crop in the early days of Texas materialized in the raising of beef cattle. Many of the settlers began to raise cattle as their chief industry, and

almost every homesteader had, besides his food crops, a few cattle which were sold to the cattlemen.

Cattle were at first raised on the "open range" or unfenced tracts of land and were moved farther northward as the grass supply gave out. They literally "ate their way" along the trail to the shipping points in Kansas, for thousands of acres of the most valuable hay grew rankly outspread across the country, free for the taking. "Forney hay," cut and baled as late as the nineties around Forney, a few miles east of Dallas, was noted in the St. Louis and Chicago markets as desirable stock food, and contributed its share to the development of the "money crops" in Texas. The open range in time gave way to the great ranches enclosed by fences, and it was here that the foundations of many great fortunes were laid.

Cattle were driven in the spring over the trail to the nearest railway point, which was then in Kansas, and there sold to buyers who had come down from Chicago or other markets. Sometimes the ranchmen sent their cattle in freight cars in charge of their own men and sold them after they reached the cities.

The railroads were slowly pushing their way westward from eastern and northern points and by 1867 had reached Abilene, Kansas. Later on, the road was extended to Leavenworth and Dodge City, and those places in turn became loading stations for the great herds of beef cattle driven up the trails from Texas before, and also following, the Civil War.

An interesting point about trail drivers of the period which is worthy of note, according to one source of information, was that a large per cent of them were Confederate veterans and some of them were the descendants of the heroes of the Alamo, Goliad, and San Jacinto.

The period from 1867 to 1895 is known as the "Trail Driving Period." One of the most successful old trail drivers relates that an average of 350,000 cattle was driven over the trails from Texas to Kansas each year for twenty-eight years. At ten dollars per head this made \$98,000,000, which with one million horse stock at the same price — making ten million dollars more — made an almost incredible amount of wealth brought back to Texas and used in the development of the new and growing state. This great total resulted because of the daring experiments of a few fearless men who made the start in the earlier years of 1867 and 1868. They

found a market for the great herds accumulating at home — the staple crop of Texas — and their example led to a prosperity shared by all the people. This apparently “easy money” attracted attention in the North and East and even in England, and stimulated immigration as well as brought much capital to Texas. A few ranches were owned for years by “absentee landlords” in England until the Texas Legislature passed the “alien land law,” requiring naturalization and residence.

Life along the trails of pioneer days, while picturesque, was not always something to sing about unless one should have the urge for epic poetry. The cattlemen always had to face many dangers along the trail to get their herds to market. Sudden hailstorms, blizzards, boggy river crossings, and stampedes were the usual experiences and along with these were foes such as wild animals and wily Indians, and even white cattle thieves, who were after all they might get, even to the point of committing murder for it.

Stampeding was one of the greatest trials of the cattle drivers, for cattle were easily scared at anything unusual. It took continuous vigilance to keep the herds at ease and the cowmen early learned the value of a familiar voice in controlling the cattle.

The cowboys sang as they rode trail and from this custom grew the colorful trail-driving songs which have their fascination even today. Who can help but fall under the spell of “Good-Bye, Old Paint,” “Life on the Range,” or the “Old Chisholm Trail,” with their plaintive melodies of the days of long ago! There is also a tradition that one of the trail drivers played his fiddle often to good effect as the herd went northward, thus proving the old saying that “music hath charms to soothe the savage breast.”

Many an interesting narrative of hair-raising experiences on the trail is on record and one or two of these accounts should find their place in this story.

One trail driver relates that in 1871 he was driving a large herd of cattle to Fort Harker in the hills near Ellsworth, Kansas, and was captured by the Osage Indians after he had crossed the Cimarron River. The Indians were on the warpath and had their faces painted half red and half black. They held him captive for an hour and were powwowing about plans to scalp him when he drew their attention

to a great cloud of dust in the distance, which indicated the approach of a large herd of cattle. Since this meant more white men and guns, they turned the Texan loose and fled.

Another veteran of the trail tells in a quizzically humorous way that after crossing Red River on the way to Kansas, the things of interest and disinterest that accompanied the driver of cattle were "many stampedes, sleepless nights, gyp water, and poor chuck."

In spite of all the hardships, though, the cowboys or trail drivers enjoyed the life and were men of honesty and character, who helped to build the foundations of the state in integrity and with far-seeing vision.

The most noted trail in song and story and the most valuable one from a commercial point of view was probably the Old Chisholm Trail, which led from San Antonio, Texas, northward to Red River Crossing on the Indian Territory boundary. This crossing was southeast of the present town of Fletcher, Oklahoma, and east of Terral, Oklahoma. This trail passed through New Braunfels, San Marcos, Austin, Georgetown, Belton, Hillsboro, old Fort Graham, Cleburne, and Fort Worth. At Red River Crossing it joined the original trail made by Jesse Chisholm, a half-breed Indian trader who had blazed the way from Wichita, Kansas, down into the Indian Territory. Briefly sketching the route of this original trail, it began near Wichita, Kansas, and touched both Wellington and Caldwell in that state. From these points it led through the present Oklahoma towns of Renfro, Medford, Jefferson, Kingfisher, Okarche, Darlington Agency, Anadarko and Fort Sill.

Jesse Chisholm, originally from Tennessee, had moved with his people, the Cherokees, first to the mountains of western Arkansas and later farther westward into the Indian Territory. He was a valuable member among the many tribes, being known as honest, reliable, and tactful, with a talent for pathfinding and for peacemaking. At the opening of the Civil War, Chisholm helped a band of Indians to locate up in the Kansas lands far away from war influences and remained there with them, neutral, until the war was over. In 1865, following his natural instincts as a trader, he assembled an outfit of wagons loaded with furs, hides, red calico, beads, paint and other supplies (but no whisky) for

the Indians of the Wichita Valley. Chisholm also drove one hundred wild ponies along with the wagons, and the tracks made by the Chisholm wagon train were the beginning of what the Indians themselves called the Chisholm Trail.

This trail was soon well marked by the feet of thousands of other ponies driven by the Indians to various markets among the scattered tribes in Oklahoma and Kansas. Chisholm laid out this trail over wild, unexplored country, and it was a long time before there were any established stations along the route.

Pond Creek was one of the first permanent stations along the Chisholm Trail and was first called the Sewell Stockade. This was near the present town of Jefferson, Oklahoma. Darlington Agency was established in 1869 and Fort Reno in 1874. Marks of the old trail are still visible at points along the route, where the modern U. S. Highway touches it here and there, following the same direction.

In the late seventies it became necessary to move the old Chisholm cattle trail farther westward in Texas, as lands along the old trail were being taken up by farmers who objected to the cattle crossing their lands and causing damage. The trail, as changed, led through a series of counties, beginning with Wilson and passing through Bexar at San Antonio, and continued almost due northward up into Indian Territory by way of Doan's Crossing about sixty miles up the Red River from the Old Red River Crossing. This trail was named the Texas Cattle Trail and led in more of a general north to northwesterly direction to Dodge City, Kansas.

The Old Chisholm Trail, named for Jesse Chisholm of Indian Territory, Oklahoma, must not be confused with the Chisum Trail, which was located much farther west in Texas. This trail was named for John S. Chisum, a wealthy pioneer ranchman, who had moved from East Texas to Paris in Lamar County, later to Bolivar in Denton County, and in 1864 to Concho County in the far western part of Texas.

In 1873, John Chisum, though highly prosperous, saw that the days of free range for cattle were about over, as settlers were taking out many land patents and converting the country into great farms under fences. He decided it was wise to move, so he drove his great herds of cattle to South Spring near Roswell, New Mexico, where he built a magnificent ranch house and lived until his death. It is said to be

very doubtful that John Chisum himself ever went over the trail to Kansas, as he usually sold his cattle on the trail when he found buyers who offered a fair price. This Chisum trail was first known as the old Butterfield Route, a stagecoach road for the Wells-Fargo Express Company, organized in 1858.

The Butterfield Route passed through Sherman, Texas, going west of Fort Worth by way of Ben Ficklin, the old county seat of Tom Green County, near San Angelo. It led up the South Concho River, crossed the Pecos at Horsehead Crossing and turned northward following the Pecos to Roswell, New Mexico.

Later on, in 1856, Messrs. Charles Goodnight and Oliver Loving drove their herds over this route from Ben Ficklin to Horsehead Crossing, and on up the South Concho to Roswell, New Mexico. This trail was known by some as the Goodnight-Loving Trail. It was in the summer of this year that John S. Chisum followed the same route to Roswell. These two routes coincided with the Horsehead Route.

The Sedalia Route was first used in 1857 for driving cattle from Texas to Quincy, Illinois. From an old map it seems to connect up with the Horsehead Crossing trail, taking a northeast direction via Waco to Bolivar, in North Texas, then turning more nearly north to Fort Gibson in Northeast Oklahoma, and onward to Sedalia, Missouri.

There were also other cattle trails leading from the ranges of Texas, and one of these was known as the Opelousas Route, which extended from Goliad via Columbus, Richmond, Liberty, and Orange to Opelousas, Louisiana. Another route to Louisiana led to Shreveport from Denton and adjoining counties via Grayson, Hunt, Red River, and Cass counties in Northeast Texas. Many of the herds driven over the trails to Louisiana were for the Confederate Army. Cattle routes to Mexico led out from Harper, Texas, to Fort McKavett, Horsehead Crossing, Fort Stockton, and Presidio on the Rio Grande via the South Concho.

Besides the cattle trails of long ago, Texas had other colorful routes. First among these was probably the Old Spanish Trail, which entered Texas at Orange, passing on through what is now Beaumont and on to Houston, thence to San Antonio and on to El Paso, where it left Texas and proceeded to California. One-third of the length of the Old

Spanish Trail from St. Augustine, Florida, to San Diego, California, lay in Texas.

El Camino Real was the official trail between Mexico and Louisiana. It entered Texas on the east from Natchitoches, Louisiana, passing via the Nacogdoches and Crockett of today to San Antonio, thence to Eagle Pass and into Mexico. This road also has two other names, the part from San Antonio to Nacogdoches being called the Old Nacogdoches Road and the portion from San Antonio to Eagle Pass, the Old San Antonio Road.

The Labadie Trail was a contraband trail antedating El Camino Real by many years. It almost paralleled El Camino Real but was fifty miles or more to the southward. Tradition says that while hunting in East Texas, the Bowie brothers had explored the Labadie Trail, which they later used to their own profit.

An interesting story comes to us concerning this mysterious trail and the Bowie brothers. LaFitte, the pirate, brought several hundred slaves by ship from Cuba to Mexico to sell at one dollar a pound. The Bowies, being in Mexico at the time, saw the slaves, and realizing what a fine price they would bring in New Orleans, bought them and smuggled them into Louisiana by way of the Labadie Trail, thus reaping a small fortune.

Some years later, after the Americans had begun to settle Texas, an inn was established on the present site of the Yokum place near West Bury, Texas, which was on the main branch of the Labadie Trail. The inn was under suspicion, but it was not proved to be a harbor of thieves until many years later. Human bones were discovered in a well on the place — grim reminders of mystery and a questionable past.

Two roads in the southern part of Texas began at Goliad, which was then an important military post of Texas. These roads were La Bahía Road, which extended north-eastward through LaGrange and Washington to the Trinity, where it joined El Camino Real; the other was the Atascosita Road, which ran eastward through Columbus, San Felipe, and Liberty and after crossing the Neches River, turned northward to Nacogdoches. Another old road which brings us visions of very early days was the Old Comanche Trail, which began east of Nacogdoches near the state line of Loui-



isiana on the Sabine River. It ran through Nacogdoches and on southwestward toward San Antonio, passing a little north of the Old San Antonio Road and crossed the Brazos, Leon, Colorado, and Guadalupe rivers about fifty miles north. The trail ended on the Guadalupe, a little northwest of San Antonio.

There were also two roads of very early origin leading from Mexico into Texas. These were the Herreras Road, used in 1805, which began at Laredo, going northeast to the Nueces River, thence to the Frio, and then turning due north to San Antonio; and the Presidio Road, of 1714, which was the predecessor of the Old San Antonio Road from Eagle Pass to San Antonio.

One of the ancient roads of Texas about which tales of romance and daring were often told was the Chihuahua Trail, a trail of silver.

Over one hundred fifty-seven years ago, in 1790, the most important city in northern Mexico was Chihuahua, the center of one of the richest mining districts in the world. Silver was the most abundant ore found in that section, and the large supply of this rich metal caused the development of a great industry, so a trail to the outside world markets was soon established. This trail was called the Chihuahua Trail, and over it many pack animals, and later Mexican carts, carried the precious minted wealth to San Antonio.

The route of the first Chihuahua Trail led through one hundred and fifty miles of desert country, then through some famous Mexican ranches for two hundred and fifty miles to Presidio del Norte on the Rio Grande. Here the trail turned north to Leon Water Hole and Fort Stockton, thence southward to join the old trail at Horsehead Crossing. Following the route to Pecos Crossing, it ran along the line of the present Southern Pacific Railway to San Antonio.

Several trails to shipping ports were opened up after San Antonio became such a prosperous center for the silver trade, the most important being to Indianola and Galveston. There was also one to Luling, when that city acquired a railroad. The last of the great shipments into San Antonio was a half million dollars' worth of bullion, in 1876. This was handled by August Santleben, who is said to have received a commission of \$17,500 for its transportation to Galveston. He had a

military escort of Mexican dragoons in Mexico and Texas cavalrymen in Texas.

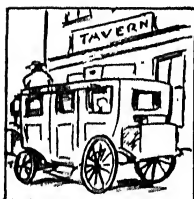
These trails are all great highways now, with smooth surfaces of gravel, macadam, or concrete, and instead of names they bear numbers of State and Federal designation placed on attractive markers at intervals of a few miles to point the motor-riding traveler safely on his way.

And, may we add that the old mysterious and sinister Labadie Trail has cleared itself of its one-time exclusive reputation for questionable deeds and now forms portions of State and Federal highways that are creditable to the section in which they are located.

Footpath, forest trail, wagon road and modern highway delineate the progression of man from primitive to higher civilization, and such progress is a characteristic of the Lone Star State, whose leading business has changed from cattle raising to a diversification of industries which bring profit and contentment to its rapidly growing population.

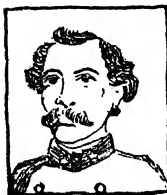


## Hospitality Paid



The town of Anderson, in Grimes County, first was settled as "Alta Mira" and known by that name until Texas was annexed to the Union, when the name was changed by Henry Fanthorp, founder. Its present name was given it in honor of the former Vice President of the Republic of Texas. At first the community centered about Fanthorp's tavern, established there in 1834. Stagecoaches of two lines met there three times a week and Fanthorp's hospitality forced him to convert his home into an inn. Among distinguished visitors to stop there during the period were: General Zachary Taylor, on his way to the Mexican War in 1845, Robert E. Lee, U. S. Grant, and Jefferson Davis.

# SEPTEMBER IN TEXAS



SEPTEMBER 8, 1863, Lieutenant Dick Dowling, with forty-seven men of the Davis Southern Guards, routed 4,000 United States soldiers in twenty-two steamboats and five gunboats from Sabine Pass.

8, 1691, Governor Teran arrived at Espiritu Santo Bay and found a company of seamen waiting for him. This company had arrived by sea from Vera Cruz, which they had left the previous spring. They had a boatload of provisions for the missions.



8, 1900, the great hurricane struck and partially destroyed the city of Galveston, with a loss through hurricane and flood of 6,000 lives and property damage estimated at forty millions.

10, 1803, Robert Kleberg, after whom Kleberg County was named, was born in Westphalia, Germany. After emigrating to Texas in 1835, he participated in the Battle of San Jacinto.

12, 1844, the town of Castroville was founded by Henri de Castro, a Jew of Portuguese origin, who had contracted with President Sam Houston of the Republic for the new colony. Castro, within five years, brought to Texas a total of 5,200 desirable French and German colonists, an enviable record.

15, 1883, The University of Texas first opened its doors to students, located on forty acres set aside in the city of Austin in 1839.

17, 1841, is the date the main force of the Texans engaged on the Santa Fe Expedition surrendered near San Miguel, induced by treacherous representations and desertion of the guide. The prisoners were marched to Mexico City, where the survivors were released in July, 1842, after the United States had demanded same of the Mexican Government. Although the expedition resulted in failure, it focused attention of the United States on the claim of Texas to the New Mexican territory, resulting in the United States paying Texas ten million dollars for that territory in 1850 after Texas became a state.

29, 1856, the feast of St. Michael, Father Leopold blessed the first Polish church in America, the church in Panna Maria, Karnes County, at the junction of the San Antonio and Cibolo rivers.

30, 1825, is the date when Francisco Maynes was named foreign vicar and became the last president of the Texas missions. He reported that most of the lands of the missions had been divided among the Indians belonging to each, with the exception of fifteen acres which the Mexican Government granted to each mission.



## THE TEXAS INDIANS

TEXAS is remarkable in the respect that it was approached by settlers from several different directions. One result of this condition is reflected in the heterogeneity of the Indian tribes encountered by early travelers in Texas. The disturbing influence of the white man's encroachment in what is now the eastern and northern United States, down the Mississippi, and up from Mexico resulted in numerous Indian migrations.

The Indians of Texas may be roughly divided into several groups — the Mound Builders, the Coastal Indians, the Hill Tribes, the Basket-Makers, and the Plains Indians. A fairly good record of historical tribes is available, but the story of the early indigenous tribes is but partly known.

The Mound-Building tribes were located in East Texas, and in part probably migrated there from the Mississippi region about the time of the earliest European invasions of North America. These Caddoan tribes have left in the archeological record many evidences of contact with white men. South of the Caddoan tribes dwelt another group, the Asinai, often mentioned by the Spanish and French explorers. Along the east coast were found the Attacapan tribes.

The Karankawas were probably inhabitants of Texas from an early date. The name was rather loosely applied to all tribes along the Texas coast south of Galveston. These Indians are well known for their reported cannibalistic habits.

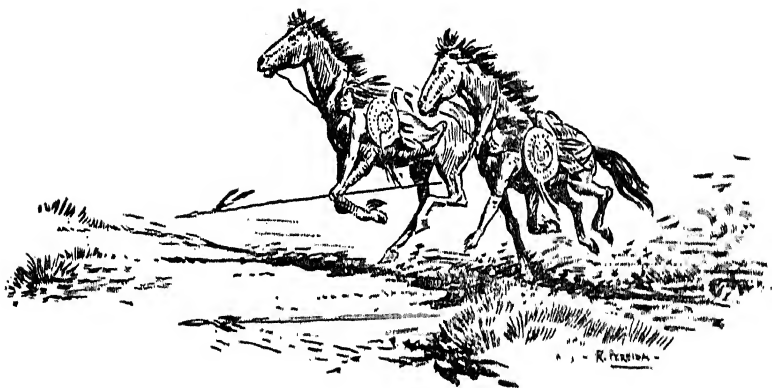
The Tonkawas were the principal Hill Country Indians. They were a warlike tribe of wanderers who often followed the herds of buffalo over great distances. Tonkawas promised to settle down, but never did.

Most of the southwestern part of the state was inhabited by a great number of small tribes of inferior culture, general-

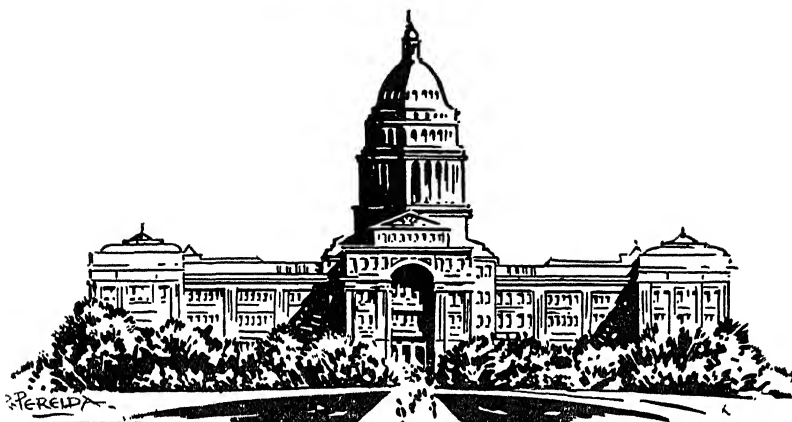
ly called the Coahuiltecans. In the heart of the Big Bend recent archeological work has brought to light evidence of an ancient Basket-Maker culture having affinities with Basket-Makers in other parts of western America.

The Apaches, who belonged to the great Athapascan group, and the Comanches, a branch of the Shoshoneans, were two groups of Plains Indians who invaded Texas following the Anglo-American settlements and caused much trouble among early settlers. With the Comanches came the Kiowas, likewise a Plains group.

Other intrusive Indians include the Choctaws, the Cherokees, and the Kickapoos, who came into Texas from the Southern states. Most of the indigenous tribes of Indians had disappeared by the time of the earliest American colonies. Vigorous attacks aimed at the Indians during Lamar's administration, and general persecution all along the frontier, contributed to a speedy end for all Texas Indians who had managed to survive the white man's pestilences.



# THE CAPITOLS OF TEXAS



TODAY — AUSTIN

*I*N ITS BUILDING, the history of the Texas Capitol has followed a devious route. It began, as an entity, when a small handful of men met in a draughty story-and-a-half building at Washington-on-the-Brazos and declared that they and their people were no longer subjects of the Mexican Government. The Capitol then was little more than a barn.

The document drawn up by the Convention was hardly read when a courier scattered the congregation with news of the Fall of the Alamo and of Houston's retreat. The Secretary of the Convention quickly appointed William Wharton as envoy of the newly declared Republic, and started the Declaration into the States for official recognition from the Government at Washington, D. C., and for assistance and support from that body.

Wharton traveled by a Gulf packet via New Orleans, finally reaching the capital of the States. He returned to Texas to find the Battle of San Jacinto won and the Republic of Texas established.

But Wharton died without recording the location of the first official document of the Republic—its Declaration of Independence. Sixty years after its formation, Judge Seth Shepard of Brenham, thumbing through old papers in the

Federal Department of State, found the document and at once forwarded it to Austin. Thirty years longer it lay in seclusion, until, through the efforts of Mrs. Jane Y. McCallum, Secretary of State, the document was mounted on a rotary frame on the wall of the Capitol entrance. Here, every visitor can read the now faded scroll which dealt such a blow to the Mexican Government.

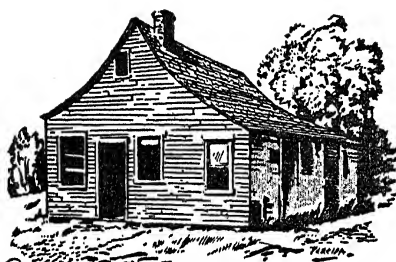
When the news of Houston's retreat came to the Provisional Government just set up at Old Washington, the officers of the Republic left the "State House" abruptly, took to their horses, and headed for the scene of battle.

Leaving the site of the "Capitol" were women and children — afoot, on horses, in wagons, behind oxen. It is said that one ingenious mother, lacking a wagon for her children, snatched the buffalo hide off the floor, hitched it to the one ox the family owned, placed the children on the hide and joined the hegira.

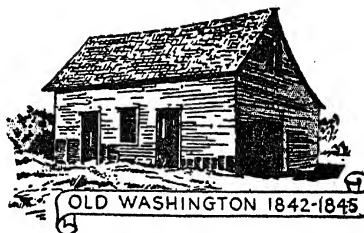
But before the Runaway could reach the Louisiana border for which it was headed, news came of the victory of San Jacinto and the return was begun; some wives reached home in time to welcome the victorious soldiers with clean hearths and warm suppers.

The Constitution, which the governing body had just completed when the alarm was given, was not heard from again until it appeared in printed form in a Nashville newspaper, whence it was copied by a Cincinnati sheet, which happened to be on the exchange list of the *Telegraph and Register* — otherwise the State Archives would lack its very foundation.

To go back a bit; while the people of Texas were traveling stateward, President Burnet with his family left Washington for Harrisburg so as to avoid the Mexican onslaught. When Santa Anna heard that the Government had gone to Harrisburg, he turned toward that small city to demolish it. As his cavalry galloped in on one side of the town, the Texas Government left from the other. The chase led towards Morgan's Point. Here Burnet and his family took to a sailboat, which the President protected by means of his pistol until the Ship of State was out of reach of Mexican bullets. A larger boat was commandeered at Lynchburg and the Texas Capitol, again afloat, began a six-day journey to Galveston Island. Here, where the notorious Jean LaFitte once lorded



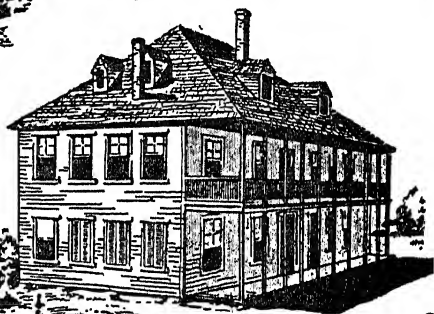
COLUMBIA. 1836-1837



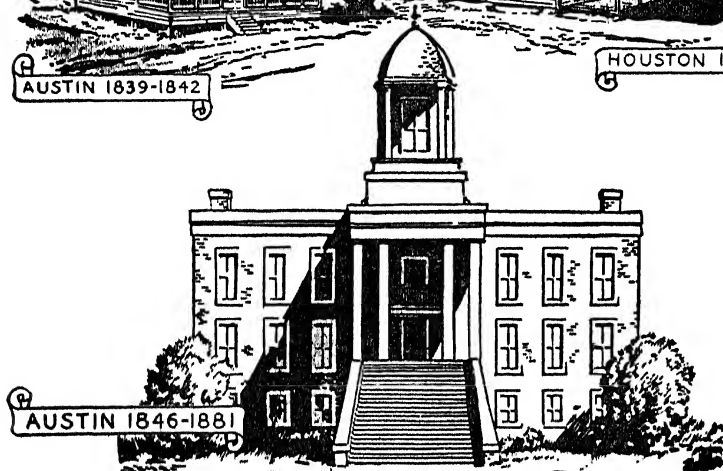
OLD WASHINGTON 1842-1845



AUSTIN 1839-1842



HOUSTON 1837-1839



AUSTIN 1846-1881

THE TEXAS CAPITOLS





over Red House, in perfect security and comfort, the travel-weary Texas Government settled down for a while. The house afforded the President by the inhabitants of the Island was far from handsomely furnished. As a matter of fact, it was barely a windbreak, with a mud floor and old sails and quilts for a canopy. But this was the Capitol of Texas.

While other affairs of state were pursuing their various destinies, the ragged and weary army was making a show of military order all the way from LaGrange-on-the-Colorado to San Felipe-on-the-Brazos, ending their maneuvers with everlasting glory at San Jacinto. By the time Santa Anna was taken, the Government had established itself very comfortably at Velasco.

It was to Velasco that Santa Anna was brought while the battle between military etiquette and public opinion was waged, and that seacoast town became the capital of the new-born Republic of Texas.

While the savage instincts of public opinion were being "heeled" by the civilized rules of law and order, Santa Anna was held on the Phelps Plantation at Orizimbo-on-the-Brazos, where, so tradition has it, a Texas war widow attempted to assassinate him. It is also said that when the General found a son of the Phelps family in a Mexican jail, he had him released — an act of courtesy toward the family who had harbored him during the period of his own captivity.

With the San Jacinto victory came the end of a brave struggle and the beginning of a new chapter in the history of the Texas Capitol. For, up to the time of the Mexican recognition of its being, it could be only a revolutionary measure and not an established fact.

From the temporary station at Velasco the Government next moved to Columbia, then known as Bell's Landing, Brazoria County. But before the machinery of the Government can be set in motion we must trace the movements of the Constitution.

When the exodus from Washington and San Felipe was begun, the printing press went before Burnet into Harrisburg, and, in the same fashion, left that small city on the other side. It was in the midst of a particularly fiery edition of the *Telegraph and Register* that the warning of Santa Anna's approach was sounded. Its editor, Mr. Borden, of

condensed milk fame, rather than let it fall into the hands of the enemy, let it slide into the waters of a handy bayou. But, before the press was drowned out, someone snatched a handful of partly printed papers and saved them — these few copies being listed among the rarest documents in the Texas Archives today.

Later Borden salvaged his press and took it to Columbia, its presence there probably being the reason for taking the Government to that place.

At any rate, when the Congress of the Republic of Texas was called to order, and Burnet asked for the Constitution so that it might be ratified as the prerequisite of formal government for the Republic, someone handed him a copy of the *Telegraph and Register*. He shoved it into the table drawer and the Archives were in order.

Today there is not a sign of the old "shanghai" house with its peaked roof and lean-to, where the first Congress met and made the laws for the Republic. Even the great oaks which shaded it are gone — taken by the storm of 1900, so tradition says.

While the Solons were fretting miserably in the cold and bare little house in Columbia, the Allen Brothers were laying plans for a comfortable and spacious capital city to be called after the first President of the Republic — Houston. The prospectus they sent out promised that if only the capital would locate with them, legal buildings for every possible need would be erected, and even a resting place for the foot-weary *Telegraph and Register*. So the capital was moved to Houston for a period to extend from "the first day of April to the year 1840."

The Allens worked feverishly. They laid out streets and named them for public heroes. They chose a square of land for the Capitol building; Capitol Avenue led to its bare expanse. They let the contract for a jail, which, when built by one Dr. Birdsall, was four solid walls, with a trapdoor in the roof through which a ladder could be let down for the convenience of the prisoners.

On the corner now occupied by the Rice Hotel stood an uncompleted frame building of considerable pretension. This was taken over for the official offices. It is true that the foreign ambassadors complained about the mud through which they were forced to wade in order to reach Houston's

office, but the Government was now housed in a building more luxurious than any before occupied by that Department.

When Lamar took office as President, the governmental complexion changed considerably. For this new leader of the Republic had very definite ideas concerning what to do with the Indian question. The portion of these reforms of present interest concerns the "frontier policy" which set the capital on the move again, and changed the little town of Waterloo on the south side of the Colorado to Austin on the north side of that river.

The new shelter for the Government, as shown by Mrs. Albert Sydney Johnston in a pen and ink drawing made when she lived on the hill, consisted of two log cabin buildings which together housed the Cabinet and their activities.

But, bringing the Government to the frontier failed to intimidate the Comanches or their neighbors, the Apaches. They continued to descend upon the townspeople and to take what they wanted.

When Lamar's administration came to an end, the Houston faction came into power once more, and, having more regard for the physical safety of their government than had the previous incumbents, they chose to return the capital to Houston whence it came, and so to protect it from the incessant border wars.

The Austinites, feeling that the temporary return might all too easily become permanent, placed a guard over the State Archives to protect them — not from the Comanches or Apaches — but from the Administration itself.

President Houston, in an effort to smooth things down, convened Congress, in 1842, at Old Washington-on-the-Brazos, for a second time the provisional seat of the Government of Texas. The Archives were not in evidence at the meeting, so a party of Rangers was detailed to obtain them "under cover of the night."

But Mrs. Eberly, wife of an innkeeper, was sleeping lightly because of possible Indian raids, and heard the Rangers. She mounted the roof to the cannon kept for the Comanches and Apaches and set it off, thereby waking the town. Naturally the "Committee for the Recovery of the Archives" fled, taking with them as much of the Government as they could carry.

They were pursued by the aroused populace and, when caught, forced to turn over their loot. President Houston continued to preside without the Archives.

At Old Washington, the housing was as inadequate as before, but it is said that Mrs. Houston moved her silver service down from the thriving city of Houston, to serve tea under the oaks of her yard. Too, the President received the Congressional committees on the back porch while he shaved, thus giving Texas pioneers a feeling of equality, and keeping alive, at the same time, the proper atmosphere of democracy.

Houston's activities were not all taken up with the establishment of proper housing facilities for the Government. He worked long and diligently at bringing about a peace treaty between the Indians and the whites. For this purpose, there was, at Old Washington, a Council, at which Houston, adopted son of the Cherokees, headed one side, and the Indian chief, in full regalia, the other. There was much formal passing of the peace pipe, as well as many speeches; afterwards, there was much dancing and feasting on the part of the Indians.

The peace that Houston dreamed of never came about, for, as DeShields has said, there were evil men among the whites as well as among the Indians, and the flames of war were fanned until the last tepee crumbled into ashes and was flung upon the winds.

Old Washington had seen the birth of the Republic, and it saw also the dissolution of that body, for it was here that the arrangements were made for annexation to the United States, although the official signature was placed in Austin, whither the bested Government finally returned.

And in Austin the Government has remained. The first building to house it stood on Capitol Hill and was erected in 1841. It burned in 1881 and was replaced by the massive structure of native pink granite now standing at the head of Congress Avenue. During the period of Reconstruction, the Government was temporarily housed in a building which stood where there is today a park — in front of the Mansion. This building was also destroyed by fire some time after the Government had moved to its present abode.

# OCTOBER IN TEXAS



2, 1835, the Texans under Commander John H. Moore attacked and utterly routed a detachment of Mexicans near Gonzales.

3, 1788, Lorenzo de Zavala, for whom Zavala County was named, was born in Yucatán. After playing a prominent part in the political life of Mexico for many years, being a true republican, Zavala located in Texas in 1835 and declared his opposition to Santa Anna's dictatorship. He was made Vice President of the Provisional Republic.



3, 1895, the state law against public prize-fighting in Texas was passed by the legislature. This law made prize-fighting a felony and punishable by confinement in the penitentiary. The action was taken to prevent a fight which had been scheduled for the state.

4, 1862, the Federals captured Galveston Island, but lost it on January 1, 1863, when General Magruder of the Southern forces led the successful attack.

OCTOBER 24, 1847, a visitor to New Braunfels reported: "This was a very pretty place and rapidly filling up, and I thought the Comal the prettiest stream I ever saw."

4, 1876, the Texas Agricultural and Mechanical College opened its doors.

8, 1818, John H. Reagan, after whom Reagan County is named, was born in Sevier County, Tennessee. He came to Texas in 1839 and served with distinction in many capacities, including that of Postmaster General of the Confederacy, then for 14 years in Congress, then as United States Senator, and, lastly, as chairman of the Railroad Commission of Texas, dying at the age of 87 in 1905.

10, 1835, is the date Stephen F. Austin arrived and took over command of the Texas forces at Gonzales.

13, 1845, the people of Texas voted almost unanimously to accept annexation to the United States.

15, 1727, an inspection report shows the mission of San Antonio de Valero had 273 Indians, 21 yoke of oxen, 24 plows, 61 large hoes, 34 hatchets, 12 iron shovels, 5 hoes, 8 crowbars and 12 scythes, with 439 head of cattle, 272 goats and 210 sheep.

19, 1837, one of the early missionaries of the Methodist church stopped in San Augustine, where he preached several nights, then began a subscription for the building of a church. In less than two weeks, a lot was deeded, \$3,500 was subscribed and trustees were appointed.

# OLD ROUGH AND READY ON THE RIO GRANDE

By FLORENCE JOHNSON SCOTT



GENERAL ZACHARY TAYLOR  
*"Old Rough and Ready"*

THE LOWER Rio Grande border has furnished the background for many a stirring episode in the history of numerous countries, for along the lengthy and winding banks of the great river countless battles have been fought, intrigues contrived and diplomatic intercourse negotiated.

There on the Rio Grande, private citizens have acquired great fortunes and some have attained power and influence in one undertaking or the other; regular and volunteer armies have seen service in the valleys on both sides of the river; statesmen have debated in the legislature and in Congress on questions of appropriation, territorial acquisition

and war; and diplomats have met in international conferences over agreements and treaties dealing with the Rio Grande and the territory affected by it.

But of all the illustrious figures of history whose glory and fame can be attributed to service rendered on the Rio Grande border, the one man who stands out more prominently than any other in American history is Zachary Taylor, commanding general of the American Army of Occupation during the Mexican War of 1846-1848; hero of the battles of Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma, Monterrey and Buena Vista; and finally the man who was chosen the twelfth President of the United States.

For his meritorious services as commander-in-chief of the expeditionary forces which had engaged in the hard fought battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma, May 8 and 9, 1846, between the American and Mexican armies in the vicinity of the present town of Brownsville, Texas, General Taylor was twice promoted, first to the rank of brevet major general and second, to a full major general.

Prior to the Mexican War, General Taylor had become known to a few in the army as "Old Rough and Ready." The new army on the Rio Grande took up the nickname after the first battle and after that day his name was one of popular acclaim.

The news of his success was heralded by the press, which throughout the country was enthusiastic in singing his praises and which eventually contributed to making him a famous personage. "Rough and Ready" clubs were formed in all cities and in many villages; war literature became the vogue, and songs and poems were dedicated to the hero; his photograph was used extensively for advertising purposes; state legislatures voted him thanks, gifts and swords; and President Polk publicly stated, "The battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma are among our most brilliant victories, and will long be remembered by the American people."

The nation demanded to know more about the famous Army leader and presently the story of his boyhood, military service and private life became household knowledge throughout the country.

Zachary Taylor had been born in Virginia but at a very early age had moved with his family to Kentucky. He had received little schooling and was often spoken of as an

uneducated man. In spite of this fact, his reports and public papers showed that he was a man strong in expression of thought.

His military service had begun at Fort Harrison; his first campaign had been in the Black Hawk War, followed by service in the Florida War. For several years prior to the Mexican War he had been stationed at Fort Jessup near Baton Rouge, Louisiana, from which place he had been ordered to Corpus Christi in 1845, pending the completion of annexation proceedings of Texas and the United States.

Following the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma, General Taylor had been ordered to cross the Rio Grande with his troops. This he did and on May 17, 1846, he planted the American flag on Mexican soil in the border city of Matamoros. From that time on the American Army became one of invasion and all future movements depended on the extent to which the Rio Grande would prove navigable for transportation of supplies and men.

It was General Taylor who recommended to the Quartermaster Department of the Army the type of boats needed for use on the Rio Grande and who, after having secured the boats, introduced steamship transportation. American troops were ordered to all accessible towns on the Lower Rio Grande border, including Reynosa, Camargo, and Mier. At Camargo, a depot was established, and from this place operations were carried on in the San Juan Valley toward Monterrey, the first city of importance in Northern Mexico.

During the summer of 1846, reinforcements of three months' volunteers were landed at Point Isabel, representing practically every state in the Union. Within a short time, five thousand volunteer soldiers had joined General Taylor's original army, and were being put through rigid discipline preparatory to the march into Mexico.

With the Army mobilized at Matamoros, General Taylor marched to Monterrey, and in September won his third victory for the American Army. This success was repeated soon afterward at the spectacular and strategic battle of Buena Vista, fought near Saltillo, and considered by the Americans as the beginning of the end of the war. After this last named battle there was created an attitude of intense admiration for the soldiers in the field, mingled with national pride in the great American leader. With this series of victories to his



credit, General Taylor became known as "The General who never loses a battle."

Meetings were held in the United States by men of all parties regardless of political adherence. These men, with one accord, wished to unite in awarding honors to the commander, "who, undaunted, moved as though no obstacle had been interposed to defeat them."

Both political parties of the United States in that year were seeking Presidential timber, and Taylor was besieged by the Whigs to allow his name to be used as a candidate. Paradoxical as it may seem, General Taylor up to that time had never been identified with either the Democrats or Whigs. The latter party was amazed on approaching him to learn that he had never voted and that he had no idea of the responsibilities of party affiliation. The popular acclaim was so great, however, that the Whigs made him their nominee and in the ensuing general election, he became President of the United States, taking the oath of office at imposing ceremonies on March 5, 1849.

Although General Taylor had at all times avowed his unfitness for the office, he was considered, during his brief term, a just and wise President. His judgment in matters of right and wrong was unquestioned, and although his knowledge of civil and political matters was limited, it was said even by those who had opposed him that he had exceeded their expectations.

He died during the second year of his term.

The extent of his part in the Mexican War and the unforeseen events to which it led are well-known historical facts. It can be truthfully said, however, that if the Rio Grande campaign made General Taylor a famous figure of history, he in turn was largely responsible for the introduction of Anglo-Americans on the Rio Grande border. He can also be given the credit for at least part of the development of that section of the country, for it was through his experimentation with navigation that the system of water transportation was continued for fifty years after the war. This medium aided materially in the development of the Texas towns and counties which sprang into existence following the Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo between the United States and Mexico, consummated in February, 1848.

# TEXAS IN CIVIL WAR DAYS

By HOWARD W. PEAK, III



*T*HE SEEDS of the Civil War sprouted when Texas was admitted into the Union in 1846. This may seem a radical statement to those who have been taught that the war began with the firing at Fort Sumter in 1861, but speaking in a broad sense, it is nevertheless true. The admission of a new state, especially one which had the power to divide itself into four additional states, was regarded by the Northern industrialists as increasing the power of the Southern slave-holding aristocracy.

This act of admittance stirred the camp of Abolitionists to keen activity. They flung out the challenge of the Wilmot Proviso, which was immediately taken up by the states' rights adherents. Northern and Southern Democrats became

as estranged to each other as were the Jeffersonians and Hamiltonians at the beginning of the century. The Wilmot Proviso, crushing as it did Douglas' plan of "Squatter Sovereignty," precluded any possibility of a satisfactory compromise on the slavery and states' rights questions. It made the Civil War inevitable.

*Texas at the beginning of the war*

The census of 1860 gave Texas a population of 604,215, of which 420,891 were whites and 182,921 were Negroes. Most of these people had come from the older states of the South, and belonged to the upper and middle classes; that is to say, the small substantial farmers belonged to the second group, and the professional men — doctors, lawyers, etc. — to the first. These were scattered over all parts of the state lying east of the frontier. The wealthy slave owners, on the other hand, established vast plantations along the Louisiana border and the Gulf Coast region.

These planters maintained a society as proud, rich and utterly splendid as that of their home states. There were great plantation houses set among the lawns and parks of the estates, and substantial quarters for the slaves, with stables, machinery barns, and droves of mules and machinery for cultivating the vast fields of cotton.

The slave-owner aristocrats lived in an atmosphere of munificence. With slaves to do their every bidding, their lives were entirely at variance with those of the present generation. The "big house," which was where the owners of the plantation lived, was flanked by comfortable dwellings for Negro residential attendants, which included the "black mammy" — the major-domo of the house servants — and the men who looked after the stables and equipages. These slaves maintained a "caste" that distinguished them from the ordinary "corn field nigger" who occupied quarters bordering the plantation.

Each daughter and son of the house had an individual maid or manservant who attended them, and who accompanied them when traveling, or away at some fashionable educational institution. And, during the Civil War, these "high bred" soldiers, in many cases, were attended on the field of battle by their body servants.

And here, as a matter of simple justice, I will say, as a

general proposition, that the plantation slaves were kindly and humanely treated. Of course there were exceptions to this rule, cases in which an overbearing "overseer" mistreated his underlings; but this was the exception, and not the rule.

There were in Texas in 1860 only six towns of 2,500 or more population. San Antonio led with 8,235; Jefferson, 7,500; Galveston, 6,000; Houston, 4,845; Marshall, 4000; Austin, 3,494.

All of the commerce of North Texas passed through Jefferson, she being at the time connected by Caddo Lake and Red River with New Orleans. Galveston controlled the business of the southeast, central and the coast territory. San Antonio did a business with Mexico, exchanging products with North and Northeast Mexico by wagon teams through the Rio Grande Valley, where she contacted Matamoros on the Rio Grande. By the same process of hauling she had a lucrative trade with Chihuahua via the Old Spanish Trail.

During the war most of the coffee and sugar supplies were contraband, being exchanged for cotton from these two Mexican points. Jefferson exported during the years 1859 and 1860, 88,000 and 100,000 bales respectively, while Galveston handled 118,000 and 148,000 bales in the same years.

Texas was a rich and rapidly developing state until the war years halted its progress. Sam Houston was right when he said that "Texas has prospered under the Union, and her interests would be better served by remaining in it."

But the men of Texas refused to put material prosperity before what they considered their moral duty, and so thwarted her progress for an ideal.

### *The State secedes*

The popular election of February 25, 1861, showed 39,415 votes in favor of secession, and 13,841 against. The State Convention, called to finally determine the question, declared Texas united with the Confederate States of America by a vote of 109 to 2.

In an imposing ceremony, the wives and daughters of the most prominent men of the state brought to the Convention a beautiful Confederate battle flag made by their

own hands. In the wild burst of cheering, all doubts as to the eventual success of their cause left the delegates, and even some of the staunchest Union men pledged themselves to the support of the new nation.

Governor Houston, strongly opposing the secession movement, was deposed, and Lieutenant Governor Edward Clark was seated in his stead. This act of the Convention broke the old hero's heart, and, it is said, was the cause of his death two years later.

I believe it not amiss here to insert a few words about the slavery question, since the later generations have been taught that the Civil War was the outgrowth of slavery. As a matter of fact slavery was not the real cause of the war. While it served as an occasion, the true cause of the conflict between the North and South can be truly defined as an offspring of sectional rivalry and political ambition. Every one of the original thirteen states recognized the institution of slavery, but due to the adverse climatic condition of the North, the Negro thrived in the more genial temperature of the South. He was especially adapted to life in the cotton fields.

By the end of April, 1861, there were 8,000 Texans in the armies of the Confederacy, and it is estimated that during the term of conflict, between 55,000 and 65,000 Texans served under the Stars and Bars.

Among the notable generals who distinguished themselves on the battlefield were the following from Texas: Albert Sydney Johnston, Tom Green, John B. Hood, Ben and Henry McCullough, and L. S. Ross. Then there were scores of lesser distinction, yet of equal gallantry; most of these fought in other states, as there was but little fighting done on Texas soil.

Due to her location Texas fared far better than most of her sister states during the war. Her geographical situation was to her advantage, and the support that she received from the French in Mexico made it easier to get supplies.

The unfortunate Emperor Maximilian, of the Mexican Republic, who had been foisted upon the Mexican Republic by Louis Napoleon in obedience to political intrigue, was friendly to the cause of the Confederacy, and through his generals and aides was instrumental in smuggling supplies

of medicines, foods, arms, clothing and other necessities across the Rio Grande, taking cotton in exchange.

### *Capture of Galveston*

The first military event of any importance in Texas was the capture of Galveston by Federal troops just before Christmas, 1862. A squadron of blockaders had landed its soldiers and driven out the inadequate Confederate garrison; but they were to enjoy their coup for a week only.

General Magruder, Confederate military commander of Texas, commandeered two small steamers at Houston, "armored" them with cotton bales, and enlisting a few volunteers, sailed down the Bayou and attacked the blockading squadrons. About the same time some one thousand Texans crossed the Bay in boats, and surprised the captured garrison, who were indulging in a New Year's drinking orgy, and completely routed them. Out in the Gulf all of the blockading squadrons had been captured, destroyed, or driven away.

One of the most remarkable victories that is recorded during the four years of warfare between the North and South was that achieved by Lieutenant Richard W. (Dick) Dowling and forty-seven Irish fighters — the Davis Guards — of Houston at Sabine Pass.

This pass lies between the Sabine River and the Gulf of Mexico, and was an important port of entry during the Civil War. It was quite necessary to keep it open, as through it cotton was shipped out, and contraband goods entered.

About five miles from the entrance of the pass, the Confederates had constructed a small earthwork fort — called Fort Griffin — to guard the entrance. Six guns were mounted, but these were of inferior quality, the best of which would not carry over a mile and a half.

The Federals were wise to the location of this fort, and determined to enter and destroy it.

On September 8, 1863, a fleet of four gunboats convoying a small army of Federal troops appeared off the mouth of the pass. This was General Franklin's army of invasion, it being his purpose after destroying the fort to invade the southeastern part of the state. This army consisted of twenty-two troopships and fifteen thousand soldiers.

As the fleet steamed up to the fort, Lieutenant Dowling

addressed his men, asking them if they wished to surrender to the formidable enemy, and allow them to invade their state, or wished to follow him, and fight it out. The unanimous answer was, "Fight, fight, to the last." "Fight, we will," retorted Dowling.

The *Clifton* led the way, the *Arizona*, *Sachem* and *Granite City* closely following. About three o'clock in the afternoon the *Clifton* steamed opposite the fort. There had not been a shot. So close was this ship to the fort that its crew members shouted, "Come out of your hole, Johnny Reb. Come out and show yourself," but there was no reply. Suddenly, a sheet of flame leapt from the fort. And now the fight waxed fast and furious. Above the roar of cannon an explosion was heard, and the *Sachem* was seen to lurch forward and fall upon the water, a stricken thing.

A white flag was hoisted from her masthead. All the guns of the fort now turned on the *Clifton*, and every shot took effect. She, too, hauled down her colors. Then the *Arizona* came in for a pounding. She had been crippled, and was backing away out of range of the guns. She was throwing overboard horses, provisions, and everything that would lighten her.

The fight was over. The troopships steamed away, and Texas was saved from the hands of the invader.

The Texans were astonished at the result of their victory. They had captured two gunboats, crippled a third; had taken three hundred and fifty prisoners, many small arms, quantities of ammunition, and large stocks of provisions.

On the gunboats three officers and ninety-four men were killed. The fort lost not a man.

The *Sachem* was towed to the wharf, but the *Clifton* had run aground and could not be moved. The prisoners from both boats were brought to the fort. Captain Crooker was among them.

Mounting the breastworks, he asked for the commanding officer. Begrimed with powder and covered with dust, Lieutenant Dowling presented himself. The Federal officer could hardly believe his eyes. This dirty boy his conqueror? It must be some jest, he thought.

"And where are your soldiers?" he asked the Lieutenant. "Here," said Dowling, pointing to the men guarding the prisoners. "Are these all?" "All," said Dowling.

The officer hung his head and muttered to himself, "Four gunboats and fifteen thousand men defeated by this boy and his forty-seven Irishmen; it is something unheard of."

### *The Reconstruction Period*

When the war was ended, Texas, having lost her sovereignty, was the victim of every indignity that the conquering North could heap upon her. A military dictatorship, with companies of soldiers stationed in all principal towns, challenged every movement of her citizens, preventing the expression of her choice at the polls. Freedmen's Bureaus were established, which encouraged the ex-slaves to treat their former masters with disrespect and indignities. Carpetbaggers sent down from the North indulged in their nefarious practices of inciting the Negroes in acts of violence and intimidation. A state of chaos prevailed, and but for the patience and clear-headedness of the leaders, matters would have been far worse. The governor of the state was deposed, and a Republican seated in his stead. Republican Congressmen were sent to Washington, and Negroes were placed in State offices, all against the will of the people.

It was at this stage that the Ku Klux Klan came into existence, and for once, it was justified. And, it was due to the dignified and highly bred General Winfield Scott Hancock, in charge of United States military affairs, that matters were finally gotten in shape so that a semblance of peace and quietude prevailed. But not until Texas was readmitted into the Union — in 1870 — did political affairs return to the hands of its citizens.

### *The cattle industry*

At the close of the war, the great cattle producing country was that lying south and southwest of San Antonio. When the stockmen, most of whom had been in the war, returned, they found that their herds had so multiplied during their four years' absence that it was a problem as to what to do with them. There was no local market, and there were no railroads to ship them to Northern markets.

In this dilemma, it was decided to establish packing plants at Rockport and other available sites along the coast. But this venture was a failure, as the climate was too warm



to ship meat. This was before the day of manufactured ice. So the question was a vital one.

At this juncture, an adventurous stockman determined to drive his stock to Kansas markets on the hoof. He was successful, and then followed the grand trek over the cattle trail that led through North Texas and the Indian Territory to Dodge City and Abilene, Kansas. This achievement solved the future of a gigantic industry.

The northwestern part of the state was but a frontier, inhabited chiefly by marauding bands of Indians, its prairies covered with buffalo. Dallas was a town with but a few thousand inhabitants, and Fort Worth a bordering outpost with about as many hundreds. The hinterland to the west was practically a wilderness, the "Staked Plains" a land of waste.



## The Three-Faced Clock

The old Ursuline Academy and Convent — near the very center of the city of San Antonio, and built about 1868 — has a tower with a three-faced clock. There is a dial on the east side; there is a dial on the west side; there is a dial on the south side. . . . But there is no dial on the *north* side!

Two stories are told in explanation of this peculiarity:

One is that at the time of the building of the school no one lived on the north side of town, and it was confidently believed that such would always be the case . . . so the dial on the north side would not be needed.

The other story relates that at the time of the building of the tower a contingent of Union soldiers was camped out near the San Pedro Springs (now San Pedro Park on the north side), and San Antonio people did not want the "damyankees" to know what time it was, anyway.



Trinity, the name of one of Texas' principal rivers, means three in one: Clear Fork, West Fork, and Elm Fork, unite to form this stream.



## CAMELS IN TEXAS

UNDOUBTEDLY one of the strangest and most bizarre scenes in the history of this state was the spectacle of Asiatic camel caravans winding across the desert wastes of Southwest Texas. Jefferson Davis, while serving in the Mexican War, was deeply concerned with the problem of transportation of troops in the Southwest, and the feasibility of using camels occurred to him.

In 1853 Davis became Secretary of War in President Pierce's Cabinet and, after finally securing the approval of Congress, immediately started plans for the purchase and importation of camels. The first camels were unloaded in Texas at the old port of Indianola in 1856. The camels were to be used between the various United States Army posts on the border, for at that early date the railroad had not penetrated the state. Indians were still a menace to the traveler and the camels were looked upon as a swift and dependable means of transportation.

The camels were taken from Indianola overland to San Antonio. Everywhere they caused a great deal of excitement. After some delay, the camels were moved to Camp Verde, about sixty-five miles northwest of San Antonio in the hill country, immediately within the Guadalupe range of mountains, near Kerrville.

A second group of camels were imported in 1857 and these were also sent to Camp Verde. A number were also imported as private enterprises following the publicity resulting from the Government purchases. Camp Verde, strategically located near Bandera Pass, and readily accessible to other Government posts, remained the home of the camels.

A number of the camels were assigned to an expedition across the southern route to California. Under the direction

of Edward F. Beale, a successful trip was made. The camel corps remained in California. In 1859 a number of camels taken from those left at Camp Verde were used in an exploratory trip into the Big Bend country.

Following the entrance of Texas into the Confederacy, Camp Verde passed into the hands of the Southern forces. Upon the cessation of hostilities, the property was returned to the Federal Government. On March 18, 1866, the War Department issued orders to dispose of all the camels in the possession of the Government.

The camels were sold to Bethel Coopwood. They were widely scattered: a number were sent to New Mexico, and others were exhibited around the country by circus people. Many stories were told in later years by people who suddenly and unexpectedly encountered these stray animals in various parts of the country.



## **“War Widow”**

One of the unsung heroines of the Civil War was a “war widow” in Lavaca County, Mrs. Marie Kahanek, whose husband had been conscripted, leaving her with her two infant children in dire poverty. Alone she planted and hoed two acres of cotton and some corn. From this small acreage, she gathered two thousand pounds of cotton and a fair crop of corn, which she milled by means of two rocks. She was forced to haul her water four miles in a barrel on a sled drawn by oxen. Later, she sheared sheep and milked cows for a rancher, and thus maintained herself and family for three years until her husband returned home.



## **Padre Island**

Padre Island, which hugs the coast of Texas from Corpus Christi to the mouth of the Rio Grande, is 117 miles long and from 1400 feet to three miles wide. South Texas geologists say it is a young island — only from 10,000 to 12,000 years old.



## CATTLE IN TEXAS

THE CATTLE INDUSTRY received its start in Texas from the original longhorn herds introduced by Spanish settlers during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries. The natural range country of Texas gave impetus to a quick development of cattle, a matter which never ceased to surprise newcomers.

Texas was rather far removed from consuming centers in the United States and, as a consequence, very few cattle were shipped from the state prior to the Civil War. Following the Civil War, the great trails to Kansas and other Northern markets were opened and cattle raising developed on a tremendous scale. During the seventies and eighties, the Indians were pushed back from North and West Texas and the open range era was in full swing. During the eighties Southern cattlemen tried to establish a national trail, six miles wide, leading from Texas to Canada, as a quarantine measure. But the advent of railroads made the project obsolete and it was abandoned.

Trail driving persisted until the late nineties, after which the railroads took over cattle transportation. At this time, the first real packing houses were established at San Antonio, Fort Worth, Dallas, and other Texas cities. Previous packing plants at Victoria and Indianola had failed because of an insufficient market, but modern transportation was now at hand. At the beginning of the present century, Fort Worth established herself as a national livestock center. By this time the open range had practically disappeared, giving way to great fenced ranches. More attention was being given to the improvement of beef breeds, and the cattle business had gained a position as one of the state's leading industries.

Today, the Hereford and the shorthorn have entirely replaced the longhorn. The latter is, in fact, almost extinct. Numerous experiments have been under way over a considerable length of time designed to improve Texas cattle breeds. Indian Brahma and Africander cattle are among foreign breeds introduced for cross-breeding in Texas.

Most of the western two-thirds of the state and a large part of the Gulf Coast country is adapted to cattle raising. Although stock farming is increasingly popular, much of the large ranch country of Texas is suited peculiarly to cattle raising, and in all probability the large ranch, for which Texas is so famous, will never be completely superseded.

Texas ranks above all other states in number of cattle. Also, some of the choicest cattle in the world come from Texas. The state can truly say that a large part of her present wealth has been derived through the cattle industry.



# REDISCOVERING TEXAS

By DORIS KILLINGSWORTH

---

TEXAS OFFERS everything! Mountains — peaks that reach to nine thousand feet! Plains—in the Llano Estacado (Staked Plains), expanses so level that early explorers had to drive stakes to mark their return routes! Canyons—the banks of Santa Helena on the Rio Grande rise two thousand and five hundred feet above the river bed on the American side and more than two thousand seven hundred and fifty feet on the Mexican bank! Palo Duro Canyon in Northwest Texas, where the “cap rock” is one of the world’s most colorful, most beautiful scenic wonders! Dude ranches—the glamorous “Old West” is found at its typical best in the West Texas country. Typical Southern atmosphere—you’ll find it on the cotton plantations of Central Texas or in East Texas where the traditions and customs of the Old South are still maintained! Tropical beauty—in the magic Rio Grande Valley, through palms and oleanders, see vast acres of orange and grapefruit groves! Seashore—Texas beaches on the Gulf are among America’s finest. Galveston, Corpus Christi and other resort cities on the coast are meccas for thousands of vacationists. . . .

Wherever you go in Texas, you’ll find plenty to see, plenty to do. Visit San Antonio’s interesting missions and the Alamo, cradle of Texas freedom. Make a pilgrimage to the San Jacinto battleground near Houston. Tour through stately pines in East Texas—through the world’s greatest oil fields—on to Huntsville, home of General Sam Houston, and to Nacogdoches, where the old stone fort, built in 1778 and reminiscent of pioneer days, still stands. Explore the rugged Western Texas country, adjacent to Amarillo and El Paso. Enjoy the tropical beauty of the Rio Grande Valley, a section likewise steeped in glamor and historic interest!

— From *Epic-Century* (April 1936)

(EDITOR’S NOTE: *Locations given are approximate locations; i. e., towns which may be found on any road map are named, even when the ruins of an old fort or mission or the location of a battlefield may be several miles from that town. From inquiries at the towns named, however, the modern explorer may receive exact information necessary to reach the places sought. Some history books differ on dates and locations. The ones given are those which have become generally accepted. All Texas is filled with historic spots, but here are some of the outstanding ones.*)

EXPLORING now offers the excitement of finding old ruins, of rediscovering the Texas of the past cen-

turies, without the perils that beset the first explorers.

Cabeza de Vaca would have welcomed the sight of a gasoline station every few miles — even though he couldn't have used the articles on sale.

La Salle would have traded part of New France for that modern food known as a hamburger at any of the stands which now dot Southeast Texas.

Even the billboards that the traveler of today regards as blots on the landscape would have been joyful proof of an already blazed path to the pioneers of Texas' yesteryears.

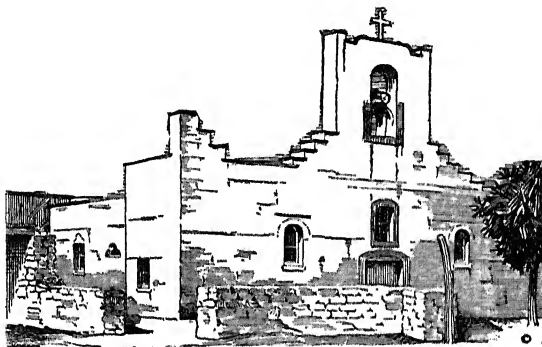
But even the modern explorer needs some sort of guidebook or map as he sets out to rediscover Texas.

Ruins of ancient forts, places of great historic interest, often lie buried in the debris of the years. Although civic and patriotic organizations are now doing a great work in marking such sites, often the places are off the traveled highways, their story as well as their location nearly lost to the present generation.

## West Texas

One of the oldest markers where advancing civilization touched, paused, and, true to form, erected a place of worship is at Ysleta in El Paso County. There four missions were built in the year 1682.

This fact places West Texas as the first frontier, rather than the last; so the traveler changes the usual procedure, and goes up and down in Texas — from the left of the map to the right, from west to east.



OLD MISSION, NEAR EL PASO

One of the first to be built in this section.

Below Ysleta to the southeast is Sierra Blanca, Hudspeth County. Forty miles from Sierra Blanca is the site of the "salt war" that occurred in 1877 over possession of the salt lakes.

To the south of Fort Davis, which itself is an outstanding spot in Jeff Davis County and in which the fort, established in 1854, and now restored, attracts tourist interest, lies Presidio. The old missions of San Cristobal and Julimes, founded in 1683 and 1684, respectively, rival in antiquity those of Ysleta. Presidio bears the name of its county.

Pecos County, to the northeast, offers the historic location of Fort Stockton, established as a fort in 1859. In Crockett County are the ruins of Fort Lancaster, built in 1855, a memorial to early protection offered by the U. S. Army.

The town of Pecos is located, not in Pecos County, as the unsuspecting traveler would imagine, but in Reeves County, to the northwest. There the Butterfield overland stage line stopped at Fort Pope. Now the motorist may drive up to a drugstore for refreshments.

Near Crane, in Crane County, was "Horsehead Crossing," so called back in the days when it was an old watering place for Indians and overland stage travelers. The Mendoza Expedition passed here in 1683-1684.

Mustang Spring, a watering place on the old immigrant trail, now goes by the name of Stanton, county seat of Martin County, north of Crane.

Going up the western trail to the Panhandle, the traveler, with a few detours, encounters Big Spring, in Howard County, once known as Moss Spring, an Indian campsite. Andrews, county seat of the county for which the town was named, is near Shafter Lake, which was the location of a bloody fight in pioneer days when Indians killed Negro soldiers of the U. S. Army.

Another watering place, Cedar Lake, was stopping point alike for Indians and early settlers — always on the alert, one for the other, to obtain their precious water supply. Today the traveler connects Cedar Lake and its history with Seminole, of Gaines County.

As journeys were reckoned in the period of horseback travel, the next watering place west was quite a distance. There near modern Levelland, Hockley County, was old



Casas Amarillas, early Indian camp ground, used later by the buffalo hunters.

At Springlake, in Lamb County, was another Indian camp ground and watering place.

Tulia, in Swisher County, relates with pride that at the Turtle Creek battlefield General R. S. Mackenzie defeated the Indians.

Above it, from the town of Canyon in Randall County, the traveler may enter one of the most beautiful scenic spots in Texas — Palo Duro Canyon, now a state park.



PALO DURO CANYON

Although Tascosa, in Oldham County, continues its march to oblivion, through dust, winds, and general decay, it once flourished as a great cowtown of the Panhandle. It was a trading post, a freight wagon station; it saw bloodshed. There may be found Boot Hill Cemetery, where legend has it that all the men buried there "died with their boots on."

Stinnett, in Hutchinson County, claims the site of the Kit Carson battlefield, where Carson fought off Indians in 1864 near Adobe Walls. Still farther north Spearman, in Hansford County, is the approximate location of James Carter's buffalo camp.

Perryton, in the uppermost tip of the Panhandle, in Ochiltree County, boasts a buried city, ruins of an Indian village.

Below it to the south is Mobeetie, Wheeler County. There Fort Elliott was established about 1876. Much to the

south of Mobeetie is Roaring Springs, Motley County, which in its time saw Indians, buffalo hunters and Texas Rangers pause there for camp before the establishment of a town.

Dickens, in the adjoining county of the same name, is renowned for its Soldiers' Mound — the graves of U. S. soldiers killed while serving under General Mackenzie. The place was once a base of operations against the Comanche Indians. Near Clairemont, still to the south, in Kent County, rise the ruins of Rath City, headquarters for buffalo hunters.

Just east of Roaring Springs, Dickens and Clairemont are Crowell, Throckmorton and Fort Griffin. Crowell, county seat of Foard County, has an exciting history as the Pease River battlefield, where Texas Rangers accomplished the dramatic rescue of Cynthia Ann Parker, who had been captured by the Indians, in the eventful year of 1836.

Robert E. Lee, "first gentleman of the Confederacy," was once stationed at Camp Cooper, from which Throckmorton now rises in its county of that name.

Fort Griffin is a name well known to all students of Texas history. There, in Shackelford County, are the ruins of that pioneer fort, which was established as a camp in 1853.

Anson, which, with its county, gives the full name of the Texas patriot leader, Anson Jones, was once better known for its proximity to Fort Phantom Hill, built in 1851 and now in ruins. Below, to the west, is Colorado, Mitchell County, famous as the battlefield where Texas colonists defeated a large band of Indians.

Fort Chadbourne, in Coke County, points to the ruins of its fort, built in 1852. Four years later Camp Colorado was built. Its ruins are now near Coleman, county seat of Coleman County.

At the Sims ranch, out from Paint Rock, Concho County, Indian paintings are yet to be seen.

San Angelo, important sheep center of West Texas, names as outstanding in its history the nearby Dove Creek battle and the establishment of Camp Concho.

To the southwest of San Angelo, Big Lake, in Reagan County, tells of General Grierson's camp, which became popularly named Grierson Spring.

Southeast is Menard, Menard County. The county history is extensive . . . as the battlefield where Bowie and his men,

searching for the Lost Mine, defeated a band of Indians; as the site of the mission and ruins of the presidio, built in 1757; as the location of the ruins of Fort McKavett, at the town of Fort McKavett, built in 1852.

History also credits Bowie and his men with a fight with Indians in McCulloch County, near Camp San Saba.

To the southwest are Roosevelt, Kimble County, near the site of Fort Terrett, established in 1852; Rocksprings, Edwards County, location of mission San Lorenzo, established in 1762; Comstock, in Val Verde County, where the U. S. Army camp, Hudson, was founded in 1861; Camp Wood, Real County, was established in 1857.

Also in Val Verde County is Langtry, home of Judge Roy Bean, world famous as the self-styled "Law West of the Pecos."



THE ROY BEAN SHACK  
"Law West of the Pecos."

To the west, going south from Mason, formerly Fort Mason of 1850, and on, is Fredericksburg, famous for the nearby Enchanted Rock, as the place where Captain Hays fought in 1841, and as the site of Fort Martin Scott. Near Kerrville are the ruins of old Camp Verde, established in 1856. Near Bandera, dinosaur tracks in Tarpley Creek have excited the modern explorer who is looking for the old.

D'Hanis, as its name suggests, was an early French settlement in Medina County. Near by is also the site of Fort Lincoln, established in 1849. Uvalde marks the site of U. S. Fort Inge and the Mission Candelario. Near by is the battlefield where Hays fought Indians in 1841. Fort Duncan in Eagle Pass, Maverick County, was established in 1849.

## South Texas

Going into South Texas, in Dimmit County, is Espanosa Lake, once a camping ground for Indians, which became a base used by the Texas Rangers against the Indians.

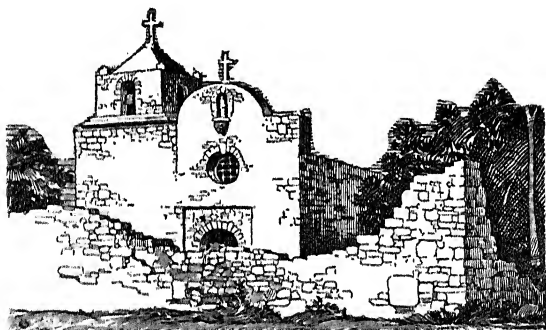
Below in La Salle County, near Encinal, is Fort Ewell, established in 1852.

Traveling down to the southernmost tip of Texas, in Starr County, are found Rio Grande City and the site of the old missions Laredo and Mier, founded in 1749 and 1750, respectively. Also founded in the year 1749 was Mission Del Monte, in Hidalgo County at San Juan.

The honor of being the oldest permanent fort in Texas goes to Fort Brown at Brownsville. It was built in 1846. Cameron County is also famous for the battlefields of Palo Alto, Las Rucas, Resaca de la Palma and Palmito, where the last Civil War battle was fought after peace had been declared.

Going up to Kenedy County, at Sarita, is the tree under which Zachary Taylor, "Old Rough and Ready," camped. Near Corpus Christi are the ruins of the Mexican fort, Lipantitlan, which was built in 1830.

From Alice, northeast, lie the site of Casa Blanca ranch and fort, and Casa Blanca, in Jim Wells County, where Fort Merrill, U. S. Government fort, was later established in 1852, and Mathis, where the San Patricio battle occurred back in 1836.



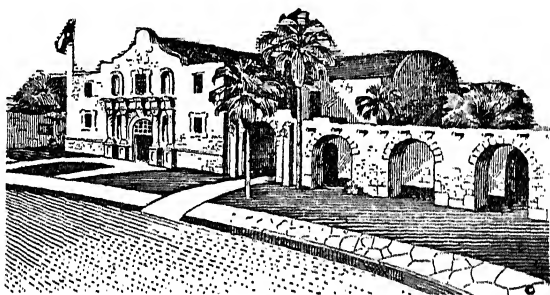
MISSION LA BAHIA  
Founded in the Year 1749  
Goliad, Texas.

Goliad has two missions founded in the 1700's. Near La Bahía occurred the infamous massacre when Fannin and his men were ruthlessly shot down. In a triangle on the East Texas coast are Refugio, scene of the massacre of King and his men, site of mission Refugio and the town of Copano, where soldiers landed in 1835 and 1836. Another point of landing men and supplies for the Texas Army in the year 1835 was known as Cox's Point, a historic bit of information that Port Lavaca, Calhoun County, relates. Port O'Connor is near the once famous Indianola, which was destroyed by the hurricanes of 1875 and 1880.

Up from it in what is now Victoria County, near its county seat, christened Victoria also, is the site of old Fort St. Louis, built by La Salle in 1685, and of the mission built in 1725.

West of Victoria is Panna Maria, near Karnes City. It is at Panna Maria that the oldest Polish settlement in the United States was made.

To the northeast of Karnes City is Gonzales, "Lexington of Texas," where the first shot in the Texas Revolution was fired in 1835.



THE ALAMO  
Cradle of Texas Liberty.

San Antonio, to the west, is of prime historical importance. There liberty was cradled — in the world-famous Alamo when Travis and one hundred and eighty-two intrepid men perished rather than surrender in 1836. About contemporary with the building of the Alamo in 1718 was the establishment of four other Franciscan missions, on the outskirts of the city.

New Braunfels to the north is the approximate site of the Mission Guadalupe, founded in 1757.

## Central Texas

Going from New Braunfels into lower Central Texas, there is La Grange, in Fayette County, with its historic Monument Hill. The sacred vault contains the remains of the men who fell in the "Dawson Massacre" and those of the executed prisoners from the Mier Expedition.

San Marcos, near the capital of Texas, is the approximate site of three missions, moved there about 1755. It is only a short drive from San Marcos to Austin.

Austin, capital of Texas since 1839, also saw, in 1868, the establishment of a U. S. military post. Three missions had been founded there about 1730.

Rockdale also once boasted three old missions, established during the years 1746-1749.

Over in Williamson County, the days of the Republic of Texas saw the erection of Kinney's Fort and the battle in which Manuel Flores was killed. Georgetown is the county seat.

Near Temple, in Bell County, occurred one of the most famous of Indian fights — the Battle of Bird's Creek, where Texas Rangers fought Indians in 1838. Indian fights took place, that year and in the year of Texas Independence, at old Fort Milam, Falls County.

To the west are Lampasas, where state troops were killed in a battle at the outbreak of the Civil War; Gatesville, where Fort Gates was built in 1849, and Hamilton, where dinosaur tracks have been found in rocks.

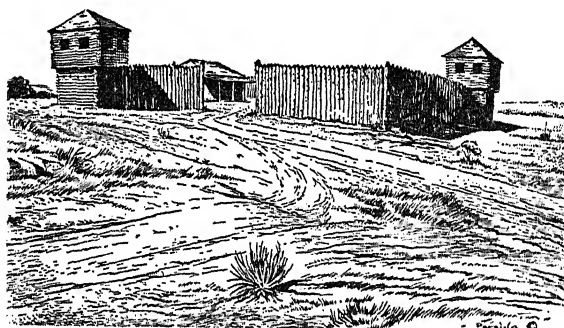
East of them Waco, on the main highway to North Texas, points with pride to the Robert Browning Memorial Room at Baylor University, one of the largest denominational universities in the Southwest.

## North Texas

Hillsboro once knew two forts: Fort Smith of the Republic period, and Fort Graham, built in 1849.

Near Hillsboro is Dawson. Colonists and Indians once engaged in battle there, and from that came the name "Battle Creek."

In an adjoining county, Limestone, is Groesbeck, famous for its connection with Cynthia Ann Parker.



FORT PARKER, NEAR GROESBECK, TEXAS  
Where Cynthia Ann Parker was captured by the Indians.

Italy, in Ellis County, to the north, was the site of the plantation home of General Tarrant. Near by, at Waxahachie, an important industry gave it much activity during the Civil War; there a Confederate arms factory was located.

Fort Worth and Dallas are North Texas' two most important cities. Of the two Fort Worth has the older history. President Houston of the Republic of Texas lived for a month at Bird's Fort, now site of the modern Fort Worth.

Dallas ranks high as a cultural center of Texas.

West of Dallas, and a little to the north, is Graham, Young County, which holds the ruins of U. S. Fort Belknap, established in 1851.

North of it, in Jack County, of which Jacksboro is the county seat, are the ruins of Fort Richardson, built in 1867, and the battlefield where Indians and United States soldiers fought in 1871.

Montague County, on the Red River, boasts Bushy Mound, Indian campground, and Forestburg, scene of many Indian battles.

Bolivar, in Denton County, to the southeast, was the home of John Chisum, who was a prominent cattleman.

Preston, in Grayson County on the Red River, and now inundated, was the site of Coffee's Trading Post, that attained fame in the Snively Expedition of 1843.

## East Texas

Paris, in Lamar County, along the Red River also, now replaces in importance the former Fulton's Trading Post.

Clarksville is the county seat of Red River County, and there, at the Jones Crossing of Red River, General Houston crossed into Texas in 1832.

Texarkana, besides being famous as an "on-the-fence" city between two states, goes back into history for more renown, as a former camping site for De Soto.



CITY PARK, TEXARKANA  
De Soto camped here.

Jefferson, in Marion County near the northeastern border, was the site for an old bell foundry, and Marshall, in Harrison County, the location for a Confederate arms factory, while over in Tyler, the Confederates kept Union prisoners at Camp Ford. Henderson, Rusk County, is near the location of the Cherokee Indian village, the site of Chief Bowles' village.

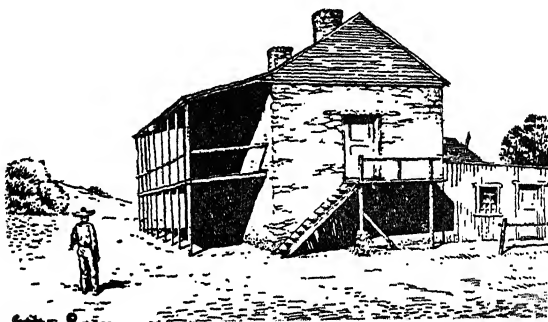
The city of Rusk is located, not in Rusk County, but in Cherokee County, which is the site of the Cherokee Indian battlefield of 1838; of the Kickapoo battlefield where hostile Indians and Mexicans were routed by Texans; of the Neches Indian Village, and, going farther back into history, the location of the Mission Concepción, founded in 1716.

Palestine was the successor of old Fort Houston.

Nacogdoches, rich in traditions, includes in its proud heritage the following facts: site of three missions founded



in 1716, of the old Stone Fort, of the Fredonian Rebellion and of the battle of Nacogdoches.



THE OLD STONE FORT, NACOGDOCHES, TEXAS

Towards the eastern border, Shelbyville tells of its having been the scene of the Regulator-Moderator War. San Augustine recounts that the Mission Dolores was established in 1716.

Crockett goes even farther back in that the Mission San Francisco de Los Tejas was founded by the Spanish in 1690.

Texas has several towns by the name of Midway, but the one by that name in Madison County, East Texas, traces its history back to Fort Trinidad, the town and fort established by Spain near Clapp's Ferry.

Farther south, several miles from Livingston, Polk County, is the Village of Alabama Indians. There a model Indian village still exists.

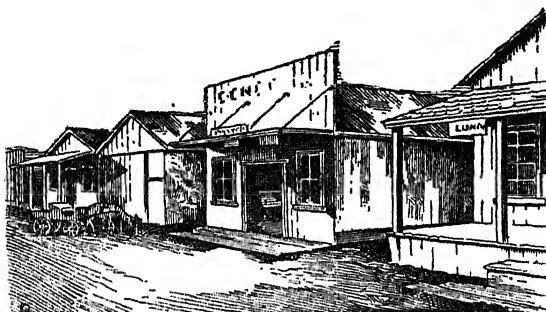
West of Livingston is Huntsville, Walker County, the shrine of Sam Houston admirers—the home of “The Raven.”



THE OLD HOME OF SAM HOUSTON, HUNTSVILLE

Swinging to the western edge of East Texas, Caldwell, in Burleson County, records that Fort Tenoxtitlan was founded by the Mexicans in 1830.

Old Washington — "Washington-on-the-Brazos," early Texans called it — holds a large share of attention from all historians. There the Texas Declaration of Independence was signed in 1836, and there the last session of the Congress of the Republic was held; thus Washington was privileged to witness both the beginning and the end of the Republic government.



WASHINGTON-ON-THE-BRAZOS

Below Washington lies Sealy, near where the town of San Felipe was founded in 1824 by Stephen F. Austin and his colony.

Houston, almost due east, is renowned for the San Jacinto battlefield nearby. There, in "the sixteenth decisive battle of the world," Texas won its independence from Mexico in 1836. Houston was the second capital of the Texas Republic. Present Harris County was once the home of David Burnet, Provisional President of the Republic.



SAN JACINTO BATTLEGROUND, NEAR HOUSTON

In a triangle to the east are Liberty, site of the camp where the San Jacinto Mexican captives were imprisoned, and before that the approximate site of an old French fort that dated back to 1818. Beaumont, still to the east, was a refugee camp during the Runaway Scrape in 1836, and later a Confederate camp. Below is Anahuac. The ruins of the ancient fort tell of the rescue of Travis and his men from the Mexicans in 1832. It is famous also for the "Turtle Bayou Resolutions," a document somewhat similar to the Declaration of Independence, signed in 1832 by the colonists. Anahuac is also the approximate site of a mission, established in 1756.

Galveston is the next historically important site along the Gulf Coast, going south. It is the approximate locale of the famous pirate La Fitte's stronghold. Later in the Confederate-Union struggles, Galveston played a prominent part and was captured by the Federal forces in 1862. Before those happenings, Point Bolivar had been the headquarters of the Long Expedition in 1819. Near Freeport, in Brazoria County, was old Velasco, first capital of Texas, and antedating that, the site of a Mexican fort captured by the colonists in 1832. Below Freeport lies Matagorda, location of the first Episcopal church in Texas.

Thus, working up and down Texas, from the west, where civilization first touched Texas at Ysleta, to the east, which is commonly regarded as the first Texas frontier, the traveler of today may trace the history of his state in visiting its most historic spots.



## San Jacinto Monument

The San Jacinto Monument and Museum, at San Jacinto Battleground, 23 miles east of Houston, where Texas' independence from Mexico was won, is the tallest stone monument in the world. It is 570 feet 4 inches tall, grade to top. The estimated cost was \$2,000,000.

On the ground floor is a museum with documents, articles and books of historic interest. An elevator is operated to the top of the monument for observation purposes. Admission to the museum is free; a nominal charge is made for elevator service.

# THE FLAVOR OF TEXAS HUMOR

By BOYCE HOUSE

THE MYTHS of ancient Greece and the fables of Aesop contain a core of truth — and so do the jokes of Texas.

Foremost fact about Texas is its tremendous size — hence the saying that the people living in El Paso refer to those in Texarkana as “effete Easterners” and that the inhabitants of Brownsville speak of those dwelling in Dallas as “durn-yankees.”

The classic story is the one about the traveling salesman whose territory was the Southwest. On his first trip, when he entered Texas at El Paso, he telegraphed to the company's main office in Kansas City. A couple of hours later, he received a telegram from the manager: “Now that you're in Texas, run over to Texarkana and collect that old account.” He wired back: “Run over there yourself; you're forty-seven miles closer than I am.”

The weather of Texas is remarkable for its versatility and suddenness. Oftenest told on this subject is the one about the farmer who started to town in a wagon drawn by an ox team. On the way, one of the oxen froze to death and, while he was skinning it, the other died of sunstroke.

And Texas is swept by winds. A tourist said to a filling station attendant in a town on the Plains, “Does the wind blow like this all the time?” and the native responded, “No — sometimes it turns around and blows the other way.”

A traveler passing through a town in the semi-arid region saw a schoolteacher with a class of small boys and girls out on the campus. The teacher had a hose and the water sparkled as it sailed through the air. She said, “Children, that's what rain looks like.”

Some of the early inhabitants of Texas left their homes in distant states for personal reasons. A group of nine cow-

boys sat around a campfire and conversation lagged. One said, "Boys, let's tell what our names were before we came to Texas." Eight pistols rang out as one — and there was another grave on the lone prairie.

Most picturesque of Texas figures are the Rangers and the cowboys. The standard story on the famous manhunters is the one about the town that was threatened with an outbreak of mob violence, so the mayor telephoned the Governor to rush in a force of Rangers. When the train rolled in, a group of citizens was waiting. Only one man stepped off. The mayor said, "What! Only one Ranger?" That worthy gave a hitch to his belt, squirted a stream of tobacco juice out of the southwest corner of his mouth, then replied, "H — , there ain't but one mob, is there?"

The yarns about the cowboys are innumerable. There was the cowpuncher who heard a speech and he was telling his comrades about it. He said, "The speech reminded me of a longhorn — there were two points, a long way apart, with a lotta bull in between."

Cowboys are gallant. A train made a brief lunch stop but the crowded café had only one waitress and it looked as though a young lady passenger was not going to get anything, but at last a cup of coffee was set before her. The coffee, however, was scalding hot. A cowboy said, "Here, ma'am, take mine; it's already been sauced an' blowed."

One night, a herd of cattle stampeded and the only way to stop them was to head them off. But to do this, the cowboy would have to get his horse to leap across a wide canyon, which was very deep. He led Old Paint up to the edge so the animal could size up the situation; then they went back a hundred yards to get up momentum, and then horse and rider launched out into space. Fifty feet out — going strong; sixty feet out — beginning to weaken; seventy-five feet out — Old Paint saw he couldn't make it — so he turned around and came back.

Then there were the four cowboys who entered a café. The first one said, "Bring me a double order o' beefsteak an' make it rare." The second one said, "Double that an' make it rarer." The third one said, "Singe a shoulder an' bring it in." The fourth one began stropping his knife on his boot and said, "Jes' cripple a calf an' drive him by; I'll get mine."

The Texan is proud he is a Texan. The process of producing Texas stories is still going on. To prove both these points at once:

During World War II, a New England general was being taken for a tour of inspection over an Army camp in Texas. The commanding officer was a Texan and he kept talking about Sam Houston, Bowie, Travis, Bonham, Crockett and other Lone Star Immortals till the New Englander couldn't stand it any longer. He said, "General, that's all very well, but Texas doesn't have any Paul Revere."

The Texan scratched his head as he said, "Paul Revere? Paul Revere?" Then his face brightened as he exclaimed, "Oh, you mean that fellow that rode around all night, yelling for help! No, we don't have anybody like that down here in Texas."



## Towns in Texas

Lemonville, Texas, is in Orange County.



All these are in Texas—Paradise, Utopia, Devine, Sublime, Loving, Blessing, Happy and Joy. There are also Mud, Clay, Sand, Earth and Grit. They are towns.



There are three Bostons in Texas—all within five miles of each other—Boston, Old Boston and New Boston.



In Texas may be found Pittsburg, Los Angeles, Buffalo, Detroit, Omaha, Moscow, Paris, Turkey and Italy.



It is farther from El Paso to Texarkana than from Chicago to New York.

# NOVEMBER IN TEXAS



NOVEMBER 17, 1882, the cornerstone of the University of Texas was laid.

\* \* \*

2, 1831, was made a famous date in Texas history when James Bowie, his brother, Rezin P. Bowie, and seven other Americans and two Negro servants were attacked by 164 Tehuacana and Caddo Indians in the neighborhood of the San Saba Mission. The Bowies threw up temporary breastworks and, after an all-day fight, the Indians with nearly half their number dead sullenly withdrew. The Americans lost only one man with three wounded.

\* \* \*

3, 1793, Stephen F. Austin, the "Father of Texas," was born in Virginia.

\* \* \*

3, 1936, is the date the people of Texas voted for an amendment increasing the salary of the Governor from \$4,000 to \$12,000 per annum. The Governor also is furnished the Mansion in which to live and a special appropriation for household expenses, etc.

\* \* \*

6, 1528, Cabeza de Vaca, with about 80 men, was stranded on an unknown island along the Gulf Coast of Texas. Faced with starvation, the party was reduced to a mere fifteen men in a few months. Indians in the vicinity captured the rest, killed some and made slaves of the remainder, including De Vaca.

\* \* \*

\* \* \*

6, 1801, Gail Borden, Jr., after whom Borden County was named, was born at Norwich, New York. He came to Texas in 1829, established a newspaper at San Felipe called *The Telegraph and Texas Register*, whose plant was destroyed by Santa Anna's orders just before the Battle of San Jacinto. Borden, when over 50, secured a patent on an invention to condense milk, from which the family name is now world famous.

\* \* \*

8, 1844, in the Presidential campaign preceding the general election in the United States, the battle cry was "Polk and Texas" or "Clay and No Texas."

\* \* \*

11, 1807, Ephraim Blackburn was hanged in Mexico, being the man who threw the smallest number with dice in the carrying out of an order to hang every fifth man of the few prisoners left from the capture of the Nolan Expedition. The other eight remaining prisoners, including Peter Ellis Bean, were sentenced to ten years of labor.

\* \* \*

11, 1836, Lorenzo de Zavala, "gentleman, patriot and scholar," who had joined the Texans against the dictator of his native land, died at his home in Texas.

\* \* \*

22, 1821, the first boatload of American colonists destined for Texas left New Orleans.

\* \* \*

# TEXAS — TEXANS AND TEXANA

---

## “THE EYES OF TEXAS ARE UPON YOU”

OFTEN MISTAKEN as the State song of Texas, “The Eyes of Texas” is a favorite, but the official State song, made so in 1929, is “Texas, Our Texas.”

“The Eyes of Texas” was adopted by the University of Texas as a result of an incident of considerable interest. It has become known in all parts of the United States, and, since World War II, is recognized all over the world. Vast indeed is the audience which could join in singing the Chorus:

*“The eyes of Texas are upon you,  
All the live-long day,  
The eyes of Texas are upon you,  
You cannot get away.  
Do not think you can escape them,  
At night, or early in the morn,  
The eyes of Texas are upon you,  
Till Gabriel blows his horn.”*

The story goes that William L. Prather, who was president of the University of Texas from 1899-1906, stated in his initial address to the student body:

“On one occasion during the Civil War it fell to the lot of a Texas troop to be reviewed by General Robert E. Lee. The officer in charge gave this command: ‘Forward, men of Texas, the eyes of General Lee are upon you.’”

Then President Prather, paraphrasing, added: “Forward, young men and women of the University of Texas; the eyes of Texas are upon you.”

The phrasing quickly “caught on,” and in 1903 a student poet on the campus, one John Lang Sinclair, wrote the lines of the inspirational song which is so beloved a University tradition today and set them to the tune of “I’ve Been Working on the Railroad (Levee).” Soon it was known as the University song.

In his final commencement address, President Prather closed with the admonition: “The eyes of Texas are upon you till Gabriel blows his horn.”





## “MOTHER OF TEXAS”

*Y*EARS before most of the Texas colonists began arriving in the new pioneer territory, even years before General Sam Houston made his name famous over the United States and the liberty-loving world, there came to Texas a Mississippi physician, Dr. James Long, who became one of the earliest Texas patriots and leaders. Soon his wife joined him.

Since Dr. Long died at the age of twenty-seven in Mexico City, killed by a Mexican, as the elected governor of a republic that existed only on paper and leader of three hundred men against the majestic dignity of Spain, it is with his wife, Jane Wilkinson Long, that legend is mostly concerned.

“The Mother of Texas,” as she was later to be called, came to Texas as a young mother herself, joining her husband here soon after the birth of her second child. She was accustomed to the social life of Natchez, Mississippi, to which state her own parents had moved not long after her birth in Maryland in 1789.

But she came from a family who had known revolution: her ancestors had been famous in the American Revolutionary days. And Jane Wilkinson Long proved that she could stand hardship and the biggest trials of pioneer life.

After a short stay at Nacogdoches, General Long took his wife to the newly established fort at Point Bolivar, to await his return from Goliad, where he was to make a treaty with Mexican insurgents there, to be named provisional governor of Texas, to be arrested and at last to meet his death at the hands of a civilian in Mexico City.

After several months, provisions became low at Fort Bolivar. The escort of twenty-five men began to get restless,

and to leave. Except for her child and for the Negro slave girl, Kian, Mrs. Long was alone.

Mrs. Theresa M. Hunter, in her book, *Romantic Interludes of Texas Heroes*, tells how Mrs. Long was forced occasionally to fire the cannon at the fort to frighten the cannibalistic Karankawas, who lived near by, and also the Mexican forces. Mrs. Long and Kian had to hunt and fish for their food.

December 21, 1821, the first white child to be born of American parentage in Texas was born to Mrs. Long. Kian was her only attendant.

Shortly before this Mrs. Long had learned of the death of her husband.

But she lived sixty years after her husband's death, to witness the series of events that Texas went through as Republic and as State. She was a settler in Austin's colony and a plantation owner at Richmond, this "First Lady of Texas."



## PRESIDENTS AND GOVERNORS OF TEXAS

HENRY SMITH, 1st. Provisional Governor of Texas, 1835-1836; David G. Burnet, 2nd. Provisional Governor before the Republic was founded, March 1836-October 1836; Sam Houston, 1st. and 3rd. President of the Republic of Texas, 1836-1838, and 1841-1844 (due to the fact that the Constitution of the new Republic forbade a President's serving two consecutive terms); Mirabeau B. Lamar, 2nd. President of the Republic of Texas, 1838-1841; Anson Jones, 4th. President of the Republic of Texas, 1844-1846; J. Pinckney Henderson, 1st. Governor of the American State of Texas, 1846-1847; George T. Wood, Governor, 1847-1849; Peter Hansborough Bell, Governor, 1849-1853; J. W. Henderson (Lt. Gov.), Nov. 23, 1853-Dec. 21, 1853; Elisha Marshall Pease, Governor, 1853-1857; Hardin R. Runnels, Governor, 1857-1859; Sam Houston, Governor, 1859-1861; Edward Clark, Governor, 1861; Francis R. Lubbock, Governor, 1861-1863; Pendleton Murrah, Governor, 1863-1865; Fletcher S. Stockdale (Lt. Gov.), May to June, 1865; Andrew Jackson Hamilton, Governor, 1865-1866;

James W. Throckmorton, Governor, 1866-1867; Elisha M. Pease, Governor, 1867-1869; Edmund J. Davis, Governor, 1870-1874; Richard Coke, Governor, 1874-1876; Richard B. Hubbard, Governor, 1876-1879; Oran M. Roberts, Governor, 1879-1883; John Ireland, Governor, 1883-1887; Lawrence Sullivan Ross, Governor, 1887-1891; James Stephen Hogg, Governor, 1891-1895; Charles A. Culberson, Governor, 1895-1899; Joseph D. Sayers, Governor, 1899-1903; S. W. T. Lanham, Governor, 1903-1907; Thomas Mitchell Campbell, Governor, 1907-1911; Oscar Branch Colquitt, Governor, 1911-1915; James E. Ferguson, Governor, 1915-1917; William Pettus Hobby, Governor, 1917-1921; Pat Morris Neff, Governor, 1921-1925; Miriam A. Ferguson, Governor, 1925-1927; Dan Moody, Governor, 1927-1931; Ross S. Sterling, Governor, 1931-1933; Miriam A. Ferguson, Governor, 1933-1935; James V. Allred, Governor, 1935-1939; W. Lee O'Daniel, Governor, 1939-1941; Coke R. Stevenson, Governor, 1941-1947; Beauford H. Jester, Governor, 1947-Present.



## LAW WEST OF THE PECOS

OUT of all the colorful figures that arose during the great American migration towards the Pacific, Roy Bean is probably unique as an example of a man cast for a minor, if not inferior, role in the conquest of the West, and yet one whose name has survived as that of a sort of legendary hero of the same order as the mythical Paul Bunyan.

Roy Bean lived in the Southwest during the days following the 1849 gold rush. His early history is very obscure, but it is fairly well established that he was a Kentuckian by birth and came to Texas in his early youth. Reports that he was a Canadian seem to be without basis.

Bean's realm of power during the eighties and nineties was the wild, untamed wastes that stretched for endless miles west of the Pecos River. Contrary to the general belief that his judiciary powers were self-assumed, Bean was elected justice of the peace for Precinct 3 of Val Verde County in May, 1885, and thence followed his quasi-legal sway on the border that lasted for twenty years. A copy of the Revised Statutes of Texas was his only legal aid. He followed the dictates of his heart more often than he did his legal reasoning, and the numerous stories illustrating his sympathetic feeling towards the underdog strikingly bear this out.

For the lover of anecdotes, Roy Bean is the proverbial gold mine. A characteristic story concerns an Irishman accused of killing a Chinese. The Irish spent their money very freely in Bean's saloon, but the thrifty Chinese contributed very little to the Justice's business. Fearful of losing the lucrative patronage of the Irish, and perhaps a trifle concerned over the possibility of the defendant's friends getting a bit rough, Bean was torn between his duties as a judge and as a businessman. Finally, calling in the defendant, he proceeded to search through his only legal volume, and then he announced his verdict that the statutes were very definite in regard to killing your fellow man but provided no penalty for killing a Chinese. He then dismissed the case.

Perhaps more stories have been told about Bean's ability at short-changing than any other single characteristic. Passengers stopping over for a drink were often forced to run for their train without their change. Stories about Lily Langtry, Bean's numerous inquests, his pet bear, have often been told and written. Many stories have been told that will never be written, by reason of their pronounced off-color.

Bean died March 19, 1903, and was buried at Del Rio. An explanation of why he was not buried near his saloon at Langtry, Texas, is that up to the time of his death, the only burials made there were of individuals who had met violent deaths and it was not considered fitting for him to lie beside men who had been hanged or murdered.



Twenty miles northeast of Brady is said to be the geographical center of the area of Texas.



## CYNTHIA ANN PARKER

*A*MONG the stories of Indian depredations in Texas, the massacre of the families at Parker's Fort by a band of Comanche and Kiowa Indians, on May 19, 1836, stands out as the most tragic in all of this state's frontier history.

In 1833 a small colony was established on the Navasota River near the present town of Groesbeck. The settlers were well aware of the dangers of Indian attack, and on an eminence adjacent to a large timbered tract they erected a fort and stockade for protection. The head of the colony was John Parker, and the several families totaled thirty-four members. The nearest settlement was Fort Houston, ninety miles away.

Three of the men were working in the fields on May 19, 1836, when several hundred Comanche and Kiowa Indians suddenly appeared in front of the fort. Benjamin Parker attempted to induce them to leave, and they answered by killing him. The fort was taken, most of the men were killed, several were captured, several wounded, and a few escaped to Fort Houston, after six days of hardship.

One of the captives, a Mrs. Kellogg, was ransomed from the Indians after being held prisoner for six months. Another, Mrs. Plummer, was held for eighteen months, and a baby son born during her imprisonment was brutally murdered by her captors. An older son who was captured also remained among the Indians for six years.

Cynthia Ann and John Parker, daughter and son, respectively, of Silas M. Parker, were also captives over a long period of time. John lived for many years as an Indian. He later joined the Confederate Army, and after the war, took up ranching in the West.

Cynthia Ann so thoroughly adapted herself to the nomadic Indian life that in later years, when her identity was

made known, she was reluctant to give up her old mode of living. She married Peta Nocona, a celebrated Indian chief, and gave birth to the most famous of all Comanche chiefs, Quanah Parker, for whom the city of Quanah, Texas, is named. Recaptured by the whites at the battle of Pease River in 1860, she was brought back to civilization, more or less against her will. She died near Palestine in 1864, after partially regaining the habits of her early life.



## DOLORES AND HER FAITHFUL VIGIL

*T*HE legend of Dolores is a familiar and favorite one among the people of the Davis Mountains. It has been told and retold from one generation to another, but it will always have a pathos and a charm for its listeners. It is an epic well befitting this intriguing and romantic country.

Dolores was a Mexican maid who loved young José, herder of goats. Each day José drove his goats to the mountain slopes around Fort Davis, and as he sat on the windy, sunny heights and watched his animals, his merry songs rang out upon the air and drifted down to his people. "José is happy," they would say with a smile. "His wedding day draws near."

José followed his goats as usual to the slope on his wedding day. His eyes shone with happiness. On his return at the close of the day Dolores would become his bride.

When the sun sank behind the hills, José did not appear as usual, and when the night came down like a cloak upon the mountains, Dolores climbed to the top of the rock-rimmed hill and built a fire as a beacon light for her lover.

When morning came and he had not yet returned, the soldiers from the fort went in search of the youth. They found him on the slopes, slain and scalped, the victim of Indians.

When Dolores was told of the tragedy, her mind snapped and for the remainder of her life, thirty long years, she lived in a twilight watch for her lover's return. She made regular pilgrimages to the summit of the hill and there she would light her fire as dusk fell over the mountains, to guide her lover safely home.

She grew old at her watch. Her lovely face became wrinkled, her bright eyes were dulled. But her heart remained young and her faith strong.

One of the last persons to see Dolores' fire was Mrs. Susan M. Janes, a pioneer of Fort Davis. She was visiting in the ranch home of General B. H. Grierson when, one night, she saw a small, flickering light upon the mountainside. She asked the general what the light could be and he told her about Dolores, then an old woman, who had built her beacon on this point for the past thirty years.

A few days later the general returned from town and told Mrs. Janes that Dolores would build no more fires for José, because she was dead.

Dolores was buried at the foot of the mountain, but imaginative persons declare that they can still see her signal fire on the mountaintop.

It is said that true love never dies. Perhaps the spirits of Dolores and José, again united, hover over a phantom fire on the mountaintop where she kept her faithful vigil of love for many years. Who knows?



The sum of \$50 bought an entire Texas town—Seguin—in 1843.



Larger than the states of Rhode Island, Delaware or Connecticut is Brewster County, Texas.



The Texas "Panhandle," the northern tip of the state, is so called because it appears on the map to be the handle of a giant pan.



## THREE VAQUEROS

DOWN in South Texas, and particularly so the nearer Texas comes to story-loving Mexico, there are almost as many legends as there are mesquite trees—and the most popular tales are those with a broad stripe of the supernatural. Such a story is *The Legend of the Chain*, related by Oscar Dolch, Jr., who hails from the very section where such tales are wont to grow wild—and wilder.

Many years ago, three vaqueros were riding back to the ranch house after a day on the range. It was nearing midnight, and there was a slow drizzle of rain that wet the ground and riders. As they rode along, they sang the songs of their ancestors.

Suddenly one of them stopped singing and halted his horse, for he had seen something. It was a red flame slowly burning near the bank of an arroyo. The vaquero pointed it out to his companions, who looked at it in wonderment. They decided to investigate, and as they neared the flame, it suddenly receded to a light glow, and then disappeared from view.

The three vaqueros, puzzled, gazed down at the spot where they had seen the flame a few moments before. Suddenly one of them recalled that hidden gold or other treasures would give forth a flame or glow atop the ground where it was hidden in damp weather. This he told to his companions, who at once suggested that they search the ground where they had seen the flame.

The three vaqueros at once dismounted and began a search of the ground, using matches for light. Suddenly one uttered an exclamation of surprise. He had found something. The others rushed over to him. It was a large rusty chain that was buried in the ground, only a few links of it exposed.

Excited, they at once began digging, following the chain.



Suddenly, out of the stillness of the night, there came an alarming and a weird cry. The vaqueros, frightened, stopped digging. Their horses jumped in fear and began running toward the ranch house about two miles away.

Overcoming their fear, the vaqueros laughed, for they were convinced that the strange yell that they had heard was only that of a mountain lion, lions being numerous in that vicinity. They began digging again, thinking only of the gold that they might find. Suddenly they were again filled with fear as the unearthly cry came to their ears, this time much closer. And then, to their terror, the cry was recognized as not that of a mountain lion, but of something else which they could not vision in their minds.

Suddenly, out of the stillness and following the cry, came the pounding of horse's hoofs, then the clashing of swords—that pounding of hoofs coming closer, and rattling and clanging of hundreds of chains. The weird sounds continued to come closer and closer, and when it seemed that the phenomenon was upon them, one of the vaqueros dropped dead from fright. Seeing this, the other two, alarmed beyond description, began to flee for their lives toward the ranch house.

As they ran, slipping and falling in the mud, the awful sounds followed them. Running desperately in an effort to outdistance whatever was after him, with chaparral and cactus tearing at his body, one vaquero, much to his terror, found that he was running alone. He looked back for his fellow companion, but he was nowhere in sight. There was nothing but those inhuman screams—that rattling of chains and clashing of swords—that pounding of hoofs coming closer and closer.

Terrorized, the lone vaquero ran and reached the ranch house in an exhausted state. He pushed open the door of the house and fell to the floor, pale with fright and breathing hard. The vaqueros in the house rushed to him. Between gasps of breath the dying vaquero related to them what had happened. When he finished, a terrorized look came over his face, and he rolled over dead. And such is the legend of the chain as told by a vaquero of the borderland.



All in all, there are 227 mountain peaks in Texas.



## CANNIBALISTIC SLAVES IN THE DAVIS MOUNTAINS

FREIGHTER Lewis and his caravan of twenty wagons pulled to a stop in Limpia Canyon late one evening in the 1860's, as dusk settled over the Davis Mountains. Camp was made by a cool mountain stream and weary oxen were unharnessed and fed. A fire was made and soon the tired teamsters were preparing their own evening meal. As the rays of the setting sun glimmered and flickered through the deep underbrush of the canyon, one of the teamsters noticed a wisp of smoke from a rocky ridge not far away. The men naturally thought that Indians were near and seizing their rifles, a small group started out to investigate. They made their way cautiously over the rocks and discovered a cave in the foothills. In this cave they were surprised to find a Negro man and woman busy cooking a meal over a camp-fire.

The teamsters, relieved to see that their neighbor campers were not Indians, walked into the cave and started questioning the blacks. The man, a large burly fellow with a thick neck and sullen, suspicious eyes, would not give out much information. He left the woman to do the talking. She told the men that they were runaway slaves from back East, and were heading for Mexico and freedom.

She was cooking meat over the fire, and one of the teamsters asked her for a portion. "I'se cookin' Mexican hog," the woman said, "and white folks don't like it."

But the men looked so hungry that she relented and asked them to sit down. They needed no second invitation to squat about the fire. One teamster demanded a rib and when she handed it to him he thought it looked unusually wide for a musk hog's rib. As he started to bite into the brown, savory morsel, he caught sight of a human head not far away on a rock. It had black, kinky hair.

The teamsters took the slaves back to their own camp after this startling discovery and listened in amazement to their weird story.

Three of them had started together. They ran away from their masters and headed for Mexico. They managed to forage food well enough before the Western country was reached. But in this barren, desolate country, they had grown hungry to the point of starvation. The woman and one man plotted to kill the other man and eat him. She had awakened early the following morning and with her knife had slit the neckvein of her victim. She then skinned him and cut him into small pieces. She had tied some of the flesh in her apron to eat along the way to Mexico.

As the teamsters listened to the gruesome story they did not doubt that the ancestors of these two blacks had often sat about a cannibalistic fire in Africa where similar feasts were enjoyed.

The Negroes were taken to El Paso the following day with the teamsters, but the man escaped the party and fled across to Mexico. Freightler Lewis took the woman back to San Antonio with him, where she served his family for many years.



The Lone Star flag of Texas is the only state flag to fly over an independent republic. Texas is the only state in the Union with a constitutional right to divide itself. Section 3, Article IV of the Federal Constitution provides that new states may be admitted but that no new states shall be formed or created within the jurisdiction of any other state. Texas is the exception.



The largest county in Texas is more than five times the size of Rhode Island. Texas has 254 counties, of which about one third are larger in area than the smallest state.

# THE INDEPENDENCE

## Eleven Sonnets on the Glorious History of Texas

By STARK YOUNG

### *The Phantoms*

#### I

Like flame upon the hills of Texas burns  
The sun. The swift wind riseth on the land,  
The shadows hover in the driving sand  
Like ominous ghosts that leave their burial urns.  
The deer flees past unto his haunted ferns,  
And drops of blood within his nostrils stand.  
Upon the hill the hunter lifts his hand  
And looks out on the golden fields, and turns  
His anxious gaze in silence towards his home.  
And darker grow the hills unto his sight,  
As hither borne upon the winds from far  
The cries of women unto him are come,  
Vapours of blood arise, and on the night  
Are stalking glooms, and phantom shapes of war.

### *The Heroes*

#### II

Sons of a land betrayed and wronged are they,  
Whose feet are set to the immortal height,  
The dragged columns in whose desperate might  
The Saxon blood hath voiced itself today.  
And thou, Martin, whose thirty cut their way  
Through hostile lines with succour in the night;  
And thou, brave Bonham, who returned to fight  
And die beside thy comrades in the fray.  
Mild Austin who of duty knows the worth  
And unto others gives the laurel wreath;  
And Houston, burly chief of wit and brawn  
The Atlas of his little Western earth;  
And Travis last, who opens unto death  
As one that hears Christ calling through the dawn.

*The Rising of the Flag*

## III

Above the land whose fabled cities' might  
Drew Cortez with his dream of paradise,  
And o'er the bay where rich with merchandise  
Came Spanish galleons heaving into sight;  
Among the stars above the prairie bright,  
And following bright the track of the sun — doth rise  
A star. And to men's eager wondering eyes  
It looms, by day it shines and shines by night,  
And up and up and up. And from afar  
Its flame draws men, and more and more alit  
With splendour rises and doth never lag.  
Houston appears; and following the star,  
Crockett — unto the heavens that beacon it  
Higher and higher Texas lifts her flag!

## IV

Disaster on disaster falls like rain.  
The Constitution goes, and in its stead  
The new Republic comes, Smith at the head  
Works havoc; union thwarted strives in vain.  
The war-whoop on the prairie sounds again,  
The march to Matamoros fails, and red  
The road extends where northward armed with dread  
Draws Santa Anna with his rabble train.  
Oh, men of Texas, will ye rise and smite!  
The thousands yet unborn rely on you.  
Behold the fugitives about the door!  
Help us, O Council, desperate our plight!  
We strove and lost, what further shall we do?  
— Die — responds the Council and no more.

*The Capitulation*

## V

Hear, oh hear, ye Texans, on this day  
Bexar, the town of the vile Mexican,

Welcomes the stranger army, and the man  
Whose heel drew Texas blood, resumes his sway.  
In harlot's arms the soldiers sleep away  
The weary march. Closed are the streets that ran  
Once free to citizens. The deadly plan  
Reaches the handful where they stand at bay.  
Surrender is the word. There comes at length  
A cannon shot. It is the answer then!  
And Travis and Crockett stake for their last throw  
Their hopes on us, on God and on their strength —  
"For God's sake and our country's send us men!"  
Fannin at Goliad, hasten now to go!

### *The Last Night*

#### VI

Fannin his wagons failing cannot come.  
The shrill *degüello* sounds, the Spaniard nears  
Closer upon the mission fort, and rears  
The blood-red flag on the cathedral dome.  
The plazas sleep, the revellers gone home;  
And round the gate hiss crime and coward fears,  
Noises of doom, the sound of blood and tears,  
Where rapine howls, and prowling death doth roam.  
And Travis there within doth sit alone  
Under the steadfast stars, and in the gloom  
Bodies his son's face; and dwelling yet  
Upon God's Book, asks that His will be done.  
The watch is called. And now the outside doom  
Stirs with the walking dawn. The stars are set.

### *The Vision*

#### VII

Behold thy soul a looming vision meets,  
O Santa Anna! Embrace it as thy spouse!  
The fateful mill grinds men, whose blood endows  
Anew the shadowy wheel with power, and beats  
Into a pool. Therein a woman greets  
Her reeking image, there the stars carouse  
And burn like fireflies in a charnelhouse;  
And ghostly wailing haunts its dark retreats.  
Beyond her, lo, a grim procession swoops!

There's treachery and murdered Fatherland!  
The shrouded Inquisition lurks and would  
A chalice give — she snatches it and stoops,  
Plunges her arms, and shrieks, and in her hand  
Raiseth the cup brimming with patriot blood.

### *The Alamo*

#### VIII

Is then Thermopylae come from the shade  
Of ancient death and grand oblivion?  
Ere dawn they charge. Stand, little garrison!  
On — fail not God and Texas! They have made  
The wall — hold then your church and carronade.  
The loop-holes flame, the aqueducts will run  
Crimson with blood — ye fight a score with one!  
The smoke dies down, your glory cannot fade —  
The rising sun finds death and silence there.  
Beside the wall Travis lies slain, and nigh  
The chapel glorious Crockett, fallen among  
The hostile hundreds and our few. Hear,  
O Mexico! this is no victory,  
For from these veins are wells of freedom sprung!

### *Goliad*

#### IX

Oh, never yet blew fairer orchard rose,  
This day the palms shall hail our Saviour king.  
Here treachery the tyrant's orders bring.  
— Never — and hot with shame Guerrier throws  
His epaulets from him. Portilla goes.  
False liar to thy oath, seest thou this thing?  
Three hundred to the shambles hastening.  
And Fannin blindfold bowed amid his foes.  
The Alamo in glory died, but there ye lie  
Butchered like dogs, and welter where ye fell!  
O Santa Anna, blood hath made thee mad —  
That awful silence speaks, the day is nigh  
When thou shalt grovel in thy captive cell  
And ask of God pardon of Goliad.

*The Runaway*

## X

Canst thou not hear, O God — the mire,  
The terrible roadways writhe with misery!  
East, East! — the women sink, the children die;  
The ruts run blood; rest, their one desire!  
A woman shrieks, a horseman drawing nigher —  
“Texas forever, Texas,” and they see  
Young Hardin hot with news of victory  
And San Jacinto won! Their veins run fire.  
The hundreds laugh and sob and kiss; and those  
Whose hearts were ashes leave their cries,  
And leap and shout to God who knows  
Their wrongs. And then the quiet moon doth rise  
And o’er the flowered plain the spring wind blows.  
And peace and sleep are come to weary eyes.

*The Republic*

## XI

Rejoice, O Texans, in your liberty!  
The thunder of your guns hath girded round  
The world. Southward the tyrants ye shall hound,  
And havoc cry among them as they flee.  
O stay, white gull, and carry over sea  
The word that Freedom now her home hath found.  
To us shall Europe send her treaties bound  
In gold, America proclaim us free.  
Lo, in the East a light, the day hath dawned  
Where from the West the ancient night is dying.  
And from the uncertain crowd, whose gropings mar  
Her plan, and through the venturous rabble spawned  
By Chance on her, emerges Houston — crying —  
Burly and strong, “On, Texas, with thy star!”





# DECEMBER IN TEXAS



DECEMBER 5, 1836, marks the date of creation of the Texas Rangers. The bill stated that, "to protect the frontier of Texas," a battalion would be organized, composed of mounted riflemen, to consist of 280 men, for a term of twelve months or upward, each man to furnish a horse, rifle and brace of pistols. The President was authorized to increase this force, if necessary, to one regiment of 560 men.

5, 1805, Colonel Michael B. Menard, after whom Menard County was named, was born in La Prairie, Montreal, Canada, came to Texas in 1833 and settled near Nacogdoches. He laid out the town of Galveston in December, 1836.

7, 1835, Ben Milam, daring patriot of the Texas Revolution, was killed, three days after leading the vanguard against the city then held by the Mexican forces.

12, 1835, some of the bravest of Fannin's men to fall in the massacre at Goliad were the Red Rovers, a company of 75 young men, organized at Courtland, Alabama, by Dr. John Shackelford, who landed at Copano and joined Fannin at Goliad. Dr. Shackelford was spared because of his medical services to the Mexicans. The company had a flag which was a rich red square and they wore bright red uniforms. The captured red flag was taken to Mexico City and placed in the museum. Dr. Shackelford was held a prisoner until the following June, when he escaped and returned to his old home in Alabama. Shackelford County was named for him.

13, 1868, a United States Army post was established at Jefferson, in Northeast Texas, where duties, the historian says, were those "of sheriff and mounted constables, arresting murderers, horse thieves, etc." Two units were kept there from the first, a cavalry unit and an infantry unit. There was no reservation, the troops being quartered on hired ground in the suburbs of the town.

21, 1842, the alcalde of the Mexican town of Mier slept at night on the ground between two Texans, members of Col. William S. Fisher's volunteers, who later became the Mier Expedition prisoners. Although the Mexican alcalde could not understand English, nor could his two guards understand Spanish, it is said the three reached a perfect understanding as regards the cover they had that night. When they wished to turn over, because of their cramped position, signals were used and they got along fine.

22, 1889, the Hallettsville Lutheran Church was organized; it was the forerunner of Lutheran churches at Moulton, Shiner, Breslau, Shiloh and Sublime.

# Index

- Adams, John, President of U. S., 64, 68  
 Addison, James, quoted, 194  
 Adobe Walls, battle of, 1864, 248  
*Advance-Guard*, newspaper, Goliad, 47  
 Aguayo, Marques San Miguel de, 43, 180  
 Aigron, Captain of the *Aimable*, 30  
*Aimable*, ship, 25, 28, 29, 30, 32, 33, 39, 42, 47  
 Alamo, description of, 89-90; erection of, 89, 150; heroes of (as listed on Cenotaph), 84; men of the, xviii, 85-96, 152; origin of the name, 96; siege of, 6, 78, 84, 88, 91-96, 107, 119, 162, 168, 245, 252; Alamo Plaza, 89, 90  
*Alamo, Men of the*, 85-96  
 Alarcón Expedition, 3, 150  
 Alcázar, Diego de, 20  
 Allen, midshipman, 129  
 Allen Brothers, 225  
 Almonte, Colonel Juan N., 112, 120, 121  
*Along Trails of Early Texas*, 209-217  
*Americanization of Texas, The*, 55-77  
 Anahuac Affair, the, 6  
 Anahuac, mission at, 1756, 258  
 Andrade, General, 110  
 Annexation of Texas, 7, 8, 81, 142-144, 150, 168, 169, 180, 233  
 Apache Indians, 50, 52, 220, 226  
*April in Texas*, 82  
 Aransas Indians, 24  
 Archer, Branch T., 6, 142  
 Archive War, 1842, 7  
 Archives, State, 222, 225, 226, 227  
 Area, of Texas, 188  
*Arizona*, ship, 238  
 Armijo, Governor Manuel, 186, 187  
 Army, of Texas, 86, 109, 114, 119-122  
 Arnold, Colonel Benedict, 62, 68  
 Arredondo, General, 10, 208  
 Arroyo Potrancia (Filly Creek), 51  
 Asinai Indians, 180, 219  
 Atascosita Road, 215  
 Athapascan Indians, 220  
 Attacapan Indians, 219  
*August in Texas*, 208  
*Austin*, ship, 128, 129, 130, officers listed, 137; 138  
 Austin, Texas, 10, 221, 223, 226, 227  
*Austins, Advance Agents of Destiny, The*, 79-81  
 Austin, Moses, 10, 79, 80, 81, 154, 172  
 Austin, Stephen F., as colonizer, xv, 4, 5, 6, 76, 79, 80, 81, 88-89, 154, 257; general biographical facts, 76, 151, 152, 154, 262; imprisonment in Mexico City, 6, 48, 80, 81, 154; negotiations with U. S. Government, 142, 145, 146; tribute to, 181  
*Austin State Gazette*, newspaper, 188  
*Ayuntamiento*, 5  
 Baker, Captain Mosely, 111, 112, 113, 119, 191  
 Balboa, 11  
 Barbier, Sieur, 36  
 Barnard, Doctor, quoted, 96, 106  
 Bartlett, John R., quoted, 50  
 Basket-Maker Indians, 219, 220  
 Bastidas, 11  
 Bastrop, Baron de, aids Moses Austin, 80  
 "Battle Creek," 253  
 Battle flags of Texas, 139-140  
 Baudin des Audennes, Admiral Charles, 134  
 Baylor, George, 130  
 Baylor College for Women (Mary Hardin-Baylor), 48  
 Baylor University, Waco, Texas, 48, 253  
 Beale, Edward F., 242  
 Bean, Judge Roy, "Law West of the Pecos," 250, 266-267  
 Bean, Peter Ellis, 66, 262  
 Beaujeau, quoted, 25; 26, 27, 28, 30, 43, 47, 60  
 Becero, Sergeant, 96  
*Belle*, ship, 25, 31, 32, 34, 39  
 Bienville, 59  
 Birdsall, Doctor, 225  
 Bird, Texas State, 9  
 Bird's Creek, battle of, 253  
 Bird's Fort, 254  
 Black bean drawing, 181  
 Blackburn, Ephraim, 66, 262  
 Blandon, Anthony, 196  
 Blannerhassett's Island, 74  
 Bollaert, manuscript quoted, 201, 202, 205, 206  
 Bolton, Dr. Herbert E., verifies Cárdenas map locating Fort St. Louis, 44, 45

- Bonham, James B., 87, 91, 92, 100  
 Boot Hill Cemetery, 248  
 Borden, Gail, Jr., 224, 225, 262  
 Bowie, James, 85, 87, 89, 90, 91, 94,  
     quoted, 138; 215, 249, 250, 262  
 Bowie, Rezin P., 215, 264  
 Bowles, Chief, 255  
 Boyce House, quoted, *I Give You Texas*, 77  
 Brannan, Captain, the *San Antonio*, 130  
 Brashear, Lieutenant Commander William C., 133  
 Bravo, General, 146  
 Brenham, Doctor Richard F., 185  
 Brewster County, Texas, size of, 270  
 Brindle Creek, origin of name, 53  
 Brown, John S., 136  
 Browning Memorial Room, Baylor University, Waco, Texas, 253  
*Brutus*, ship, 125, 127, 135, 136  
 Bryant, A. J., midshipman, 130  
 Buena Vista, battle of, 174, 175, 230, 231  
 Buffalo in Texas, 179, 240  
 Bullhide Creek, origin of name, 54  
 Burleson, General Edward, quoted, 138  
 Burnet, Mrs. David G., 126  
 Burnet, President David G., 7, 82, 89, 109, 126, 140-142, 168-169, 172, 222, 224, 257  
 Burnet, William, son of President Burnet, 126  
 Burns, Lieutenant Aaron, 126  
 Burr, Aaron, 55, 56, 57, 58, 62, 64, 66, biographical, 67-70, 72, 73, 74; "conspiracy," 66, 73-76  
     *See "Americanization of Texas"*  
 Burton, Major Isaac W., 172  
 Bushick Mound, Indian camp-ground, 254  
 Butterfield Overland Stage, the, 50, 247  
 Caballo (Horse) Pass, 51  
 Cabeza de Vaca, 1, 4, 11, 12, 13-21, 49, 58, 82, 180, 208, 262  
*Cabeza de Vaca and Horsehead*, 49-54  
*Cabeza de Vaca Escapes from the Indians*, 16-21  
*Cabeza de Vaca Meets the Karankawa Indians*, 13-16  
 Caddo Indians, 63, 219, 262  
 Caldwell, Matthew, "Old Paint," 184, 185  
*Camels in Texas*, story of, 241-242  
 Camps, in Texas, Colorado, 1856, (now in ruins), 249; Concho, 249; Cooper, 249; Hudson, 1861, 250; Verde, 1856 (now in ruins), 241, 242, 250; Wood, 1857, 250  
 Canary Islanders, arrival in San Antonio, 78  
 Candelario, mission of, 250  
*Cannibalistic Slaves in Davis Mountains*, folklore, 273-274  
 Capitol buildings pictured, 223  
 Capitol Hill, Austin, 227  
*Capitols of Texas*, 221-227  
 Cárdenas, M. J. de, y Magana, 42, 43  
 Carlos, John, 172  
 Carson, Kit, 248  
 Carson, Samuel, Texas Secretary of State, 142  
 Carter, James, 248  
 Cartwright, Matthew, 192  
 Casa Blanca fort, 251  
 Casa Blanca ranch, 251  
 Casas Amarillas, Indian camp-ground, 247, 248  
 Castillo, 19  
 Castrillon, General, 93, 121  
 Castro, Henri de, 218  
 Catlett, Fairfax, 146  
 Cattle industry in Texas, before Civil War, 243; after Civil War, 239, 240, 243, 244; today, 243, 244  
*Cattle in Texas*, 243-244  
 Cattle trails in Texas, 212-217  
 Cavalier, Abbé Jean, 22, 27, 37, 38, 39  
 Cavalier, Nicholas, 22  
 Cedar Lake, early watering place, 247  
 Cenis Indians, 38  
 Cenotaph, Alamo heroes listed on, 84; 89  
 Centennial Exposition, of Texas, 172  
 Chambers, General Thomas J., 48  
*Cheap Land*, 124  
 Cherokee Indian battlefield, 1838, 255  
 Cherokee Indians, 53, 220  
 Cherokee Indian village, 255  
 Chihuahuas Trail, 216  
 Childress, George, commissioner to U. S., 142  
 Chisholm, Jessc, 212, 213  
 Chisholm Trail, 50, 212  
 Chisum, John S., 213, 214, 254  
 Chisum Trail (Old Butterfield Route), 213  
 Choctaw Indians, 220  
 "Cienegas Fight, The," *Frontier Times*, 50 n.

- "City Park, Texarkana," illustration, 255  
*Civilian and Galveston City Gazette*, newspaper, 130  
 Civil War, Texas in: army in, 236; cattle industry following war, 239-240; economic conditions, 234, 235; Galveston captured December, 1862, 237, 258; Generals, 236; Navy in Texas, 237-238; Palmito, last battle of, in Texas, 150, 251; Reconstruction, 8, 9, 239-240; Sabine Pass, battle, 237-239; secession, 48, 235; slaves in Texas, 234, 236; smuggling from Mexico, 236, 237  
 Clapp's Ferry, 256  
 Clark, Governor Edward, 172, 236  
 Clarksville *Standard*, newspaper, 125  
 Claude Keeran Ranch, location of Fort St. Louis, 45  
 "Clay and No Texas," 262  
*Clifton*, ship, 238  
 Clopper, A. M., quoted, 194  
 "Clopper's Bar," 126  
 Coahuiltecan Indians, 220  
 Coastal Indians, 219  
 Coffee's Trading Post, 254  
 Cooke, Louis P., 135  
 Coke, Governor Richard, 9, 10, 170  
 Collinsworth, George M., 171  
 Collinsworth, James, 143, 144  
 Colonization of Texas, 4, 5, 10, 76, 79, 80, 81, 154, 172  
 Colorado River Dam, 82  
 Columbia (Bell's Landing), 224, 225  
 Columbus, Christopher, 1, 11, 13  
 Comanche Indians, 50, 220, 226  
 Committee of Safety and Correspondence, Lavaca County, 150  
 Compton Store, Houston, 197  
 Concepción, mission, 1716, 91, 180, 255  
 Confederate arms factory, at Marshall, 255; at Waxahachie, 254  
 Congress of the Republic, last session held, 257  
 Constitutional Convention, 1836, 6, 78, 92, 141, 142  
 Constitution of 1824, 6, 81, 86, 89, 92  
 Constitution of 1836, 141, 145, 222  
 Constitution of 1876, 48  
 Cooke, Captain William G., 135, 185  
 Coopwood, Bethel, 242  
 Copano, landing of soldiers, 1835-1836, 252  
 Coronado, 1  
 Cortez, 11  
 Cos, General Martin Perfecto, 98, 114, 115, 121  
 Cosa, explorer, 11  
 "Council House Fight," 78  
*Counties in Texas*, 274  
 Cow Bayou, origin of name, 54  
 Cowboy Songs, named, 211  
 Cow Head Road, story of name, 53  
 Cowhouse Creek, origin of name, 54  
 Cox, Lieutenant John Wentworth, 133  
 Cox's Point, 252  
*Crockett, David*, 155-162  
 Crockett, David, biographical, 155-162, 208; estimate of, 155; in Texas, 76, 85, 87, 90, 94, quoted, 138  
 Crockett, John, 156  
 Crooker, Captain, 238  
 "Cruel, El," Mexican cannon, 135  
 Cuero Creek, DeWitt County, origin of name, 54  
 Cuero, town, source of name, 54  
*Cuff Button Seal*, A, 140  
*Cynthia Ann Parker*, 268  
  
*Daily Life of the Early Texas Pioneers, The*, 189-202  
*Dallas News*, quoted, 46  
*Dart*, ship, 126  
 Davis Guards, the, 237  
 Davis, Jefferson, 241  
 Dawson Massacre, 253  
 Dead Horse Canyon, 51; legend of naming, 52  
*December in Texas*, 280  
 Declaration of Independence, Texas, xvii, 7, 78, 148, 149, 168, 221, 257  
 Decree of April 6, 1830, 5  
 Del Bosque, Fernando, 150  
 De León, Alonso, 11, 40, 41, 42, 82, 150  
 Delgado, Colonel, quoted, 115, 116, 117  
 De Llanos, Captain Francisco, 42  
 De Llanos Expedition, 42, 43  
 Del Monte, mission of, 1749, 251  
 Del Valle, Marqués, 180  
 De Morse, Charles, 125  
 DeShields, James T., quoted, 227  
 De Soto, 1, 20  
 Dickinson, Lieutenant Almaron M., 95, 108  
 Dickinson, Mrs. Almaron, 95, 108  
 Dinn, John, 52  
 Dolch, Oscar, Jr., *The Legend of the Chain*. See also legend "Three

- Vaqueros," 271-272  
*Dolores and Her Faithful Vigil*, legend, 269-270  
 Dolores, mission of, 1716, 256  
 Dorantes, 19  
 Douay, Father, 37, 39  
 Dove Creek battle, 249  
 Dowling, Lieutenant Richard W. (Dick), 218, 237, 238  
 Duhaut, 38  
 Dusanque, Captain, 103  
  
 Eberly, Mrs., 226  
 Edwards, Benjamin W., 5  
 Edwards, Hayden, 5  
 Edwards, Monroe, 126  
*Eighteen Minutes*, 123-124  
 El Camino Real, 171, 215  
 El Dorado, 12  
 Election of September, 1836, 144-145  
 Ellicott, 62  
 Ellis, Richard, 78  
 Enchanted Rock, 250  
 Encinal (Live Oak Grove), origin of name, 54  
 Episcopal Church, first in Texas, Matagorda, 258  
 Erath, George B., *Memoirs* quoted, 54  
 Espantosa Lake, 251  
 Espinosa, Father, 180  
 Espíritu Santo, mission, 43 n.  
 Estevanico, 19, 20, 21  
 Evans, Moses, quoted, 195, 196  
  
 Falree, Captain Luke A., the *Flash*, 126  
 Fannin, James W., 6, 45, 47, 84, 88, 97, 98-99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 105, 107, 110  
 "Father of the Homestead Law," 180  
*February in Texas*, 48  
 Filisola, 121  
 "First Company of Texan Volunteers" (New Orleans Grays), 140  
 "First Lady of Texas," 265  
*First Methodist Church*, Bastrop, 124  
*First Texas Rangers, The*, 173-179  
*First White Girl Born in Texas*, 81  
 Fisher, S. Rhoads, 135  
 Fisher, Colonel William S., 280  
 Flag of Texas, described, 9  
*Flash*, ship, 125, 126, 127  
*Flavor of Texas Humor, The*, 259-261  
 Flores, Manuel, 253  
 Flower, Texas State, 9  
  
 Forestburg, Indian battles, 254  
 "Forney hay," 210  
 Forsyth, U. S. Secretary of State, 143, 144, 146  
 Forts in Texas: Belknap, 1851 (now in ruins), 254; Bird's, 254; Brown, 1846, 251; Casa Blanca, 251; Chadbourne, 1852 (now in ruins), 249; Davis, 1854, 247; Duncan, 1849, 250; Elliott, 1876, 248; Ewell, 1852, 251; French, 1818, 258; Gates, 1849, 253; Graham, 1849, 253; Griffin, 1853 (now in ruins), 237, 249; Houston, 268; Inge, 250; Kinney's, 253; Lancaster, 1855 (now in ruins), 247; Lincoln, 1849, 250; Lipantitlan, Mexican, 1830 (now in ruins), 251; Martin Scott, 250; Mason, 1850 (now Mason, Texas), 250; Merrill, 1852, 251; McIntosh, 10; McKavett (now in ruins), 214, 250; Milam, 253; Parker's, 254, 268; Phantom Hill, 1851 (now in ruins), 249; Pope, stage coach station, 247; Richardson, 1867, 254; St. Louis, 1685, 2, 24, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 43 n., 47, 48, 252; Smith, 253; Stockton, 1859, 247; Tenoxtilan, founded 1830, by Mexicans, 257; Terrett, 1852, 250; Trinidad, old, 256.  
 "Fort Parker Near Groesbeck, Texas," illustration, 254  
 Fort St. Louis, 1685, 2, 24, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 43 n., 47, 48, 252  
*Fort St. Louis, Discovery of by the Spaniards*, 39-47  
 Fort St. Louis, 1725, mission of, 252  
 Franklin, General, 237  
 Fredonian Rebellion, 5, 76, 256  
 Freedmen's Bureau, 239  
 Freeman, 62  
 French Fort, 1818 (near Liberty, Texas), 258  
*Frontier Times*, newspaper, 50 n., 51 n., 176  
 "Fuerte, El," Mexican cannon, 135  
 Fuller, Lieutenant, 129  
 Fulton's Trading Post, 255  
  
 Galveston Artillery Company, 135  
 Galveston, capture of, 1862, 8, 237  
 Galveston Causeway, opened 1812, 150  
 Galveston hurricane and flood, 1900, 218  
 Galveston Island, 17, 27

- Galveston News, "biography" of, 82  
 Gano, General, 52  
 Gaona, General, 109, 110, 112  
 Garay, Colonel, 97, 106  
 Garrison, Doctor George P., 65 n.  
 Gates, General, 62  
*Gazetteer of Streams of Texas*, 51  
 Geographical center of Texas located, 267  
 Goliad, massacre of, 100, 101-103, 105, 106-107, 107n., 119, 252  
*Goliad, Men of*, 97-107; 152, 172  
 Gonzales, fighting at, 1835, 6, 86, 98, 252  
 Gonzales, Lieutenant, 103  
 Goodnight, Charles, 50, 214  
 Goodnight-Loving Trail, 50, 214  
*Governors of Texas*, listed, 265-266  
 Governors' Palace (San Antonio), 79  
*Granite City*, ship, 238  
 Grant, Doctor James, 87, 99, 100  
 Grayson, Peter W., commissioner to U. S., 143, 144  
 Grierson, General B. H., 270  
 Grierson Spring, 249  
 Grijalva, 11  
 Green, T. J., 118  
 Green, General Tom, 236  
 Groce's Ferry, 111, 120  
 Guadalupe Hidalgo, treaty of, 8, 182, 207, 232  
 Guadalupe, 1757, mission of, 253  
*Guadalupe*, ship, 130  
 Guerrero, President, 5
- Hamilton, Alexander, 55, 56, 64, 65, 66, 68, 69, 70, 72, 73  
 Hamilton, General James, 150  
 Hamilton, Robert, commissioner to Washington, D. C., 142  
 Hamilton, Texas, location of dinosaur tracks, 253  
 Hancock, John, 68  
 Hancock, General Winfield Scott, 239  
 Hardeman, Bailey, 126  
 Harrisburg, 222  
 Hartzog, Daniel, diary quoted, 192, 193  
 Haskell County, 52  
 Hawkins, Captain, the *Independence*, 125  
 Hays, John Coffee (Jack), biography, 173-179, 250  
 Heartt, H. C., 135  
 Heifer Creek, origin of name, 53  
 Henderson, J. Pinckney, 8, 48, 168, 169
- Herndon, J. H., diary quoted, 206  
 Heroes of the Alamo as listed on the Cenotaph, 84  
 Herreras Road, 216  
 Hill Country, 65 n.  
 Hill, George W., 135  
 Hill Tribes, 219  
 Hinton, Captain, the *Zavala*, 134  
 Historic sites in Texas (travelogue), 245-258; West Texas, 246-250; South Texas, 251-253; Central Texas, 253; North Texas, 253-254; East Texas, 255-258  
*History of Texas, The* (outline), 1-9  
 Hockley, George W., 135  
 Holley, Mary Austin, quoted, 191, 197  
 Holzinger, Lieutenant Colonel, 103, 104  
 Hood, General John B., 236  
 Hord, Jesse, diary quoted, 195  
 Hornsby, Lieutenant, 185  
 Horse Creek, origin of name, 54  
 Horsehead Canyon (Mulberry Canyon), story of naming, 51  
 Horsehead Crossing, location, description, legend of naming, 49-51, 214, 247  
 "Horse Marines," 172  
 Horse Pen Bayou, 51  
 Horse Pen Creek, 51  
 Horse Thief Canyon, 51  
 Horton, William H., 6  
 Houston, Mrs. Sam, 227  
 Houston, Sam  
     Biographical: appearance, 198; early life, 78, 163, 164; law career, 164; representative to Congress from Tennessee, 164; marriage, 164; in Indian wars, 164; exile among Indians, 165; settles in Texas, 165, 256  
     In *Texas Revolution*: xviii, 6, 76, 78, 81, 85, 87, 88, 89, 92, 98, 99, 101, 108, 109, 111, 113, 114, 118, 119-121, 129, 130, 131, 140, 141, 165  
     In *the Republic*: 7, 140, 145, 165, 169, 184, 226, 227  
     In *the State*: 8, 10, 166, 236; quoted, 124, 138, 163  
 Houstoun, Mrs. Mathilda, quoted, 203, 204  
 Howard, Major George T., Santa Fe Expedition, 184, 185  
 Huerta, Colonel Domingo, 48  
 "Hunchback, The," play, 172

- Hunter, Theresa M., *Romantic Interludes of Texas Heroes*, quoted, 265
- Hunt, General Memucan, 135, 146, 208
- Hurt, Captain Nathaniel, 135
- Iguas Indians, 19
- Immortal Texans*, 150-171
- Independence*, ship, 125, 126, 127, 135
- Independence, The* (sonnets), 275-279
- Indianola, 8, 28, 29, 33, 42, 252
- Indian Point (Karlsbaven), 29, 43
- Indians *See* tribal names
- Indians, Texas, 1, 33, 42, 78, 81, 208, 220, 240, 243, 248, 249
- Indians, The Texas*, 219-220
- Ingram, Ira, 139
- Invasion of San Antonio, 1842, 181
- Invincible*, ship, 125, 127, 134, 172
- Iturbide, Emperor, 80
- Jackson, Andrew, quoted, 74, 75; 86, 89, 144, 146, 160-161
- Janes, Mrs. Susan M., 270
- January in Texas*, 10
- Jefferson Barracks, 50
- Jefferson, Thomas, 56; quoted, 70; 71, 72, 73, 74, 75
- Johnson, Colonel F. W., 99, 100
- Johnson County, 65 n.
- Johnson, Dr. Moses, 195
- Johnson, Sam, 47
- Johnston, General Albert Sydney, 236
- Johnston, Mrs. Albert Sydney, 226
- Jokes of Texas (Boyce House), 259-261
- Joly*, ship, 25, 26, 27, 30, 31
- Jones, Anson, 8, 48, 132, 167, 168
- Jones Crossing (of Red River), 255
- Jones, Senator of Tennessee, 133
- Journey of Death, The*, 183-188
- Joutel, Henri, 28, 33, 38, 39; quoted, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 34, 35, 36, 37
- Julimes, mission, 1684, 247
- July in Texas*, 180
- June in Texas*, 172
- Kahanck, Mrs. Marie ("War Widow"), 242
- Karankawa Indians, 13-21; 219
- Karlsbaven (Indianola), 29
- Keeran, Claude, 45
- Kellogg, Mrs., 268
- Kerr, Peter, 110
- Kendall, George White, editor New Orleans *Picayune*, 183, 185; quoted, 186; biographical, 208
- Kian (Negro slave girl), 265
- Kickapoo battlefield, 255
- Kickapoo Indians, 220
- Kimble, H. S., 78
- King, Captain, 100-101, 252
- Kinney's Fort, 253
- Kiowa Indians, 220
- Kit Carson battlefield (Stinnett, Texas), 248
- Kitchen, Benjamin, 156
- Kleberg, Robert, 218
- Kraft, Celia, 124
- Ku Klux Klan, 239
- Labadie Trail, 215, 217
- La Bahía, massacre at, 6, 100, 101, 103, 104, 105, 106-107, 107 n., 119; mission of, 59, 251, 252; search for La Salle's cannon at, 44, 45, 46, 47
- La Bahía Road, 215
- La Fitte, Jean, 215, 222, 258
- Laguna de Caballo, legend of naming, 51-52
- Lamar, Mirabeau B., 7, 10, 118, 129; biographical, 166; 183, 185, 187, 188, 226
- Land Commission, appointed, 1850, 48
- Langtry, Lily, 267
- L'Archeveque, Jean, 41
- Laredo, founded, 1757, 10
- Laredo, mission of, 1749, 251
- Larrios, Padre, 150
- LaSalle, First Colonizer of Texas*, 21-29
- "LaSalle," inscription on wooden marker at landing place, 28
- LaSalle, Robert Cavellier, Sieur de, as explorer, 10, 11, 12, 21-29, 48, 58, 180; founding of St. Louis, 2; 29-39, 45, 46, 47
- LaSalle, the Death of*, 29-39
- Las Rucias battlefield, 251
- Law Courts in Early Texas*, 203-207
- Lawlessness in early Texas, 203-207
- Law West of the Pecos*, 266-267
- "Law West of the Pecos," illustration, 250
- Leander*, ship, 72
- Lee, General Robert E., biographical data, 10; 249, 263
- Le Gros, 34
- Leopold, Father, 218
- Lewis, Freightier, 273, 274
- Lewis, W. P., Santa Fé Expedition,

- 183, 184, 185, 186  
 "Lexington of Texas," 252  
*Liberator*, ship, 125  
*Libertad*, Mexican ship, 126  
*Liberty*, ship, 127  
 Liotot, 38  
 Lipan Indians, 186  
 Lipscomb, Mrs., quoted, 192  
 "Llano Estacado," Staked Plains, 207, 240, 245  
 Lockhart, Doctor, quoted, 190  
 Lone Star Flag, adopted, 1839, 140; 274  
 Long Expedition, the, 258  
 Long, Doctor James, 81 n., 264, 265  
 Long, Mrs. Jane Wilkinson, 264, 265  
 Louis XIV, 23, 24, 25  
 Louisiana, 2, 4, 72  
 Louis Napoleon, 236  
 L'Ouverture, Toussaint, 64  
 Loving, Oliver, 50, 214  
 Lubbock, 198  
 Lucas oil well, 10  
 Lutheran Church, Hallettsville, organized, 280  
 Lynchburg Ferry, 120  
 Lynch, Colonel, 74, 75
- McCallum, Mrs. Jane Y., 222  
 McCulloch, Ben, 174  
 McCullough, General Henry, 236  
 McGoffin, Santa Fé Expedition, 183  
 McKavett, Fort, 214, 250  
 McLennan County, 54  
 McLeod, Colonel Hugh, commanded Santa Fé Expedition, 185  
 McMahon's Chapel, 10
- Mackenzie, General R. S., 248, 249  
 Madison, President James, 71  
 Magruder, General, 228, 237  
 Malhado, Isle of (Snake Island), 14  
 Malone Hill (Ox Skull Hill), story of naming, 53  
*March in Texas*, 78  
 Marshall, John, editor, 188  
 Marstella, Captain, the *Flash*, 127  
 Martin, Captain, 111, 112, 113  
 Martínez, Governor, 79, 80  
 Massacre at Parker's Fort, 1836, 268  
 Massanet, Father, founding of Mission San Francisco de los Tejas, 1690, 2; return to Fort St. Louis, 42  
 Matagorda Bay, 2, 10, 28, 31  
 Matamoros Expedition, December, 1835, 99, 100, 217
- Maverick Creeks, place names, 53  
 Maverick, Samuel Augustus, 180  
*May in Texas*, 150  
 Maximilian, Emperor of Mexico, 236  
 Maynes, Francisco, 218  
*Memoirs of Erath*, 54  
 Menard, Colonel Michael B., 280  
 Mendoza Expedition, 247  
*Men of the Alamo, Goliad and San Jacinto*, 83-118  
 Merry, Minister (British), 73  
 "Mexican Association," 71, 75  
 Mexican Constitution of 1824, 6, 81, 86, 89, 92  
 Mexican Revolution, xv-xvii, 4, 80  
 Mexican War, 8, 81, 173-177, 230-232  
 Midway (old Fort Trinidad), 256  
 Mier Expedition, 7, 48, 78, 181-182, 253  
*Mier Expedition, The*, 181-182  
 Mier, mission of, 1750, 251  
 Migration, trend of, in U. S., xiv, xv  
 Milam, Ben, biographical, 170-171; 280; quoted, 138  
 Miles, Lieutenant A. H., 171  
 Military Plaza, San Antonio, 79  
 Miller, Major, 104, 106  
 Miller's Point, 32  
 Miranda, Francisco de, 64, 65, 71, 72  
 "Mission La Bahía," illustration, 251  
 Missions *See* names of individual missions  
 Missions, Spanish, general information, 59; lands partitioned, 82; secularized, 1794, 82; significance of, 61  
 Mitchell, Senator, 57, 58  
*Mitote*, description of celebration, 15, 16  
 Montague, Daniel, 208  
 Monterrey, battle of, 174, 230  
*Montezuma*, Mexican ship, 130, 134  
 Monument Hill, La Grange, Texas, 253  
 Moore, Cleon, 134  
 Moore, Commodore Edwin Ward, 128-134; 136, 137  
 Moore, Judge Albert, 134  
 Moore, Judge James W., 134  
 Moore, John H., 228  
 Moranget, nephew of LaSalle, 28, 37, 38  
 Morgan, James, 120  
 Morgan's Point, 120, 126, 222  
 Mosely, Captain, 139



- Moss Spring (now Big Spring, Texas), 247  
*"Mother of Texas,"* 264-265  
 Motto, Texas State, 9  
 Mound-Builders, 219  
*"Mountain Peaks in Texas,"* 272  
 Muesnier, Pierre, 41  
 Mule Creek, legend of naming, 52  
 Mustang Bayou, 51  
 Mustang Island, 51  
 Mustang Pens, 51  
 Mustang Spring (now Stanton, Texas), 247  
  
 Nacogdoches, 2, 5; battle of, 256  
*"Napoleon of Santo Domingo,"* 64  
*"Napoleon of the West,"* 123, 162  
 Narváez Expedition, 13-21  
 National Guard, 208  
 Nava, Don Pedro de, 61, 62, 63, 82  
 Navarro, José, Santa Fé Expedition, 185  
 Navy, of Texas  
   Acts of Congress regulating navy, 127, 128  
   First Texas Navy, maneuvers of, 125-127; fate of, 127; officers of, 136  
   Second Texas Navy, organization, 127; operations of, 129-131; officers of, 136-137  
   After annexation, 132, 133  
 Navy of Texas *See* names of ships  
*Navy, The Texas,* 125-138  
 Neches Indian Village, 255  
 New Orleans *Delta*, newspaper, quoted, 174  
 New Orleans Grays, 140  
 New Orleans *Picayune*, 183, 208  
 New Year's celebration in Texas, first, 10  
 New York *Commercial Advertisers*, 138  
 Nica, 38  
 Niza, 21  
 Nocona, Peta, 269  
 Nolan, Philip, expedition to Texas, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 71, 262  
*November in Texas*, 262  
 Nuestra Señora de Loreto, 1722, mission, 43, 43 n., 44, 59  
  
*October in Texas*, 228  
 Odell, midshipman, 129  
 Ohio, ship, 126  
 Ojeda, 11  
 Old Comanche Trail, 215  
 "Old Mission" (site of Fort St. Louis), 45  
 "Old Mission Near El Paso," illustration, 246  
 Old Nacogdoches Road (part of El Camino Real), 215  
*Old Rough and Ready on the Rio Grande*, 229-232  
 Old San Antonio Road (part of El Camino Real), 215, 216  
 Old Spanish Trail, 177, 214, 215  
 "Old Stone Fort, Nacogdoches, Texas," illustration, 256  
 Opelousas Route, the, 214  
*Origin of the Name Texas*, 77  
 Osage Indians, 211  
 Oviedo, 19  
  
 Padre Island, 242  
 Palo Alto, battle of, 174, 230, 231, 251  
 Palo Duro Canyon, 245, 248  
 Palmito, battle of, 150, 251  
 "Panhandle," the, 270  
 Panna Maria (site of oldest Polish settlement in United States), 252  
 Panuco, 11, 15, 18  
 Parker, Benjamin, 268  
 Parker, Cynthia Ann, 249, 254, 268, 269  
 Parker, John, 268  
 Parker, Quanah, 269  
 Parker, Silas, 268  
 Parker's Fort Massacre, 1836, 268  
 Paso del Norte (Juarez), 1  
 Pass Cavallo, 28  
 Pease River, battle of, 1860, 249, 269  
 Perote Castle, 180, 182  
 Perote prisoners, 78, 182  
 Petit Gouave, 26, 33, 39  
 Phelps Plantation, 224  
*Picayune*, New Orleans, 183, 208  
 Pierce, President Franklin, 178  
*"Pig Incident, The,"* 149  
 Pineda, 1, 11  
*Pioneers, Daily Life of Early Texas*, 189-202  
 Pioneer life: clothing, 194-198; commodity shortage, 194-198; food, 193-194; furnishings, 189-192; homes, 189-192; leisure class, 201-202; medical attention, 198-201; prices, 194-195  
 Plains Indians, 82, 219, 220  
 Plaza de Armas, 89  
 Plaza de las Yslas (Main Plaza), San Antonio, 89, 90  
 Plummer, Mrs., 268

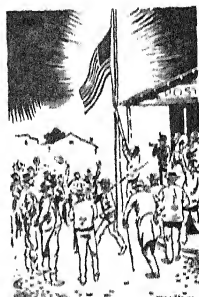
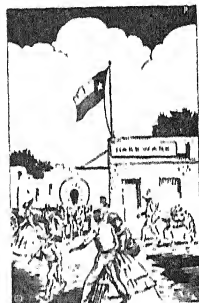
- Pocket*, ship, 134  
 Polish Church, first in America, 218  
 "Polk and Texas," 262  
 Polk, James K., 7; quoted, 230  
 Pond Creek (Sewell Stockade), 213  
 Population of Texas, 1836, 86; 1860, 234  
 Porter, Colonel Robert, 126  
 Portilla, Colonel, commandant at Goliad, 104  
*Potomac*, ship, 128  
 Potter, Reuben M., quoted, 95  
 Potter, Robert M., 135  
 Prather, William L., 263  
*Presidents and Governors of Texas*, 265-266  
 Presidents of Texas, listed, 265  
 Presidio, 1757, in Menard County, 250  
 Presidio Road, 216  
 Prizefighting, state law against, 1895, 228  
 Provisional Government, 7, 98, 109, 112, 222, 224, 141
- Railroad, first in Texas, 202  
 Ramón, Domingo, Expedition, 3  
 Randolph, John, quoted, 75-76  
 Randolph, Captain William (Randolph Field), 10  
*Rangers, The Texas*, 173-179  
 Rangers, the Texas, 173-179, 226, 249, 251, 253, 280  
 Rath City, ruins of, 249  
 Reagan, John H., 228  
 Red House, 224  
*Rediscovering Texas*, 245-258  
 Red Rovers, 106, 280  
 Reed & Company, 135  
 Refugio, mission at, 252  
 "Regulars," Santa Anna's troops, 48  
 "Regulator-Moderator War," 7, 256  
*Relación*, the, 14, 16; quoted, 18, 21, 47  
 "Remember the Alamo; Remember Goliad!" 138  
*Resaca de la Palma*, battle of, 174, 230, 231, 251  
 Revolution, Mexican, xv, xvii, 4, 80  
 Richards, 63, 65  
 Rio Grande border, 229  
 Ripley, Mrs. Eliza, quoted, 128  
 Roaring Springs, Texas, Indian campsite, 249  
 Robertson, Judge, 206  
 Robbins' Ferry, 120  
 Robinson, Captain Andrew, 139  
 Robinson, Joel Walter, 171
- Roosevelt, Theodore "Teddy," 82  
 Rope Pen Creek, legend of naming, 51-52  
 Rose, Moses, 95  
 Ross, S. L., General, 236  
 "Rough and Ready" clubs, 230  
 "Rough Riders," organized at San Antonio, 82  
 Ruiz, Francisco, alcalde of San Antonio de Bejar, 96  
 "Runaway Scrape," 7, 109, 222, 255  
 Rusk, General Thomas J., 89, 113, 172
- Sabine Pass, battle of (Dick Dowling's Battle), 218, 237-239  
 Sabloniere, Marquis de la, 36, 36 n.  
*Sachem*, ship, 238  
 St. Denis, 2, 3  
*St. Francis*, ship, 25, 27, 39  
 Salas, Colonel, 103  
 Saligny, Monsieur de, 149  
 Salinas, Gregorio de, 42  
 "Salt War," 1877, 247  
 San Antonio de Valero Mission (the Alamo), 3, 89; founded 1718, 150  
*See Alamo*  
*San Antonio*, ship, 128, 129, 130; officers listed, 137  
 San Augustine, Texas, 2  
*San Bernard*, ship, 128; officers listed, 137  
 San Buenaventura, Padre, 150  
 San Cristobal, mission, 1683, 247  
 San Felipe de Austin, 5, 6, 119, 120, 257  
 San Fernando de Bexar, 78  
 San Francisco de los Tejas, 1690, 2, 59, 256  
 San Jacinto battleground, 245, 257, 258  
 "San Jacinto Battleground Near Houston," illustration, 257  
 San Jacinto, battle of, 7, 82, 114-115, 118, 119-122, 165, 168, 171, 182, 245; significance of, xviii, 84, 117, 122, 123-124  
*San Jacinto, Men of*, 108-118; 152, 258  
 San Jacinto Monument, 258  
 San Jacinto Museum, 258  
*San Jacinto*, ship, 128; officers listed, 137  
*San Jacinto, the Sixteenth Decisive Battle*, 119-122  
 San Lorenzo, 1762, mission, 250  
 San Miguel, Mexico, 20  
 San Patricio, battle of, 1836, 251

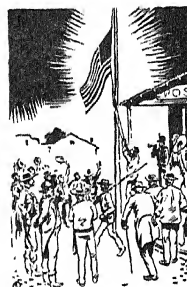
- San Pedro Park Springs, 240  
 San Saba Mission, 262  
 Santa Anna, General Antonio López de, 6, 7, 48, 80, 81, 84, 87, 91, 95, 97, 98, 104, 106, 111, 115, 118, 119-122, 134, 141, 171, 172, 182, 224  
 Santa Fé Expedition, 181, 183-188, 218  
 Santa Helena Canyon, 245  
 Santa Niña (Holy Child) Ranch, 52  
 Sattleben, August, 216  
 Saw Mill, in 1830, 124  
 Scott, General Winfield, 175, 176  
 "Secret Act," January 16, 1843, 130, 131  
 Sedalia Route, 214  
 Seguin, Juan N., 10  
 Seguin, Texas, 270  
 Seignelay, prime minister of Louis XIV, 24, 25, 30, 30 n.  
 Seminole, Texas, connected with history of Cedar Lake, 247  
 Semmes, Lieutenant, quoted, 133  
*September in Texas*, 218  
*Service Afloat*, quoted, 133  
 Sesma, General, 109, 110, 112, 113  
 Shackelford, Dr. John, 106, 280  
 Shafter Lake, scene of Indian battle, 247  
 Shepard, Seth, 221, 222  
 Shepherd, Frederick, 130  
 Shepherd, James L., 182  
 Shepherd, William M., 135  
 Sheridan, Francis, quoted, 203  
 Short, D. M., 188  
 Shoshonean Indians, 220  
 Sinclair, John Lang, 263  
 "Sixteenth decisive battle of the world," 119, 257  
 Shreeve & Grayson, 135  
 Slavery, 8, 11, 234, 236  
 Smith, Erastus "Deaf," 82, 113  
 Smith, Governor Henry, 89, 98, 167  
 Snake Island, 14  
 Snively Expedition, 254  
*Social Life in Old New Orleans*, quoted, 128  
 Soldiers' Mound (Dickens, Texas), 249  
 Solís, Father, extract from diary of, 13, 16  
 Song, Texas State, 9  
 "Sonnets on the Glorious History of Texas" (*The Independence*), 275-279  
 Spearman, Texas (site of James Carter's buffalo camp), 248  
 Spindletop oil field, 10  
 Spring Lake, Indian campsite, 248  
 "Staked Plains" *Llano Estacado*, 207, 240, 245  
 Stampede (creek place name), origin of name, 54  
 Stanford, Leland, 178  
 Sterling, Governor Ross S., 208  
 Stone Fort, old (Nacogdoches), 245, 256  
*Story of Cabeza de Vaca, The*, 13-21  
*Story of Robert Cavalier, Sieur de La Salle, The*, 21-39  
 Sylvester, James A., 171  
 Talleyrand, 74  
 Talon, Pierre, 41  
 Tarpley Creek, famous for dinosaur tracks, 250  
 Tarrant, General, 254  
 Tascosa, ghost town, 248  
 Taylor, Zachary, 8, 169, 173, 174, 175; biographical, 229-232  
 Tehuacana Indians, 262  
*Telegraph and Texas Register*, newspaper, quoted, 204, 207, 222, 224, 225  
 Teran, Governor, 218  
 Terrible, ship, 125  
 Texans, a tribute to, 122  
 Texas A & M College, founded, 1876, 228  
*Texas As It Was Then*, 11-47  
*Texas Battle Flags*, 139-140  
*Texas Humor, the Flavor of* (jokes by Boyce House), 259-261  
*Texas in Civil War Days*, 233-240  
*Texas Indians, The*, 219-220  
*Texas of Yesterday, Today and Tomorrow*, A (Introduction), xiii to xix  
 "Texas, Our Texas," State song, 263  
*Texas Outlook*, quoted, 46  
 Texas Pioneers' Day, 208  
 Texas, size of, 86  
*Texas—Texans and Texana*, 263-274  
*Texas Utterances, Famous*, 138  
 "Texas Week," 9  
 "The Eyes of Texas Are Upon You," 263  
 "The Old Home of Sam Houston, Huntsville," illustration, 256  
 "The Raven," 256  
 Three-faced clock, the, 240  
*Three Vaqueros*, legend, 271-272  
 Timber Ridge church, 78  
 Tomlinson, Joe, 51, 52  
 Tom Toby, ship, 125, 127, 135

- Tonkawa Indians, 219  
 Tonty, 26  
*Towns in Texas*, 261  
 Towns of Texas, leading, 1860, 235  
 Trail drivers, stories told by, 211, 212  
 Trail driving, 211, 212, 243  
 Trail driving period, 1867-1895, 210  
 Trails to shipping ports, 216  
 Travis, William Barrett, 6, 78, 84, 85, 87, 88, 90, 91, 94, 138, 153, 162, 168  
 Tree, Texas State, 9  
 Tremont House, 134, 201, 202  
 Trinity River, meaning of, 54, 240  
 Turner, 120  
 "Turtle Bayou Resolutions," 1832, 258  
 Turtle Creek battlefield, 248  
 "Twin Sisters" (two cannon), received by Houston, 113, 126  
 Tyler, President, 7  
  
*United States Recognizes the Independence of Texas*, 141-149  
 University of Texas, 218, 262  
 Upton, Monroe, 53  
 Urrea, General, 97, 100, 101, 102, 104, 107, 110, 112  
 Ursuline Academy, San Antonio, 240  
  
 Van Buren, 147  
 Van Zandt, Isaac, 180, 192  
 Van Zandt, Mrs. Isaac, quoted, 189-190  
 Velasco, treaty of, 143, 224, 258  
*Vencedor del Alamo*, Mexican ship, 126  
 Vigilantes, 178  
 Villa de Bexar, 150  
 Village of Alabama Indians, 256  
  
 Wallace, Major, 103  
 Ward, Colonel, 100, 101, 104, 105, 140  
  
 War with Spain, 1898, 82  
 Washington, General George, 62, 64, 68, 69  
 Washington-on-the-Brazos, 7, 78, 221, 257  
 "Washington-on-the-Brazos," illustration, 257  
 Waterloo (Austin), selected as site for permanent location of the government, 10, 225  
 Water-Pierce Oil Company, 82  
 Webb, Charles, 45  
 Webb, J. S., 45  
 Weber, J. H., quoted in *Goliad Advance-Guard*, 47  
 Weidemann, Doctor, 200-201  
 Wells-Fargo Express Company, 214  
 West, William, 130  
 Wharton, Colonel John A., 89, 121  
*Wharton*, ship, 128, 130  
 Wharton, William H., 89, 127, 142, 145, 146, 148, 221  
 Wheelwright, Captain, the *Independence*, 126  
 White Mule Creek, origin of name, 52  
 Wild Horse Mesa, 51  
 Wilkens, R. R., quoted, 198, 199  
 Wilkinson, General James, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 68, 71, 75, 76  
 Williams, Judge O. W., 50  
 Wilmot Proviso, 233, 234  
 Woll, General Adrian, 78, 107, 181  
 Workman, Judge, 71  
 Worth, General, 174  
  
 Ybarbo, Antonio Gil, 3  
 Yegua (Mare) Creek, 51  
 Ysleta, missions, 246  
  
 Zacharie, J. W., 135  
 Zavala, Lorenzo de, 78, 126, 141, 228, 262  
*Zavala*, ship (formerly the *Pulaski*), 128, 131, 134, 137











UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY



116 844

UNIVERSAL  
LIBRARY